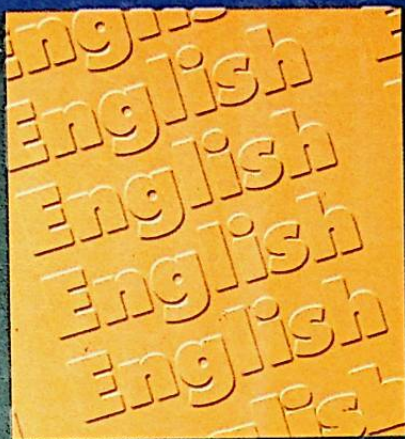


هاجى قوتلۇق قادىرى

ئىنگلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىن
ئەمەلىي مىسال ۋە مەشىقلەر



A Practical English Grammar and Exercises



ئىككىنچى نەشرىياتى خەلق نەشرىياتى

圖查雜覽(1970)

ئىنگلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىن ئەمەلىي مىسال ۋە مەشقلەر

A Practical English Grammar and Exercises

ئىنگلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىن
ئەمەلىي مىسال ۋە مەشقلەر

تۈزگۈچى: ھاجى قۇتلۇق قادىرى

۱۹۷۰ - يىلى

ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
(190008 - ۱۹۷۰ - يىلى ۱۰ - ئايدا ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا)
شىنجاڭ خەلق نەشرىياتى
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا
ئىشلىتىش ئورنىدا

شىنجاڭ خەلق نەشرىياتى

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语语法中的实题与练习:维吾尔文/库图鲁克·卡地尔编.

乌鲁木齐:新疆人民出版社,2000.5.

ISBN 7-228-05750-3

I. 英… I. 库… III. 英语—语法—习题—维吾尔语

(中国少数民族语言) IV. H314-44

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2000)第 29669 号

责任编辑:哎孜孜·吐尔地

封面设计:艾克拜尔·沙力

英语语法中的实题与练习(维吾尔文)

库图鲁克·卡地尔著

新疆人民出版社出版

(乌鲁木齐市解放南路348号 邮政编码:830001)

新疆新华书店发行

新疆《工人时报》印刷厂印刷

850×1168毫米 32开本 11印张

2000年5月第1版 2000年5月第1次印刷

印数:1—3000

ISBN7-228-05750-3/H.149 定价:15.00元

كىرىش سۆز

«ئىنگىلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىن ئەمەلىي مىسال ۋە مەشىقلەر» ئىنگىلىز تىلىنى ئۆزلۈكىدىن ئۆگەنگۈچىلەر ۋە مەخسۇس كۇرۇستلاردا ئوقۇۋاتقان ئوقۇغۇچىلارنىڭ ئىنگىلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىكى ئالاھىدە قىيىن نۇقتىلارنى ھەم گرامماتىكىلىق قانۇنلارنى تېخىمۇ چوڭقۇر چۈشۈنىشىگە قولايلىق يارىتىپ بېرىش ئۈچۈن بىر قەدەر ئەتراپلىق تۈزۈلدى.

مەزكۇر كىتابنىڭ باش قىسمىدا ئىنگىلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىكى ئەڭ مۇھىم بولغان پېئىل ۋە زامانلار شۇنداقلا ئۇلارنىڭ ئۆزئارا گرامماتىكىلىق قائىدىلەر بويىچە زامانلارغا ئۆزگەرتىش قاتارلىق بىر قاتار مۇناسىۋەتلىك مەزمۇنلار ئەمەلىي مىساللار ئارقىلىق تەپسىلىي بايان قىلىندى. بەزى بىر ئالاھىدە قىيىن جۈملىلەر تەپسىلىي چۈشەندۈرۈلدى. كىتابنىڭ ئاخىرقى قىسمىدا چەت ئەللەردىكى بىر قىسىم ئالىي مەكتەپلەرنىڭ ئىنگىلىز تىلى سەۋىيە ئىمتىھانىغا ئالاھىدە تەييارلىغان مەشىقلىرى ۋە ئۇلارنىڭ جاۋابى قوشۇمچە كۆرسىتىلدى.

سەۋىيەنىڭ چەكلىك تەجرىبەمنىڭ كەمچىل بولۇشى تۈپەيلىدىن مەزكۇر كىتابتا بەزى يېتەرسىزلىك ۋە نۇقسانلارنىڭ بولۇشى مۇمكىن كەڭ ئوقۇرمەنلەرنىڭ تەنقىدىي پىكىر تەلەپلىرىنى بېرىشىنى قىزغىن قارشى ئالىمەن.

بىرىنچى باب پېئىل زامانلىرى

1. ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئومۇمىي ئوقۇم. ئىنگلىز تىلىدا زامان پېئىلىنىڭ بىر خىل شەكلى. ئوخشاش بولمىغان زامان ئوخشاش بولمىغان ۋاقىت ۋە ئۇسۇلنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

تۈرلىرى. ۋاقىت (time) جەھەتتىن ئېلىپ ئېيتقاندا، ئىنگلىز تىلىنىڭ زامانلىرى ھازىرقى زامان، ئۆتكەن زامان، كەلگۈسى زامان، ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان دەپ بۆلۈنىدۇ. تەرەپ (aspect) جەھەتتىن ئېلىپ ئېيتقاندا ئىنگلىز تىلىنىڭ زامانلىرى يەنە «ئاددىي»، «ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان»، «پۈتكەن» (تامام-لانغان)، «پۈتكەن ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان» زامان دەپ بۆلۈنىدۇ. پېئىلدا ئىپادىلەنگەن ئىش - ھەرىكەت ئوخشاش بولمىغان تۆت خىل ۋاقىتتا يۈز بەرگەن، ئوخشاش بولمىغان تۆت خىل تەرەپتىن ئىپادىلەنگەن بولىدۇ. ھەر بىر خىل «ۋاقىت - تەرەپ» بىر خىل زاماننى شەكىللەندۈرىدۇ.

شۇڭا ئىنگلىز تىلىدا پېئىللىرى جەمئىي 16 خىل زاماندا كېلىدۇ. بىراق دائىم ئىشلىتىلىدىغىنى پەقەت 13 خىل زامان. ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان، ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان ۋە كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان نىسبەتەن ئاز ئۇچرايدۇ. شۇڭا بۇ كىتابتا بۇ ئۈچ خىل زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى قىسقارتىلدى.

پېئىل work نى مەسەل قىلىپ، ئىنگلىز تىلىدىكى 16 خىل ئوخشاش بولمىغان زاماننى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

زامان، كەلگۈسى ئاددىي زامان، ئۆتكەن ئاددىي زامان ۋە ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى ئاددىي زامان شەكلىنىڭ ئۆزگىرىشىنى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق كۆرۈۋېلىشقا بولىدۇ:

	ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان	ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان	ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان	ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان
پېئىل be	I am... You are... He } is... She } We } are... You } They }	I was... You were... He } was... She } We } were... You } They }	I } shall be... We } He } will be... She } You } will They } be... be...	I } should We } be... He } She } would You } be... They }
پېئىل have	I } have... You } We } They } He } has... She }	I } had You } We } He } ... She } They }	I } shall We } have... He } She } will You } have... They }	I } should We } have... He } She } would You } have... They }
ھەرىكەت پېئىل study	I } study... You } We } They } He } studies... She }	I } studied You } He } She } ... We } They }	I } shall We } study... She } He } will You } study... They }	I } should We } study... He } She } would You } study... They }

[ئەسكەرتىش] پېئىل شەكلىنىڭ ئۆزگىرىشىگە ئاساسەن، پېئىللار يەنە پېئىل be (verb to be) غا بۆلۈنىدۇ. پېئىل have (verb to have) غا ۋە ھەرىكەت پېئىلى (verb to do) غا بۆلۈنىدۇ.

لەشكە بولىدۇ.

ۋاقىت تەرىپى	ھازىر	ئۆتكەن	كەلگۈسى	ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى
ئادەتتىكى (ئاددىي)	I work	I worked	I shall work	I should work
بولسۇنغان	I am working	I was working	I shall be working	I should be working
ئورۇنلانغان بۇتكەن	I have worked	I had worked	I shall have worked	I should have worked
بۇتكەن بولسۇنغان	I have been working	I had been working	I shall have been working	I should have been working

2. ئاددىي زامان

(1) ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئاساسىي ئۇقۇم ۋە تۈر

(1) ئاددىي زامان (indefinite tenses) نىسبەتەن ئابىسترا-
 كىت ۋە ئاددىي ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ ياكى ئاددىي بىر ئىشنىڭ
 يۈز بەرگەنلىكىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.
 (2) ئاددىي زامان تۆت تۈرلۈك بولىدۇ: ھازىرقى ئاددىي
 زامان، ئۆتكەن ئاددىي زامان، كەلگۈسى ئاددىي زامان ۋە ئۆتكەن
 كەلگۈسى ئاددىي زامان. بۇنىڭدا *how* ۋە *study*، *have*، *be* پېئىل شەكلى
 ئارقىلىق ھازىرقى ئاددىي

قالغانلىرى ئومۇمەن پېئىللارنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى بىلەن ئوخشاش بولىدۇ. پېئىل be ، have ، study لارنىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوراق ۋە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق قۇرۇلمىلاردىكى ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ھەر خىل شەكىللىرىنى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق كۆرۈۋېلىشقا بولىدۇ:

	بولۇشلۇق	بولۇشىز
پېئىل be	I am... You are... He } is... She } It } We } are... You } They }	I am not... You are not... He } She } is not... It } We } You } are not... They }
پېئىل have	I } have... You } He } have... She } It } We } have... You } They }	I } have not... You } He } has not... She } It } We } have not... You } They }
ھەرىكەت پېئىل study	I } study... You } He } studies... She } We } study... You } They }	I } do not study... You } He } does not study... She } We } do not study... You } They }

to do) غا بۆلۈندۈ. ھەرىكەت پېئىلى do نى كۆرسىتىدىغان
ۋە have دىن باشقا بارلىق پېئىللارنى ھەرگىزمۇ ياردەمچى پېئىل-
لار بىلەن ئارىلاشتۇرۇۋېتىشكە بولمايدۇ. يۇقىرىقى جەدۋەل ئۈ-
چىنچى كاتەكچىدىكى ھەرىكەت پېئىلى study نىڭ ئۆزگىرىشى
be، have، لاردىن باشقا بارلىق پېئىللار بىلەن ماسلىشىدۇ.
(دەرۋەقە بۇ ھەرىكەت پېئىلدۇر)

(2) ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى. ئاددىي ھازىر-
قى زامان (present indefinite tense) «ھازىر» نىڭ ئۆزىدە بىر
مەزگىل ئىچىدە دائىم يۈز بېرىۋاتقان ھەرىكەت ياكى مەۋجۇت
بولۇپ تۇرغان ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I know Lao Wang will, we are at the same school.

مەن لاۋۋاڭ بىلەن تونۇش، بىز ساۋاقداش.

The earth moves round the sun.

يەر شارى قۇياشنى ئايلىنىپ ھەرىكەت قىلىپ تۇرىدۇ.

There is nothing in the room, it is empty.

ئۆيدە ھېچنېمە يوق، قۇرۇق ئىكەن.

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ شەكلى

(1) پېئىل be بىرىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ساندا am، ئۈچىنچى

شەخس بىرلىك ساندا is كېلىشتىن باشقا باشقىلاردا بىردەك are
ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

(2) پېئىل have ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ساندا has

ئىشلىتىلىشتىن باشقا بىردەك have بولۇپ كېلىۋېرىدۇ.

(3) ھەرىكەت پېئىل. ھەرىكەت پېئىلنىڭ ئاددىي ھازىرقى

زامان شەكلى ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىكىگە، پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى

شەكلىنىڭ ئاخىرىغا -s ياكى -es قوشۇلغاندىن باشقا (بۇنىڭ

ئىچىدە ياساش ئۇسۇلى ۋە ئوقۇلۇشى ئىسىملارنىڭ كۆپلۈك شەك-
لىگە ئوخشاش، كۆنكرېت چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى كېيىنكى پاراگرافتا)

قالغانلىرى ئومۇمەن پېئىللارنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى بىلەن ئوخشاش بولىدۇ. پېئىل be ، have ، study لارنىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوراق ۋە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق قۇرۇلمىلاردىكى ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ھەر خىل شەكىللىرىنى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق كۆرۈۋېلىشقا بولىدۇ:

	بولۇشلۇق	بولۇشمىز
پېئىل be	I am... You are... He } She } is... It } We } You } are... They }	I am not... You are not... He } She } is not... It } We } You } are not... They }
پېئىل have	I } You } have... He } She } have... It } We } You } have... They }	I } You } have not... He } She } has not... It } We } You } have not... They }
ھىرىكەت پېئىل study	I } You } study... He } She } studies... We } You } study... They }	I } You } do not study... He } She } does not study... We } You } do not study... They }

to) غا بۆلۈنىدۇ. ھەرىكەت پېئىلى do نى كۆرسىتىدىغان
ۋە have دىن باشقا بارلىق پېئىللارنى ھەرگىزمۇ ياردەمچى پېئىل-
لار بىلەن ئارىلاشتۇرۇۋېتىشكە بولمايدۇ. يۇقىرىقى جەدۋەل ئۇ-
چىنچى كاتەكچىدىكى ھەرىكەت پېئىلى study نىڭ ئۆزگىرىشى
be ، have لاردىن باشقا بارلىق پېئىللار بىلەن ماسلىشىدۇ.
(دەرۋەقە بۇ ھەرىكەت پېئىلدۇر)

(2) ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى. ئاددىي ھازىر-
قى زامان (present indefinite tense) «ھازىر» نىڭ ئۆزىدە بىر
مەزگىل ئىچىدە دائىم يۈز بېرىۋاتقان ھەرىكەت ياكى مەۋجۇت
بولۇپ تۇرغان ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I know Lao Wang will, we are at the same school.

مەن لاۋۋاڭ بىلەن تونۇش، بىز ساۋاقداش.

The earth moves round the sun.

يەر شارى قۇياشنى ئايلىنىپ ھەرىكەت قىلىپ تۇرىدۇ.

There is nothing in the room, it is empty.

ئۆيدە ھېچنېمە يوق، قۇرۇق ئىكەن.

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ شەكلى

(1) پېئىل be بىرىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ساندا am ، ئۈچىنچى

شەخس بىرلىك ساندا is كېلىشتىن باشقا باشقىلاردا بىردەك are

ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

(2) پېئىل have ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ساندا has

ئىشلىتىلىشتىن باشقا بىردەك have بولۇپ كېلىۋېرىدۇ.

(3) ھەرىكەت پېئىل. ھەرىكەت پېئىلنىڭ ئاددىي ھازىرقى

زامان شەكلى ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىكىگە، پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى

شەكلىنىڭ ئاخىرىغا -s ياكى -es قوشۇلغاندىن باشقا (بۇنىڭ

ئىچىدە ياساش ئۇسۇلى ۋە ئوقۇلۇشى ئىسىملارنىڭ كۆپلۈك شەك-
لىگە ئوخشاش، كونا كىتاب چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى كېيىنكى پاراگرافتا)

has not ئورنىغا has not نى ئىشلىتىدۇ.

ھەرىكەت پېئىلى ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىك شەكلى ۋە قۇرۇلما ئۇسۇلى (ياساش ئۇسۇلى). ئۇنىڭ بىلەن ئىسىملارنىڭ كۆپلۈك شەكلىنى ياساش ئۇسۇلى پۈتۈنلەي ئوخشاش، تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلگە قارالسۇن:

يىمىش ئۇسۇلى	مىسالى
1. سۆزنىڭ ئاخىرىغا - s قوشۇلغاندا جاراڭلىق تاۋۇشتىن كېيىن ئوقۇلىدۇ. جاراڭسىز تاۋۇشتىن كېيىن ئوقۇلىدۇ.	work —works run —runs dig —digs live —lives
2. [d][t][f][z][s] قاتارلىق تاۋۇشلار بىلەن ئاخىرلاشقان سۆزلەرنىڭ ئاخىرىغا -s ئۈلۈنۈپ ئوقۇلۇشى [iz] ئەگەردە سۆزنىڭ ئاخىرىغا e بولسا پەقەت e ئۈلۈنىدۇ. سۆزنىڭ ئاخىرىغا -s قوشۇلما، ئوقۇلۇشى [z] بولىدۇ.	miss —misses finish —finishes teach —teaches lose —loses please —pleases industrialize —industrializes pledge —pledgs
3. ئەگەر سۆزنىڭ ئاخىرىغا -y بولۇپ، y دىن ئىلگىرى ئۈزۈك تاۋۇش بولغان بولسا y نى ئۆزگىرىپ e قوشۇلىدۇ. ئەگەر سۆز ئاخىرى o بولسا، o نىڭ ئالدىدا ئۈزۈك تاۋۇش كەلگەن بولسا es قوشۇلىدۇ.	carry —carries fly —flies go —goes do —does[d z]

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئىشلىتىلىشى

1) ھازىر مەۋجۇت بولۇپ تۇرىۋاتقان ئادەت، دائىم يۈز بېرىپ تۇرىدىغان ھەرىكەت ياكى مەۋجۇت ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. دائىم everyday ، twice a week ، (ھەپتىدە ئىككى قېتىم) ، often (دائىم) ، usually (ئادەتتە) ، always (ئەزەلدىن) ، seldom (ناھايىتى ئاز) ، sometimes (بەزى چاغدا) قاتارلىق ۋاقىت ھالەتلىرى بىلەن بىرگە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ:

	ئاددىي سوئال جۈملە	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
پېشىل be	Are you...? Is he...? Are they...?	Yes, I am. No, I am not. Yes, He is. NO, He is not. Yes, they are. No, they are not.
پېشىل have	Have You...? Has he...? Have they...?	yes, I have. no, I have not. yes, he has. no, he has not. yes, they have. no, they have not.
ھەرىكەت پېشىل study	Do you study...? Does he study...? Do they study...?	yes, I do. no, I do not. yes, he does. no, he does not. yes, they do. no, they do not.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئامېرىكا تىلىدا have نىڭ ئىنكار شەكلى،
ئاددىي سوئال ھەمدە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق قۇرۇلمىلار ۋە
ھەرىكەت پېشىلى بىلەن ئوخشاش، سېلىشتۇرغاندا:

I haven't any brothers. (ئەنگلىيە)

I don't have any brothers. (ئامېرىكا)

Have you any brothers? yes, I have two.

No, I haven't any. (ئەنگلىيە)

Do you have any brothers? yes, I have two.

No I don't have any. (ئامېرىكا)

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئەنگلىيىلىكلەر ئاغزاكى تىلدا دائىم have

got (has) نىڭ ئورنىغا (has) have نى ئىشلىتىدۇ؛ بۇنىڭدا

ئىنكار شەكلىدە دائىم haven't got نىڭ ئورنىغا have not

خىزمەت قىلىدۇ.

If you see him, will you tell him to ring me up?

ئەگەر سەن ئۇنى ئۇچرىتىپ قالساڭ، ئۇنىڭغا ئېيتىپ قوي،
ئۇ ماڭا تېلېفون بەرسۇن، ماقۇلمۇ؟

We'll visit the cotton mill if it is fine tomorrow.

ئەتە ھاۋا ئوچۇق بولسا، بىز مويىكىغا زىيارەتكە بارىمىز.
(2) ئورۇنلاشتۇرۇلغان ۋە پىلانلانغان كەلگۈسىدىكى ھەردە-
كەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ (پەقەت بەزى يۆتكەلگەن پېئىللار بىلەن چەك-
لىنىدۇ، مەسىلەن: start ، leave ، come ، go قاتارلىقلار).
مەسىلەن:

The train starts at ten o'clock in the morning.

پويىز چۈشتىن بۇرۇن سائەت ئوندا قوزغىلىدۇ.

When does the Japanese youth deligation leave for shanghai?

ياپونىيە ياشلار ۋەكىللەر ئۆمىكى قاچان شاڭخەيگە يېتىپ
بارىدۇ؟

Supper is at five today.

بۈگۈن سائەت بەشتە كەچلىك تاماق بېرىلىدۇ.

(3) كىتاب - ژۇرناللار ۋە ئۇلارنىڭ ئاپتورلىرىنىڭ نەقىلى.

لىرىنى ئىشلەتكەندە، ئادەتتە ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان شەكلىنى
قوللىنىش كېرەك.
مەسىلەن:

Marx says that a foreign language is a weapon is the
struggle of life.

ماركس مۇنداق دەيدۇ: چەت ئەل تىلى بولسا كىشىلەرنىڭ
ياشاش، كۈرەش قىلىشتىكى قورالى.

The story describes how a young scientist develops a
new theory.

ھېكايىدە ياش بىر ئالىمنىڭ قانداق قىلىپ بىر يېڭى نەزەردە-
يىنى ياراتقانلىقى بايان قىلىنغان.

She is our English teacher.

ئۇ بىزنىڭ ئىنگلىز تىلى ئوقۇتقۇچىمىز.

He takes a walk after supper every day.

ئۇ ھەركۈنى كەچلىك تاماقتىن كېيىن سەيلە قىلىدۇ.

The children go to school at seven every morning.

بالىلار ھەركۈنى ئەتەگەن سائەت يەتتىدە مەكتەپكە بارىدۇ.

(2) ئىگىنىڭ ئالاھىدىلىكى، خۇسۇسىيىتى ۋە قابىلىيىتى قاتارلىقلارنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ:

He works hard. ئۇ غىزمەتتە ناھايىتى تىرىشچان.

(ياكى: ئۇ بىر تىرىشچان ئادەم)

Does she like sports?

ئۇ تەنتەربىيەگە قىزىقامدۇ؟

(ياكى: ئۇ تەنتەربىيە ھەۋەسكارىمۇ؟)

The children draw well.

بۇ بالىلار رەسىم سىزىشتا ناھايىتى ياخشى.

(قابىلىيەتنى ئىپادىلىدى)

(3) ئويىپىكىتىپ پاكىت ۋە ئومۇمىي قانۇنىيەتلەرنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

The sun rises in the east.

قۇياش شەرقتىن كۆتۈرۈلىدۇ.

Two plus two makes four.

ئىككىگە ئىككىنى قوشسا تۆت بولىدۇ.

Socialism is superior to capitalism.

سوتسىيالىزم كاپىتالىزمدىن ئەۋزەل.

ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىش ئۇسۇللىرى

(1). ۋاقىت، شەرت ھالەت بېقىندى جۈملىلىرىدە كەلگۈسى

زاماننى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

When they leave school, they will go to work in Tibet.

ئۇلار ئوقۇش پۈتتۈرۈپ بولغاندىن كېيىن شىزاڭغا بېرىپ

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسى ئۇقۇمى. ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان (past indefinite tense) ئۆتكەن ھەرىكەت ياكى ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

بۇ خىل ھەرىكەت ياكى ھالەت پەقەت بىر قېتىم بىلەنلا چەكلەنگەن بولۇشى ھەم دائىملىق بولۇشى مۇمكىن. مەسىلەن:

He went to town yesterday.

ئۇ تۇنۇگۈن شەھەرگە كىردى. (بىر قېتىملىق ھەرىكەت)

When I was young I took cold baths regulary.

مەن ياش ۋاقتىمدا دائىم سوغۇق سۇدا يۇيۇناتتىم.

(دائىملىق ھەرىكەت)

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ شەكىللىرى

(1) ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان قانۇنىيەتلىك ۋە قانۇنىيەتسىز پېئىل.

لارنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلىنىدۇ. be دىن

باشقا، قالغان پېئىللارنىڭ ھەممىسىدە شەخس ۋە سان ئۆزگىرىدۇ.

شى بولمايدۇ. ھەر خىل پېئىللارنىڭ ئىنكار قۇرۇلمىسى ۋە

ئاددىي سوراق قۇرۇلمىسى، ئاددىي ھازىرقى زاماننىڭ ئىنكار

قۇرۇلمىسى ۋە ئاددىي سوراق شەكلى بىلەن ئوخشاش بولىدۇ.

(2) پېئىل be، بىرىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ۋە ئۈچىنچى

شەخس بىرلىكتە was ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. باشقىلىرىدا were

قوللىنىلىدۇ.

(3) پېئىل have بىردەك had بولۇپ كېلىپ، شەخس ۋە

سان ئۆزگىرىشى بولمايدۇ.

(4) ھەرىكەت پېئىلىدا بىردەك ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى ئىشلىدۇ.

شەخس ۋە سان ئۆزگىرىشى بولمايدۇ.

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىدۇرۇش،

لىشى، ئاددىي سوراق ۋە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق تۆت خىل

4) باش جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ئەگەر ئۆتكەن زامان بولسا، ئۇنىڭ تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلىدا ئادەتتە يەنىلا ئۆتكەن زامان كېلىۋېرىدۇ. بىراق تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىدە سۆزلەنگىنى ئويىپكىتىپ ھەقىقەت بولسا، ئۇنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئاۋۋالقىدە كىلا ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان ھالىتىدە كېلىۋېرىدۇ.

Galileo insisted that the earth moves round the sun. گالىلېي يەر شارىنىڭ قۇياشنى ئايلىنىشى تەلىماتىدا چىڭ تۇرغان.

[ئەسكەرتىش] رەسىملەرنىڭ چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى، كىنو چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى، ھېكايىنى قايتا بايان قىلىش، درامىلارنىڭ سەھنىدىكى چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى ھەمدە گېزىتلەردىكى تېما ۋە ھېكايىلەرنىڭ ماۋزۇلىرىدا يەنىلا ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. روماندا ئادەتتە ئۆتكەن زامان قوللىنىلىدۇ، بىراق تەسىرلىك يېزىش ئۈچۈن، يەنە كۆپ ھاللاردا ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان ۋە باشقا ھازىرقى زامان شەكىللىرى قوللىنىلىدۇ.

5) بەزى دائىم قوللىنىلىدىغان جۈملىلەردە كونكرېت بىر ھازىرقى ۋاقىتتا پەيدا بولغان ھەرىكەت ۋە مەۋجۇت ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ (دەرۋەقە بۇ دائىم يۈز بېرىپ تۇرىدىغان ھەرىكەت ياكى مەۋجۇت ھالەت ئەمەس). مەسىلەن: ئۇ كەلدى. (here چوقۇم جۈملىنىڭ بېشىدا كېلىش

شەرت). Here he comes. There goes the bell. قۇغۇرراق چېلىندى (There چوقۇم جۈملىنىڭ بېشىدا كېلىدۇ).

ھازىر سائەت نەچچە بولدى؟ What time is it now? (3) ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان

We had a good swim last sunday.
بىز ئۆتكەن يەكشەنبە كۈنى ناھايىتى كۆڭۈللۈك سۇ ئۈز-
دۇق.

She sudenly fell ill yesterday.
تۈنۈگۈن ئۇ توساتتىن ئاغرىپ يىقىلىپ قالدى.

May mother had to work long hours for the landlord
when she was a little child.

مېنىڭ ئانام خېلى كىچىك ۋاقتىدىلا ھەر كۈنى ئۇزۇن
ۋاقت بايلار ئۈچۈن ئىشلەپ بەرمىسە بولمايتتى.
(2) ئىلگىرى داۋاملىق يۈز بەرگەن ھەربىر ئىشنى بايان
قىلىپ بېرىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:-

The school graduates got up early in the morning,
fetched water. swept the yard for uncle zhao and then
went out to work with the commune members.

بۇ بىلىملىك ياشلار ئەتىگەندە سەھەر تۇرۇپ جاۋتاغىغا سۇ
توشۇپ، ھويلا سۈپۈرۈپ بېرىپ، ئاندىن ئەزالار بىلەن بىرلىكتە
ئىشقا بارىدۇ.

(3) ئۆتكەن بىر مەزگىل ئىچىدە دائىم يۈز بەرگەن ياكى
قايتا - قايتا يۈز بەرگەن ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرەلەيدۇ.

When I was in the contryside, I often called on poor
and lower-middle peasants.

مەن يېزىدىكى ۋاقتىمدا، دائىم كەمبەغەل، تۆۋەن - ئوتتۇرا
دېھقانلارنىڭ ھالىدىن خەۋەر ئېلىپ تۇراتتىم.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئىلگىرىكى دائىملىق قايتىلىنىپ تۇرىدىغان
ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. ھەمدە used to غا پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى
شەكلىنى ئۇلاشقا ياكى would غا پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلىنى
ئۇلاشقا بولىدۇ:

When I stayed at Aunt Liu's, she would tell me a about the

قۇرۇلمىسىنىڭ ھەر خىل شەكىللىرى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق كۆرسىتىلىدۇ.

	مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنگلىز تىلى
بېشىل be	I was... You were... He } was... She } It } We } were... You } They }	I was not... You were not... He } was not... She } It } We } were not... You } they }
بېشىل have	I } You } He } had... She } It } We } You } They }	I } You } He } had not... She } It } We } You } They }
ھەرىكەت بېشىل study	I } You } He } studied... She } We } You } They }	I } You } He } did not study... She } We } You } They }

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى (1)
 ئۆتكەن زاماندىكى ھەرىكەت ياكى ھالەتنى بىلدۈرۈشتە دائىم yesterday ، two days ago ، last week ، in 1958 قاتارلىق ۋاقىت ھالەتلىرى بىلەن ئىپادىلىنىدۇ ھەمدە when قاتارلىق باغلىغۇچىلار ئېلىپ كەلگەن ۋاقىت ھالەتلىرى بىلەن بىللە كېلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت ئىچىدىكى دائىملىق ھەرىكەت ياكى ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان ياردەمچى پېئىل (بىرىنچى شەخس) *shall* ياكى *will* (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) + پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ئامېرىكا تىلىدا مەيلى قايسى شەخس بولۇشىدىن قەتئىينەزەر، بىردەك *will* ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زاماندىكى مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوراق ھەمدە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق تۆت خىل قۇرۇلمىنىڭ ھەر خىل شەكىللىرى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلىنىدۇ:

	مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
پېئىل be	I shall be... You will be... He } will be... She } It } We shall be... You } will be... They }	I shall not be... You will not be... He } She } will not be... It } We shall not be... You } will not be... They }
پېئىل have	I shall have... You will have... He } will have... She } It } We shall have... You } will have... They }	I shall not have... You will not have... He } She } will not have... It } We shall not have... You } will not have... They }
ھەرىكەت پېئىل study	I shall study... You will study... He } will study... She } We shall study... You } will study... They }	I shall not study... You will not study... He } She } will not study... We shall not study... You } will not study... They }

great changes Which had taken place in the village since liberation.

مەن لىۋچوڭ ئانىنىڭ ئۆيىدە تۇرىۋاتقان چېغىمدا، ئۇ دائىم ماڭا ئازادلىقتىن بۇيان كەتتە يۈز بەرگەن چوڭ ئىشلارنى

ئېيتىپ بېرىتتى. *Before liberation he used to have only one meal a day.*

ئازادلىقتىن بۇرۇن ئۇ دائىم ھەر كۈنى ئاران بىر ۋاق تاماق يېيەلەيتتى.

«used to» ئادەتتە «ئىلگىرى شۇنداق، بىراق ھازىر ئۇنداق ئەمەس» دېگەن مەنىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

My elder brother used to be in the PLA. He is now party secretary of our brigade.

مېنىڭ ئاكام ئىلگىرى ئازادلىق ئارمىيە جەنچىسى ئىدى. ئۇ ھازىر بىزنىڭ چوڭ ئەتىزەننىڭ پارتكوم سېكرېتارى.

(4) شەرت، ۋاقىت ھالەت بېقىندى چۆملىسىدە ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

مەسىلەن: *They said they would let us know if they heard any news about him.*

ئۇلار: «سىلەر ئەگەر ئۇنىڭغا ئائىت قانداقلا خەۋەر بولسا

بىزگە ادەرھال ئۇقتۇرۇش قىلىڭلار» دېدى.

He promised me that when he went to the book store he would get me a copy of the selected stories of Lusun.

ئۇ ماڭا كىتابخانغا بارغاندا، ماڭا ۋاكالىتەن «لۇشۇن» نىڭ سەزلىرىدىن تاللانما» نى ئەكىلىپ بېرىشكە ماقۇل بولغانىدى.

(4) ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان ۋە ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى ۋە شەكلى

ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان (future indefinite tense) كەلگۈسى مەلۇم بىر پەيتتىكى ھەرىكەت ياكى ھالەتنى ۋە ياكى كەلگۈسى

ئىككىنچى باب ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

(1) كەلگۈسىدىكى ھەرىكەت ۋە ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

I shall go back to see my childhood friends in the summer vacation

يازلىق تەتىلدە مەن قايتىپ ئوغلۇمنىڭ دوستىنى كۆرىمەن.

Today we shall have a report on the situation in Africa.

بۈگۈن بىزنىڭ ئافرىقا ۋەزىيىتىگە ئائىت دوكلات يىغىنىمىز

باز (ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان is نى قوللانمىسىمۇ بولىدۇ)

He will come to see you the day after tomorrow.

ئۆزگۈنلۈككە ئۇ سېنى كۆرگىلى كېلىدۇ.

The indoor swimming pool will be open to the public from October 16.

ئۆي ئىچى سۇ ئۈزۈش كۆلچىكى 10 - ئاينىڭ 16 - كۈنى

ئېچىلىشقا بېكىتىلدى.

He will go to the technical training class every other day.

ئۇ ئىككى كۈندە بىر قېتىم تېخنىك مەشىق سىنىپىغا بېرىپ

ئۆگىنىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان دائىم بىر قاتار كەل-

گۈسى ۋاقىتنى بىلدۈرىدىغان ھالەتلەر بىلەن بىللە كېلىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: tomorrow (ئەتە)، nextweek (كېلەر ھەپتە)،

from now on (ھازىردىن باشلاپ)، in a month (بىر ئايدىن

كېيىن)، in the future (كەلگۈسىدە) قاتارلىقلار.

	ئاددىي سوراق جۈملى	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
پېتىل be	Will you be...? Will he be...? Will they be...?	Yes, I will. No, I will not. Yes, He will. NO, He will not. Yes, they will. No, they will not.
پېتىل have	Will You have...? Will he have...? Will they have...?	yes, I will. no, I will not. yes, he will. no, he will not. yes, they will. no, they will not.
مەرىكەت پېتىل study	will you study...? will he study...? will they study...?	yes, I will. no, I will not. yes, he will. no, he will not. yes, they will. no, they will not.

[ئەسكەرتىش] will دائىم قىسقارتىلىپ ئىگە بىلەن بىللە يېزىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن: I'll , he'll , it'll , we'll , you'll , they'll will ۋە shaii غا ئائىت قىسقارتىلمىلار.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئاددىي سوراق جۈملىدە will you ...? ئىشلىتىلگەن بولسا ئۇنىڭ قىسقارتىلما جاۋابى yes, I will ياكى no, I will not بولۇشى كېرەك؛ ئەگەر shall you ...? ئىشلىتىلگەن بولسا (نەسبەتەن ئاز ئۇچرايدۇ)، ئۇنىڭ قىسقارتىلما جاۋابى I shall ياكى No, I shall not بولىدۇ.

When are you going back to your factory?
سەن قاچان زاۋۇتقا قايتىسەن؟

He is not coming.
ئۇ كەلمەيدۇ.

They are leaving for Tibet.
ئۇلار شىزاڭغا بارىدۇ.

(4) «پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى + to be about» بۇ
شەكىل پات ئارىدا يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

The English evening is about to begin.

ئىنگلىز تىلى كۆڭۈل ئېچىش كېچىلىكى باشلىنىش ئالدىدا
تۇرىدۇ.

We are about to leave, so there is no time to visit
him now.

بىز مېڭىش ئالدىدا تۇرىۋاتىمىز، شۇڭا ھازىر ئۇنى كۆرۈپ
كېلىشكە ۋاقىت يوق.

(5) «پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى + to be» ئورۇنلاشتۇ-
رۇلغان ياكى پىلانلانغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

The boys are to go to school next week.

بۇ بالىلار كېلەر ھەپتەدە مەكتەپكە بارىدۇ.

He and I are to meet at The Beijing Railway station.

ئۇنىڭ بىلەن مەن بېيجىڭ پويىز ئىستانسىسىدا ئۇچرىشىشقا
كېلىشىپ قويغان.

Our group is to study imperialism, the highest stage
of capitalism this term.

بۇ مەۋسۈمدە بىزنىڭ گۇرۇپپا «جاھانگىرلىك كاپىتالىزم-
نىڭ ئەڭ يۇقىرى باسقۇچى» دېگەننى ئۆگىنىدۇ.

(6) كەلگۈسى بولىدىغان زامان كەلگۈسىدە يۈز بېرىدىغان
ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

(5) ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان

(2) كەلگۈسىدە دائىم يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتلەرنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

We shall come and work in this factory every year.

بىز كەلگۈسىدە بۇ زاۋۇتقا كېلىپ ئەمگەك قىلىمىز.

ئۈنىڭدىن باشقا كەلگۈسىنى بىلدۈرىدىغان چۈشەنچىلەر

(1) «پېئىلنىڭ مۇقىم بولمىغان شەكلى + to be going»

، بۇ خىل شەكىل ئېغىز تىلىدا ئاز ئۇچرايدۇ، دائىم قىلماقچى

بولغان ياكى يۈز بېرىش مۇمكىنچىلىكى بولغان ئىشنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

We are going to visit the museum of Chinese History.

بىز جۇڭگو تارىخى مۇزېيىغا بارىمىز.

What are we going to see today? — we are going to see

a gymnastic performance.

بىز بۈگۈن نېمىنى كۆرىمىز؟ — گىمناستىكا نومۇرلىرىنى

كۆرىمىز.

It is going to rain. يامغۇر ياغىدىغان ئوخشايدۇ.

The meeting is going to start at seven.

يىغىن سائەت يەتتىدە باشلىنىدۇ.

There is going to be a slide show about Dr. Norman

Bethune tonight.

بۈگۈن ئاخشام دوختۇر بېتھۇنغا ئائىت فىلىم قويۇلىدۇ.

(2) go, come, leave, start قاتارلىق ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

بىدىغان پېئىللار، ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان شەكلى ئارقىلىق ئورۇندۇ.

لاشتۇرۇلغان ياكى پىلانلانغان كەلگۈسىدىكى ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

(3) go, come, leave, start قاتارلىق ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

بىدىغان پېئىللار، ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان شەكلىنى ئىشلىتىش

ئارقىلىق بېقىن كەلگۈسىدە يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

دۇ. (ئىنساننىڭ كەلگۈسىدە) (مىسىز) in the future.

ئۈچىنچى باب ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان دائىم تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى
جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I rang up to tell my aunt that I should leave for Inner
Mongolia next Monday.

مەن ھامامغا تېلېفون بېرىپ، كېلەر ھەپتىنىڭ بىرىنچى
كۈنى ئىچكى مۇڭغۇلغا بارىدىغانلىقىمنى ئېيتىپ قويمەن.

Brigade leader Ma said that about twenty agronomists would
come here in a few days.

ما ئەترەت باشلىقى مۇشۇ بىر نەچچە كۈن ئۆپچۆرىسىدە 20
نەپەر ئاگرانوم بۇ يەرگە كېلىدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتقانىدى.

They wanted to know when you would finish the article.

ئۇلارنىڭ سېنىڭ ماقالەڭنى قاچان يېزىپ بولىدىغانلىقىڭنى
بىلگۈسى باركەن.

We asked him where we should go to work next week.

بىز ئۇنىڭدىن كېلەر ھەپتە قەيەرگە ئەمگەك قىلغىلى بارىدۇ.

غانلىقىمىزنى سورىدۇق.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئەمەلىي ئىشلىتىلىشتە، ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى

زاماننىڭ ھەرىكىتى يەنە دائىم ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماندا

ھەرخىل چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشىنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى ئىپادىلىنىدۇ.

دۇ. مەسىلەن، يۇقىرىقى بىرىنچى جۈملىنىڭ should leave

بولسا was leaving نىڭ ئورنىدا كېلىشى، ئىككىنچى جۈملىدىكى

would come نىڭ ئورنىدا were coming نىڭ كېلىشى، تۆتىنچى

جۈملىدە should go نىڭ ئورنىدا were going نىڭ كېلىشى

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى ۋە شەك.

لى

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان (future—in—the—past) ئىلگىرىكى مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتنى سۆزلەپ، كەلگۈسىدە يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەت ياكى مەۋجۇت ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ.

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان should (بىرىنچى شەخس) ياكى would (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) قا پېشلىنىش ئىشلىرىنى بىرىكتۈرۈش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ئامېرىكا تىلىدا مەيلى قايسى كېلىش بولسۇن بىردەك would ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. تۆۋەندە پېشلى go نى مىسال قىلىنىپ، ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش قۇرۇلمىلىرى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق چۈشەندۈرۈلىدۇ.

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I should go	I should not go
You would go	You would not go
He } would go	He } would not go
She } would go	She } would not go
It } would go	It } would not go
We should go	We should not go
You } would go	You } would not go
They } would go	They } would not go

ھازىرقى بولۇۋاتقان زامان	ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان
I am going You are going He } She } is going It } We } You } are going They }	I was going You were going He } She } was going It } We } You } were going They }
كەلگۈسىدە بولۇۋاتقان زامان	ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسىدە بولۇۋاتقان زامان
I shall be going You will be going He } She } will be going It } We shall be going You } will be going They }	I should be going You would be going He } She } would be going It } We should be going You } would be going They }

ئاددىي زامان بىلەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ پەرقى ئاساسلىق ئىككى تەرەپتە كۆرۈلىدۇ:

(1) ئاددىي زامان ئادەتتە دائىملىق ھەرىكەت ۋە ھالەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بىراق بولۇۋاتقان زامان بولسا مەلۇم بىر پەيتتە ياكى بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت ئىچىدە ئېلىپ بېرىلۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ:

We read newspapers every day.

بىز ھەر كۈنى گېزىت ئوقۇيمىز.

She is now reading the newspaper.

ئۇ ھازىر گېزىت ئوقۇۋاتىدۇ.

(2) ئاددىي زامان ئىگىنىڭ مۇقىم ئالاھىدىلىكى ۋە قابىلىيىتىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ، بولۇۋاتقان زامان بولسا ئىگىنىڭ مەلۇم بىر

ئەجەپلىنەرلىك ئەمەس.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ۋاستىلىك جۈملىدە ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامانىنىڭ شەكلىنىڭ ھەر خىل چۈشەندۈرۈلۈشى بىۋاسىتە ئىشلىتىلىپ، شۇ ئارقىلىق سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم كېيىن يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەت ئۈستىدە ئىشەنچ تۇرغۇزغانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. يۇقىرىدىكى جۈملىدىكىدەك بىرىنچىسىدە am leaving، ئىككىنچىسىدە are coming بولۇپ قوللىنىلدى. يەنە مەسىلەن:

Wang told me that workshop No5 is going to play workshop No2 at basketball.

ۋاڭ ماڭا بەشىنچى سېخ بىلەن ئىككىنچى سېخنىڭ ۋاسىتىسىدە بول مۇسابىقىسى ئېلىپ بارماقچى بولغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

بولۇۋاتقان زامان

(1) ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئاساسىي ئۇقۇم. بولۇۋاتقان زامان (continuous tense) ئىلگىرى، ھازىر ياكى كەلگۈسىدە مەلۇم بىر پەيتتە ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت ئىچىدە بولۇۋاتقان ياكى يۈز بېرىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. تۈرى ۋە شەكلى.

بولۇۋاتقان زامان ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان، ئۆتكەندە بولغان زامان، كەلگۈسىدە بولۇۋاتقان زامان، ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسىدە بولمىغان زامان قاتارلىق تۆت تۈرلۈك بولۇپ، بىردەك ياردەمچى بېشىل be نىڭ تۆت خىل ئاددىي زامان شەكلىگە ھازىرقى تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. بۇنى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدىن كۆرۈۋېلىشقا بولىدۇ:

شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. تۆۋەندە پېئىل go نى مىسال قىلىپ، ھازىرقى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ھەر خىل شەكىللىرىنى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەل ئارقىلىق چۈشەندۈرۈشكە بولىدۇ:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I am going You are going He } is going She } It } We } You } are going They }	I am not going You are not going He } is not going She } It } We } You } are not going They }
ئادىي سوراق	ئىسپاتلىما جاۋاب
Are you going? Is he going? Are they going?	yes, I am. no, I am not. yes, he is. no, he is not. yes, they are. no, they are not.

ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

1) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان شۇ ۋاقىت - پەيتتىكى ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ (سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم سۆزلەگەن ۋاقىتتا)، ئۇ بۇ ھەرىكەت قاچان باشلانغانلىقىنى، قاچان ئاخىرلىشىدىغانلىقىنى بىلدۈرمەيدۇ.

What are you doing? — I am doing some washing.

سەن نېمە قىلىۋاتىسەن؟

مەن كىرى يۇيىۋاتىمەن.

Secretary Wen is studying Anti-Duhring with the Workers.

ۋېن سېكرىتار بىلەن ئىشچىلار ئانتى - دۇخرىك نەزەرىيەسىنى.

بەيت ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ئارىلىق (ۋاقىت) ئىچىدە ئېلىپ
بېرىۋاتقان كۆنكەرت ھەرىكىتىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ:
ئۇ ناخشىنى ياخشى ئېيتىدۇ.

He sings well.

ئۇ ئىنقىلاب ناخشى ئېيتىۋاتىدۇ.

He is singing a revolutionary song.

[ئەمكەرتىش] بارلىق پېشىلارنىڭ ھەممىسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماندا كېلىۋەرمەيدۇ. مەسىلەن، كەپپىيات، ھېمىسىيات، تۇيغۇ-لارنىڭ مەلۇم پېشىلى، ئادەتتە پەقەت ئاددىي زاماندا كېلىدۇ. بولۇۋاتقان زاماندا كېلىمەيدۇ. چۈنكى بۇ پېشىلار بولۇۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرەلمەيدۇ. مەسىلەن، (know) (بىل-مەك) بولۇۋاتقان زاماندا كەلمەيدۇ. بۇ تۈردىكى پېشىللاردىن be (يولسا)، have (بار)، love (سۆيۈش)، hate (ئۆچلىشىش) want (ماقچى، مەكچى)، like (ياخشى كۆرۈش)، think (دەپ قاراش)، believe (ئىشىنىش)، see (كۆرۈش)، hear (ئاڭلاش) قاتارلىقلار بار.

(2) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان

ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى:

ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان (present continuous tense)
(سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم) ھازىر ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى كۆر-
سىتىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

The young worker is cleaning the machine.

بۇ ياش بالا ھازىر ماشىنا سۈرتىۋاتىدۇ.
قار يېغىۋاتىدۇ؟

Is it snowing?

ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ شەكلى: ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان ياردەمچى پېشىل am, are, is غا پېشىلنىڭ ھازىرقى تارماق

evening. تۈنۈگۈن كەچ سائەت بەشتە مەن كىچىك ئىسكروپكا مەشىق قىلىۋاتاتتىم.

When Xiao Dong arrived home, his sister was doing her home work.

شياۋدۇڭ ئۆيگە قايتقاندا، ئۇنىڭ سىڭلىسى تاپشۇرۇق ئىش-لەۋاتاتتى.

She was watching TV all evening.

ئۇ كەچكىچە تېلېۋىزور كۆردى. ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ شەكلى.

ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان (بىرىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) ياكى (قالغان شەخس ۋە ساندا) غا ھازىرقى تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. تۆۋەندە پېئىل go نى مىسال قىلىپ تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدىن كۆرۈۋېلىشقا بولىدۇ:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I was going You were going He } was going She } It } We } You } were going They }	I was not going You were not going He } She } was not going It } We } You } were not going They }
ئاددىي سوراق	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
Were you going? Was he going? Were they going?	yes, I was. no, I was not. Yes, he was. no, he was not. yes, they were. no, they were not.

سنى ئۆگىنىۋاتىدۇ. ھەممىسىمۇ ئۆزلىرىنىڭ ئىشلىرىنى تەتقىق قىلىۋاتىدۇ.

A group of workers, cadres and technicians are discussing how to raise production.

ئىشچىلار، كادىرلار ۋە تېخنىكلار قانداق قىلغاندا ئىشلەپچىقىرىشنى ئۆستۈرگىلى بولىدىغانلىقى ئۈستىدە مۇزاكىرىلىشىۋاتىدۇ.

(2) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان ھازىرقى باسقۇچتا ئېلىپ بېرىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرەلەيدۇ. ئېھتىمال شۇ پەيت - ۋاقىتتا بۇ ھەرىكەت ئېلىپ بېرىلمىغان بولۇشى مۇمكىن. مەسىلەن:

The study group is working on a report.

ئۆگىنىش گۇرۇپپىسى بىر پارچە دوكلات يېزىۋاتىدۇ.

They are compiling a Chinese-English dictionary.

ئۇلار بىر خەنزۇچە - ئىنگلىزچە لۇغەت تۈزۈۋاتىدۇ.

(3) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان بەزى ھاللاردا كەلگۈسىدە يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنىمۇ ئىپادىلەيدۇ (stay, come, go), start, leave قاتارلىق يۆتكىلىشچان پېئىللار ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

مەسىلەن:

He is coming to see you tomorrow.

ئۇلار ئەتە سېنى كۆرگىلى كېلىدۇ.

They are going to the Ming Tombs this coming Sunday.

بۇ يەكشەنبەدە ئۇلار 13 قەبرىستانلىققا بارىدۇ.

(3) ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى.

ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان (past continuous tense) - ئىلگىرى

مەلۇم بىر پەيتتە ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىتتا ئېلىپ

بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

I was practising the violin at eight o'clock yesterday

ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئاساسلىق ئىشلىتىلىشى
ئۇ ئۆتكەندە مەلۇم بىر پەيت ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت
ئىچىدە ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بۇ ئالاھىدە
ۋاقىت كۆپ ھاللاردا ۋاقىت ھالىتى بىلەن بىرگە كېلىدۇ. مەسى-
لەن:

She was reading an English magazine when I came in.
مەن كىرگەن ۋاقىتتا ئۇ ئىنگلىزچە ژۇرنال كۆرۈۋاتقان
ئىكەن.

While we were talking with the team leader, the
party secretary came up.
بىز ئەترەت باشلىقى بىلەن سۆزلىشىۋاتقان ۋاقىتتا، پارتىيە
ياچېيكىسى سېكرىتارى كىرىپ كېلىۋاتاتتى.
They were cleaning the auditorium from 7 to 9 last night.
تۈنۈگۈن كەچتە سائەت يەتتىدىن توققۇزغىچە بىر چوڭ زالىنى
تازىلىدۇق.

ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىشى
(1) يۆتكىلىشچان پېئىلنى ئىپادىلەيدىغان ، come ، go ،
leave ، stay ، start قاتارلىق ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان پېئىللى-
رى، ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسىنى ۋە يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەي-
دۇ. مەسىلەن:

They wanted to know when we were leaving for Shanghai.
ئۇلار بىلەرنىڭ قاچان شاخخەيگە بارىدىغانلىقىنى بىل-
مەكچى ئىكەن.

She asked whether he was starting the next day.
ئۇ ئۇنىڭدىن ئىككىنچى كۈنى باشلايدىغان، باشلىمايدىغان-
لىقىنى سورىدى.

(2) پېئىل go نىڭ ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان شەكلىگە پېئىل-
نىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى قوشۇلسا، ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن
كېيىن يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ (سېلىشتۇرۇلمىسى

نى مسال قىلىش ئارقىلىق چۈشەندۈرۈشكە بولىدۇ:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I We } should be going He (She, It) You They } would be going	I We } should not going He (She, It) You They } would not be going

2) كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

(a) كەلگۈسىدە مەلۇم بىر پەيت ياكى مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتا ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

This time tomorrow I shall be flying to Guangzhou.

ئەتە مۇشۇ ۋاقىتتا مەن گۇاڭجۇغا ئۇچۇۋاتقان يول سەپىرىدە بولىمەن.

—What will you be doing at eight tomorrow morning?

ئەتە كەچ سائەت سەككىزدە نېمە ئىش قىلىمەن؟

—I'll be working in the boiler room.

مەن كاتولدا ئىشلەيمەن.

I shall be waiting for you in my room after supper.

مەن كەچلىك تاماقتىن كېيىن سېنى ئۆيۈمدە ساقلاي.

Don't come at ten o'clock tomorrow, he will be working then.

ئەتە سائەت ئوندا كەلمىگەن، ئۇ چاغدا ئۇ ئىشلەيدۇ.

(b) دەرۋەقە ياكى ئورۇنلاشتۇرۇلۇپ پىلانلانغان كەلگۈسىدە يۈز بېرىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ:

We shall be having a meeting in a minute.

بىز بىر ئازدىن كېيىن يىغىننى باشلايمىز.

The spare time propaganda team will be putting on

performances on May Day.

ئىشلىتىش سىرتقى تەشۋىقات ئەترىتى «ئەمگەكچىلەر بايرىمى»

دا ئويۇن قويىدۇ.

ھەرىكەت ياكى تەرەققىيات كۆرۈنۈشىنى تەكىتلەيدۇ. سېلىشتۇ-
رۇپ كۆرسەك:

We built a bridge last winter.

قىش ئۆتۈپ بىز بىر كۆۋرۈك ياسىدۇق (قىش كەتكەندىن
كېيىن بىز بىر ئىش قىلدۇق. كۆۋرۈك ئاللىقاچان ياسىلىپ
بولغان).

We were building a hydro—electris station last winter.

قىش ئۆتۈپ بىز ئېلېكتر ئىستانسىسى ياساۋاتمىز. (مەندە-
سى — قىش كېتىشى بىلەنلا بىز ئۇدا سۇئېلېكتر ئىستانسىسى
ياساۋاتمىز، ياسىلىپ بولغان — بولمىغانلىقى ئېنىق ئەمەس)

I wrote a letter home last night.

تۈنۈگۈن كەچتە مەن ئۆيگە خەت يازدىم. (مەنسى —
تۈنۈگۈن مەن بىر ئىش قىلدىم، خەتنى يېزىپ بولدۇم.)

I was writing a letter to my friend in Qingdao last night.

تۈنۈگۈن كەچتە مەن چىڭداۋدىكى دوستۇمغا خەت يېزىۋاتات-
تىم. (مەنسى — تۈنۈگۈن كەچتە مەن ئۇدا خەت يازدىم، يېزىپ
بولغان بولۇشى ناتايىن)

(4) كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زامان

كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى، شەكلى ۋە
ئىشلىتىلىشى

كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زامان (future continuous tense)

كەلگۈسى مەلۇم بىر پەيت ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت ئىچىدە-
كى ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.
1) كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ شەكلى:

ياردەمچى پېئىلنىڭ كەلگۈسى زامان شەكلى ھەمدە shall be
(بىرىنچى شەخس) ياكى will be (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس)

گە ھازىرقى زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ.
ئامېرىكا تىلىدا بىردەك will ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. تۆۋەندە پېئىل go

لاشتۇرۇلۇپ پىلانلانغان بولۇۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.
 He said he could not come because he would be having
 a meeting.

ئۇ يىغىن ئاچقاچقا كېلەلمەيدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

4. پۈتكەن زامان

(1) ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئاساسىي ئوقۇم (perfect tense). ئۆتكەن، ھازىر، كەلگۈ-
 سىدىكى مەلۇم ئالاھىدە ۋاقىتتىن بۇرۇن يۈز بەرگەن ياكى تامام-
 لانغان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ. بۇ ھەرىكەت يەنە دائىمىي ۋە
 كېيىنكى ئەھۋاللارنىڭ تەرەققىياتىغا مۇقىم مۇناسىۋەتلىك.
 تۈرى. بۇ كىتابتا پەقەت ئۈچ خىل پۈتكەن زامان مۇزاكىرە
 قىلىنىدۇ. يەنى ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان، ئىلگىرى پۈتكەن زامان
 ۋە كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان.

شەكلى

ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان	ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان	كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان
I have seen...	I	I shall have seen...
You have seen...	You	You will have seen...
He } has seen...	He	He } will have seen...
She } has seen...	She	She } will have seen...
We } have seen...	We	We shall have seen...
You } have seen...	You	You } will have seen...
They } have seen...	They	They } will have seen...

(2) ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان

ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى ۋە شەكلى.
 ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان (present perfect tense)، ھەرىكەت
 يۈز بەرگەن ۋاقىت ئۆتكەن بولسىمۇ، لېكىن ھازىرقى ئەھۋال
 بىلەن مۇناسىۋەتلىك، ئىلگىرى يۈز بەرگەن ھەرىكەت ئارقىلىق

(5) ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زامان

ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى،
شەكلى ۋە ئىشلىتىلىشى

ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زامان (future - in-the - past continuous tense) ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتا سۆزلەنگەن مەلۇم بىر پەيت ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ئارىلىقتا ئېلىپ بېرىلدىغان ۋاقىتتا ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.

(1) ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ شەكلى
should be (بىرىنچى شەخس) ياكى would be (ئىككىنچى،
ئۈچىنچى شەخس) گە ھازىرقى زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش
ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ئامېرىكا تىلىدا بىردەك would
ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. تۆۋەندىكى go نى مىسال قىلىش ئارقىلىق چۈشەندۈرۈلدى.

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I } shall be going We }	I } shall not going We }
He (She, It) } You } will be going They }	He (She, It) } You } will not be going They }

(2) ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

(a) ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسىدە مەلۇم بىر پەيتتە ياكى مەلۇم بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىت ئىچىدە بولۇۋاتقان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.

He asked me what I should be doing at ten the next day.
ئۇ مەندىن ئىككىنچى كۈنى سائەت ئوندا نېمە ئىش قىلىدىغانلىقىمنى سورىدى.

They said that they would be expecting us the next week.
ئۇلار كېلەر ھەپتە بىزنى ساقلايدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

(b) ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن كېيىن دەرۋەقە ياكى ئورۇن

century.

1) جۇڭگو ئۆتكەنكى 1/4 ئەسىر ئىچىدە ئاشلىق مەسىلىسىنى
ھەل قىلدى.
2) ھەرىكەت ئىلگىرى تاماملانغان بولۇپ، «تەجرىبە» نى
بىلدۈرىدۇ.

—Have you ever seen the film Lenin in October?

— «لېنىن ئۆكتەبىردە» دېگەن فىلىمنى كۆرگەنمۇ؟

—Yes, I have seen it twice.

— ھەئە، ئىككى قېتىم كۆرگەن.

I have spent three years on an army form.

مەن ھەربىيلەر بوز يەر ئۆزلەشتۈرۈش مەيدانىدا ئۈچ يىل تۇرغان.
[ئەسكەرتىش] be نىڭ تۆۋەندىكى جۈملىلەردىكى مەنىسىگە دىققەت

قىلىڭ:

Where have you been? —I've been to the laboratory.

سەن نەگە باردىڭ؟ — مەن تەجرىبىخانىغا باردىم.

How have you been? —I've been very well, thank you.

يېقىندىن بېرى سالامەتلىكىڭ قانداقراق؟ — رەخمەت، مەن

يېقىندىن بېرى ياخشى تۇرىۋاتىمەن.

Have you ever been to Hang zhou? —No, I've never
been there.

سەن خاڭجۇغا بېرىپ باققانمۇ؟— ياق بېرىپ باقمىغان.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان بىلەن ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ پەرقى.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان بىلەن ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان ئىككىلى.

سىلا ئىلگىرى تاماملانغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بىراق ھازىر

پۈتكەن زامان بۇ ھەرىكەت بىلەن ھازىرقى مۇناسىۋەتنى تەكىتلەيدۇ.

دۇ، ھازىرقى نەتىجە، تەسىرگە ئوخشاش قاتارلىقلار، بىراق

ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماندا بولسا ھەرىكەت ئىلگىرى يۈز بەرگەن بو-

ھازىرقى ئەھۋالنى چۈشەندۈرىدۇ. ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان بولسا ھازىرقى زامان بولىدۇ. ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان ياردەمچى پېئىل (has) + ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوراق ۋە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قۇرۇلمىسى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلگەندەك بولىدۇ.

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I } have seen it. You } He } has seen it. She } We } You } have seen it. They }	I } have not seen it. You } He } has not seen it. She } We } You } have not seen it. They }
ئاددىي سوراق	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
Have you seen it? Has he seen it ? Have they seen it?	yes, I have. no, I have not. yes ,he has. no, he has not. yes ,they have. no, they have not.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسلىق ئىشلىتىلىشى
 1) ھەرىكەت ھازىرغىچە بولغان ئارىلىقتا ئورۇنلانغان ياكى ئەمدىلا پۈتكەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.
 مەسىلەن:

I have finished my work.

مەن خىزمىتىمنى ئىشلىپ بولدۇم.

We have set up many new factories.

بىز نۇرغۇنلىغان يېڭى زاۋۇتلارنى قۇردۇق.

China has solved her food problem in the past quarter—

(مەنىسى — ھازىر قورسقىم توق، يەنە يېمەيمەن)

A: When did you have it?

قاچان يېگەن؟
(سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم قىزىقىپ «يېگەن» بۇ ۋاقىت قاچان يۈز
پەرگەنلىكىنى سورىغان)

B: I had it about half an hour ago.

مەن تەخمىنەن يېرىم سائەت ئىلگىرى يېگەن.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زامانىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىشى.

(1) ھەرىكەت ئىلگىرى پەيدا بولغان ھەمدە ھازىرغىچە داۋام.

لىشىنىپ كېلىۋاتقان، ھەتتا ئۇدا يەنە داۋاملىق ئۈزۈلمەي بولۇپ

تۇرىدىغانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بۇ ۋاقىتتا دائىم since دىن باشلىد.

غان قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمە ياكى بېقىندى جۈملە ياكى for دىن

باشلىغان قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمە بىلەن بىرلىشىپ ئىشلىتىلىدۇ،

(for بەزى چاغدا چۈشۈپ قالىدۇ).

How long have you been in Beijing? — I have been in

Beijing for four years.

سەن بېيجىڭدا قانچە ئۇزۇن تۇرغان؟

مەن بېيجىڭدا تۆت يىل تۇرغان.

Xiao wang's father has been a village cadre since

the land reform in 1948.

شياۋۋاڭنىڭ دادىسى 1948 - يىلى يەر ئىسلاھاتى بولغاندىن

تارتىپ ئۇدا كەنت كادىرى بولۇپ كەلگەندى.

Since the liberation new things have appeared

one after another.

ئازادلىقتىن كېيىن يېڭى شەيئەلەر ئارقا - ئارقىدىن پەيدا

بولدى.

Four years have passed since I joined the army.

لۇپ، ھازىرقى مۇناسىۋىتىنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىشى ناتايىن. سە -
لىشتۇرۇپ باقايلى:

1) I have lost my pen.

مەن قەلىمىمنى يىتتۈرۈپ قويدۇم.
(مەنىسى - تېخىچە تاپالمىدىم، ھازىر مېنىڭ قەلىمىم
يوق)

She lost her pen yesterday.

ئۇ تۈنۈگۈن قەلىمىنى يىتتۈرۈپ قويۇپتۇ.
(مەنىسى - قەلەم تۈنۈگۈن يىتكەن، ھازىر تاپالمىدىمۇ،
تاپالمىدىمۇ چۈشەندۈرۈلمىدى)

2) I have been to the Agricultural Exhibition.

مەن بۇ يېزا ئىگىلىك كۆرگەزمە يىغىنىنى كۆرۈپ بولغان.
(مەنىسى - 1 - شەخسنىڭ يىغىنىنىڭ مەزمۇنىنى بىلىدىغانلىقىدىن
ئى تەكىتلەيدۇ)

I went to the Agricultural Exhibition last week.

مەن ئۆتكەن ھەپتەدە يېزا ئىگىلىك كۆرگەزمە يىغىنىغا
بارغان.

(ئۆتكەن ھەپتەدە كۆرگەزمىگە بارغانلىقىنىلا چۈشەندۈردى.
دۇ)

3) Who has opened the door?
(ئىشىك ھازىرمۇ ئوچۇق ئىكەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ)

ئىشىكنى كىم ئاچقان؟ Who opened the door? (ئىلگىرىنى
كۆرسىتىپ، ھازىر بىلەن ئالاقىسى يوقلۇقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. ھا -
زىر ئىشىك ئېتىكىمۇ ياكى ئوچۇقمۇ، چۈشەندۈرۈلمىگەن)

4) A: Have you had your lunch?
سەن تاماق يېگەنمۇ؟

(مەنىسى - ھازىر سېنىڭ قورسىقىڭ ئاچمىدىمۇ؟)

B: Yes, I have.

يېڭى كىتاب تېخىچە كەلمىدى.

The Xisha Islands have always been chinese territory.

شىشا تاقىم ئاراللىرى ئەزەلدىنلا جۇڭگونىڭ زېمىنىدۇر.

Have they finished spreading manure yet?

ئۇلار ئوغۇتنى تارتىپ بولدىمۇ؟

Many westerners have never seen a giant panda.

نۇرغۇنلىغان غەربلىكلەر چوڭ مۈشۈك ئېيىقىنى ئەزەلدىن

كۆرۈپ باقمىغان.

(3) ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان يەنە «ھازىر» قى ۋاقت ئىچىدىكى

ۋاقت ھالەتلىرى بىلەنمۇ بىللە كېلەلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن: now ،

this year ، this month ، today قاتارلىقلار.

مەسىلەن:

Our workshop has made fifty new lathes this month.

بىزنىڭ سېخ بۇ ئايدا 50 دانە يېڭى ماشىنا كارىۋىتىنى

ياسىدى.

We have planted many fruit trees this year.

بۇ يىل بىز نۇرغۇنلىغان مېۋىلىك دەرەخ تىكتۇق.

بىراق سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم پەقەت بۇ بىر بۆلەك ۋاقىتتا يۈز

بەرگەن مەلۇم بىر ھەرىكەت بولسا، لېكىن بۇ خىل ھەرىكەت

ھازىر بىلەن مۇناسىۋەتسىز بولسا، چوقۇم ئۆتكەن زامان ئىشلىدۇ.

تىلىدۇ.

The conference opened this month.

يىغىن مۇشۇ ئايدا ئېچىلىدۇ.

Their brigade set up a pumping station this year.

ئۇلارنىڭ ئەترىتى بۇ يىل يېڭىدىن بىر سۇ چىقىرىش ئىس-

تانىسى ياسىدى.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان سوراق رەۋىشلىرى

how ، why ، where لار بىلەن بىللە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. بىراق

ئادەتتە سوراق رەۋىشى when بىلەن بىللە ئىشلىتىلمەيدۇ.

مەن ئارمىيىگە قاتناشقاندىن بېرى ئاللىقاچان تۆت يىل ئۆتۈپ كەتتى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] بىراق تۆۋەندىكى جۈملىلەردە، ئىگىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان شەكلىدىمۇ ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

It is three years since I began to work on the state farm.

مەن دۆلەت ئىگىلىكىدىكى دېھقانچىلىق مەيدانىدا خىزمەت قىلىۋاتقىلى ئۈچ يىل بولدى.

It is a long time since I saw you last.

كۆرۈشمىگىلى خېلى ئۇزۇن بولپتۇ.

ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ۋاقتى ھالىتى مەسىلىسى.

(1) ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ چۈشەندۈرىدىغىنى بولسا ھازىر.

قى ئەھۋال، ھازىرقى زامان، شۇڭا ئۆتكەنكى ۋاقتىنى بىلدۈرىدە.

خان ۋاقتى ھالىتى yesterday ، last month ، tree years .

in 1960 قاتارلىقلار بىلەن بىللە كەلمەيدۇ. بۇ ۋاقتى ھالەتلىرى

پەقەت ئۆتكەن زامان بىلەن بىرگە كېلىدۇ ۋە ئىلگىرىكى ھەرىكەت.

نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بىراق ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماننى بولسا ئۆتكەن

زامان ۋاقتى رەۋىشى just ۋە before بىلەن بىرلىكتە ئىشلىتىشكە

بولىدۇ. مەسىلەن،

ئۇ ھېلىلا كەلدى. He has just come.

We have seen the film before.

بىز بۇ فىلىمنى ئىلگىرى كۆرگەن.

(2) ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان دائىم مۇقىملاشمىغان ۋاقتى رەۋىشى.

شى بىلەن بىرلىكتە كېلەلەيدۇ. never ، often ، already .

ever ، always ، yet ، yet...not قاتارلىقلار.

مەسىلەن:

Have you ever worked in a coal mine?

سەن كۆمۈر كېنىدا ئىشلەپ باققانمۇ؟

The new books have not arrived yet.

مۇنبەينەشتۈرۈش	ئىنگار قىلىش
I(We) You He(She, They) } had seen it	I(We) You He(She, They) } had not seen it
ئاددىي سوراق	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
Had you seen it? Had he seen it? Had they seen it?	yes, I had. no, I had not. yes, he had. no, he had not. yes, they had. no, they had not.

ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسلىق ئىشلىتىلىشى
 1) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان ئۆتكەندىكى مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىت ياكى
 ھەرىكەتتىن ئىلگىرى ئاللىقاچان ئورۇنلىنىپ بولغان ھەرىكەتنى
 ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بۇ ئۆتكەن ۋاقىت ، by ، before قاتارلىق ئالدى
 قوشۇلغۇچىلار ياكى بىر ۋاقىت ھالىتى بېقىندى جۈملىسى بىلەن
 ئىپادىلىنىدۇ.

By the end of 1958 we had set up five nurseries in our neighbourhood.

1958 - يىلىنىڭ ئاخىرىغىچە بىر كوچىدا بەش يەسلى قۇرغان ئىدۇق.

Lao wang had learned some English before he came to the institute.

لاۋۋاڭ ئىنىستىتۇتقا كېلىشتىن ئىلگىرى ئازراق ئېنگلىزچە ئۆگەنگەن.

I didnt go to the film because I had seen it twice.

ئېنىڭ كىنوغا بارماسلىقىمنىڭ سەۋەبى بۇ فىلىمنى مەن

when ئادەتتە پەقەت ئۆتكەن زامان بىلەن بىللە كېلىدۇ.
Where have you been? قەيەرگە باردىڭ؟

(ئۆتكەندىكى ئەھۋالنى سوراۋاتىدۇ). مەسىلەن ئېيتايلى:

How پەقەت ئورۇننىلا سوراۋاتىدۇ. Where did you go?

Why have you turned off the radio?

رەپىيەم سېنىڭ رادىيوني توختىتىپ قويۇپ نېمە قىلغىنىڭ؟ (ھازىر

بىلەن بولغان مۇناسىۋىتىنى تەكىتلىگەن، بۇ رادىيوني توختاتقۇ-

چىغا قارىتىلىۋاتىدۇ). مەسىلەن ئېيتايلى:

why did you turn off the radio?

(رادىيونىڭ ئۆچۈرۈلۈشىدەك بۇ ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئۆتكەنلىكىنى

تەكىتلەۋاتىدۇ).

(3) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان

ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى ۋە شەكلى.

ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان (past perfect tense) بولسا ئۆتكەن

مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىت ياكى ھەرىكەتتىن ئىلگىرى ئالدىنقىچان ئورۇنلدا-

نىپ بولغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. قىسقارتىپ ئېيتقاندا، ئۆت-

كەن پۈتكەن زامان ئىپادىلىگەن ۋاقىت بولسا «ئىلگىرىكىدىن

ئىلگىرى» بولغان بولىدۇ.

ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان ياردەمچى پېئىل + had ئۆتكەن زامان

تارماق پېئىلنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن

زاماننىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش، ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوراق ۋە

قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق تۆت خىل قۇرۇلمىسى تۆۋەندىكى

چەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلگەندەك:

رەپىيەم ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننى قوللىنىپ: $had + V_{pp}$

رەپىيەم ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننى قوللىنىپ: $had + V_{pp}$

رەپىيەم ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننى قوللىنىپ: $had + V_{pp}$

رەپىيەم ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننى قوللىنىپ: $had + V_{pp}$

رەپىيەم ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زاماننى قوللىنىپ: $had + V_{pp}$

تىگەنلىك تاماق يەيمىز .

The train started to move just before he reached the platform .

ئۇ بىلەت ئېلىش ئورنىغا كەلگەن چاغدا پويىز تېخى ئەمدىلا قوزغالغانىدى .

The commune members started ploughing as soon as they got to the fields .

كۆمۈنا ئەزالىرى ئېتىزغا بېرىپلا يەر ئاغدۇرۇشقا باشلىدى .

(4) كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان

كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئاساسى ئۇقۇمى ۋە شەكلى كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان (future perfect tense) كەلگۈسى مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن ئىلگىرى ئورۇنلانغان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ. ئۇنىڭ شەكلى shall (بىرىنچى شەخس) ياكى will (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) گە have نى قوشۇپ يەنە ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش ۋە ئىنكار شەكلى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلگەندەك:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I shall have been it.	I shall not have been it.
You } will have seen it.	You } will not have seen it.
He } will have seen it.	He } will not have seen it.
She } will have seen it.	She } will not have seen it.
We shall have seen it.	We shall not have seen it.
You } will have seen it.	You } will not have seen it.
They } will have seen it.	They } will not have seen it.

كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن زامان كەلگۈسىدىكى مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن ئىلگىرى ئورۇنلىنىپ بولغان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.

ئىلگىرى ئىككى قېتىم كۆرۈپ بولغان.

When I had gone over my lessons I took a rest.

مەن دەرسىمنى تەكرار قىلىپ بولۇپ بىردەم ئارام ئالدىم.

Lao Li told the children that he had suffered a great deal before liberation.

لاۋلى بىزگە بۇ بالىلارنىڭ ئازادلىقتىن ئىلگىرى نۇرغۇن جاپا تارتقانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

(2) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن باشلىنىپ، ئۇدا داۋاملىشىپ ئىلگىرىكى ئايرىم بىر ۋاقىتقىچە بولغان ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ، دائىم for (بەزىدە چۈشۈپ قالد-دۇ) ياكى since بىلەن كەلگەن قىسقا سۆز بىرىكمىسى ياكى since كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان بېقىندى جۈملە بىلەن بىرگە كېلىدۇ.

It rained yesterday after it had been dry for many month.

ھاۋا قۇرغاقلىشىپ بىر نەچچە ئايدىن كېيىن، تۈنۈگۈن يامغۇر ياغدى.

By the time Wuhan was librated in 1949, my father had worked in the factory for for thirty years.

1949 - يىلى ۋۇخەن ئازات بولغان ۋاقىتتا مېنىڭ دادام

زاۋۇتتا ئىشلىگىلى 30 يىل بولغانىدى.

[ئەسكەرتىش]

as soon as ، after ، before بولغان

قاتارلىقلار كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان بېقىندى جۈملىلەر ئىپادىلىگەن

ھەرىكەت ۋە باش جۈملىلەرنىڭ ھەرىكەتلىرى داۋاملاشقان ۋاقىتتا

تا، بۇ باغلىغۇچىلار ئەسلىدىنلا ئىككى ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئالدى -

كەينىدە پەيدا بولىدىغانلىقىنى چۈشەندۈرگەچكە، ئىككىلا ھەرىد-

كەت تەكشى ھالدا ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلىنىدۇ.

مەسىلەن:

We had breakfast after we did morning exercises.

ئەتىگەنلىك تەنھەرىكەتنى ئويىناپ بولغاندىن كېيىن بىز ئەت-

ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان	ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان
I have been working. You have been working. He } has been working She } We } You } have been working They }	I } You } He } had been working She } We } You } They }

(2) ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان
 ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ تۆت خىل قۇرۇلمىسى
 ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان
 (perfect continuous tense) نىڭ مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش،
 ئىنكار قىلىش، ئاددىي سوئال ۋە قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق
 تۆت خىل قۇرۇلمىسى تۆۋەندىكىدەك:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I } You } have been working He } She } has been working We } You } have been working They }	I } You } have not been working He } She } has not been working We } You } have not been working They }
ئاددىي سوئال	قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب
Have you been working? Has he been working? Have they been working?	yes, I have. no, I have not. yes, he has. no, he has not. yes, they have. no, they have not.

ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى

By the end of this month we shall have studied ten lesson.

مۇشۇ ئاينىڭ ئاخىرىغىچە مەن ئون دەرسنى ئۆگىنىپ بولىدۇ.

مەن.

By this time tomorrow they will have repaired the machine.

ئەتە مۇشۇ ۋاقىتقىچە ئۇلار بۇ ماشىنىنى ياساپ بولىدۇ.

Our brigade will have completed the canal by the time

you come back next year.

سەن كېلەر يىلى قايتىپ كەلگۈچە، بىزنىڭ ئەترەتنىڭ سۇ

ئامبىرى ياسىلىپ بولىدۇ.

when you come tonight at eight o'clock, I shall have

written my report.

سەن بۈگۈن كەچ سائەت سەككىزدە كەلگۈچە، مەن بۇ دوكلاتنى

يېزىپ بولىمەن.

5. پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

(1) ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئاساسىي ئۇقۇملار: پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

ان

(perfect continuous tense) ھەرىكەت ھازىر ياكى ئۆتكەن مەلۇم

بىر ۋاقىتتىن ئىلگىرى باشلىنىپ ھەمدە ئۇدا قايسى ۋاقىتقىچە

ھازىر ياكى ئۆتكەنكى ۋاقىتقىچە داۋاملىشىپ قالماستىن، بەلكى

يەنە داۋاملىق بولىدىغانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

تۈرلىرى: پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋات-

قان زامان، ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان، كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن

بولۇۋاتقان زامان ۋە ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

دەپ تۆت تۈرگە بۆلۈنىدۇ. بۇ كىتابتا پەقەت ھازىر پۈتكەن

بولۇۋاتقان زامان، ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان ئۈستىدىلا

مۇزاكىرە ئېلىپ بېرىلىدۇ؛

ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان بىلەن ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان
نىڭ سېلىشتۇرۇلمىسى

1. ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت ھازىرغىچە
بولغان ۋاقىتتا ئاللىقاچان ئورۇنلانغان بولىدۇ، ياكى ئىلگىرى
يۈز بەرگەن بولىدۇ؛ ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان كۆپ ھاللار-
دا ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئاۋۋالقىدەك داۋاملىشىۋاتقانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

I have been reading LuXun this week.

بۇ ھەپتىدە مەن لۇشۈننىڭ ئەسەرلىرىنى ئوقۇۋاتقان بولدىم.

مەن.

this week. «A Madman's Diary» I have read

مەن مۇشۇ ھەپتىدە «سەۋدایى خاتىرىسى» نى ئوقۇدۇم. (بۇ

ھەپتىدە باشلاندى، بىراق ئاللىقاچان ئوقۇپ بولدى)

before. «AQ» I have read the story of

ئىلگىرى مەن «ئاق نىڭ تەرجىمىھالى» نى ئوقۇپ بولغان.

(ئۆتكەنكى كەچۈرمىش)

2. ھازىر پۈتكەن زامان ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئەڭ ئاخىرقى نەتىجى-
سىنى تەكىتلەيدۇ. ھازىر پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان بولسا ھەردە-

كەتنىڭ بىۋاسىتە نەتىجىسىنى تەكىتلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:
Now we have cleaned the room, we can move the things.

ئۆي تازىلىنىپ بولدى. بىز نەرسىلەرنى ئىچىگە يۆتكەسەك

بولىدۇ. (ئاخىرقى نەتىجىنى تەكىتىدى)

You look so tired, what have you been doing?

سەن ھارغىن كۆرۈنۈسەن، زادى نېمە قىلىۋاتىسەن؟

(بىۋاسىتە نەتىجىنى تەكىتلەۋاتىدۇ)

(3) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان

(past perfect continuous tense)

(1) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ شەكلى بىردەك +

had been ھازىرقى زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق

1) ھەرىكەت ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن باشلىنىپ داۋام-
لىق ھازىرغىچە بولغان ئارىلىققىچە داۋاملاشقانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

ھازىر بۇ ھەرىكەت ئاللىقاچان توختىغان بولۇشى مۇمكىن
ياكى ئاۋۋالقىدەك ئېلىپ بېرىلىۋاتقان بولۇشىمۇ مۇمكىن. مەسى-
لەن:

I have been waiting for you for two hours.

مەن سېنى ئىككى سائەت ساقلىغان بولمەن. (ھەرىكەت
داۋاملاشمىدى)

It has been raining of three hours.

يامغۇر يېغىۋاتقىلى ئۈچ سائەت بولدى. (ھەرىكەت ئاۋۋالقىدەك
داۋاملىشىۋاتىدۇ)

They have been studying chairman Mao's philosophical
works these three weeks.

بۇ ئۈچ ھەپتىدىن بېرى ئۇلار ماۋزېدۇخنىڭ پەلسەپە ئەسەر-
لىرىنى ئۆگىنىۋاتقانىدى. (ھەرىكەت ئۈزلۈكسىزمۇ ياكى ئەمەس-
مۇ ئالدى كەينىگە قاراپ بېكىتىشكە توغرا كېلىدۇ)

He has been working on the paper all day.

ئۇ ھەرىكۈنى ماقالە يېزىۋاتاتتى. (ھەرىكەت ئۈزلۈكسىزمۇ
ئەمەسمۇ ئالدى كەينىگە قاراپ بېكىتىش كېرەك)

She has been learning her lessons since morning.

ئۇ ئەتىگەندىن تارتىپ ئۆگىنىۋاتاتتى. (ھەرىكەت داۋاملى-
شىۋاتقان بولۇشى مۇمكىن)

2) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زاماندا ئىشلەتكىلى بولمايدىغان ،
be ، like ، have ، know ، see ، hear قاتارلىقلارغا ئوخشاش
يەنىلا ھازىر پۈتكەن زاماندا ئىشلىتىلمەيدۇ. بىراق پەقەت ھازىر
پۈتكەن زاماندا ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

She has been ill for a long time.

ئۇ كېسەل بولغىلى خېلى ئۇزۇن بولدى.

جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىلدىكى زاماننىڭ تەسىرىگە ئۇچرايدۇ، مانا بۇ زامانلارنىڭ بىردەكلىكى دەپ ئاتىلىدۇ. باش جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ھازىرقى ياكى كەلگۈسى زامان بولغان ۋاقىتتا، بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ھەرقانداق كېرەكلىك زاماننى ئىشلىتىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

He says his father is (was, will be) an engineer.

ئۇ دادىسىنىڭ ئىنژىنېر ئىكەنلىكىنى ئېيتتى.

Can you tell me when you finished (will finish) the work?

سەن ئۇ ئىشنى قاچان ئورۇنلاپ بولىدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتىپ بېرەلمەسەن؟

باش جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ئۆتكەن زامان بولۇپ قالسا، بېقىندى جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ئادەتتە ئۆتكەن زاماننى ئىشلىتىشى كېرەك. بۇ تۆۋەندىكى ئۇچ خىل ئەھۋالدا بولىدۇ:

(1) ئەگەر بېقىندى جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت بىلەن باش جۈملىدىكى خەۋەر پېئىل ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت بىرلا ۋاقىتتا يۈز بەرگەن بولسا، ئەگەشمە جۈملە چوقۇم ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان ياكى ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننى ئىشلىتىشى كېرەك. مەسىلەن:

He told me he was unwell.

ئۇ ماڭا مېجەزى يوقلۇقىنى ئېيتتى.

My father told me in his letter that our brigade was building terraced fields.

ئانام يازغان خېتىدە ماڭا ئەترەتتە پەلەمپەي ئېتىز بەرپا قىلىۋاتقانلىقىنى ئېيتىپتۇ.

(2) ئەگەر بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت باش جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلىدا ئىپادىلەنگەن ھەرىكەتتىن بۇرۇن بولسا، بېقىندى جۈملىمۇ ئۆتكەن يۈتكەن زاماننى ئىپادىلىشى كېرەك. مەسىلەن:

He said he had posted the letter.

ياسلىدۇ. ئۇ شەخس، سان بىلەن مۇناسىۋەتسىز. ئۇنىڭ مۇئەييەن يەنلەشتۈرۈش ۋە ئىنكا قۇرۇلمىسى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلگەندەك:

مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈش	ئىنكار قىلىش
I You He She We You They	I You He She We You They
had been working	had not been working

2) ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زاماننىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى. ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان ھەرىكەت ئۆتكەن مەلۇم بىر ۋاقىتتىن ئىلگىرى باشلىنىپ، ئۆتكەن بۇ بىر ۋاقىتقىچە داۋاملاشقانلىقىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. بۇ ھەرىكەت ھازىرمۇ بولۇۋاتقان بولۇشى مۇمكىن، شۇنداقلا توختاپ قالغان بولۇشىمۇ مۇمكىن. مەسىلەن:

He told me that he had been waiting for me for two hours.

ئۇ ماڭا ئىككى سائەت ساقلىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

(ھەرىكەت داۋاملاشمىدى)

By the time Shanghai was liberated, he had been working in this factory for ten years.

شاڭخەي ئازاد بولغان ۋاقىتتا، ئۇ بۇ زاۋۇتتا ئىشلىگىلى ئون يىل بولغانىدى. (ھەرىكەت ھازىرمۇ بولۇۋاتقان بولۇشى مۇمكىن)

6. زامانلارنىڭ بىردەكلىكى

مەنىسى: بەزى بېقىندى جۈملىلەردە (ئاساسلىقى تولدۇرغۇ-چى بېقىندى جۈملە) خەۋەر پېتىلىدىكى زامانلىرى دائىم باش

ئۇ خەتنى تارقىتىۋەتكەنلىكىنى ئېيتتى.

The old worker told us how he and his fellow — workers had fought against the capitalists before liberation.

بۇ پېشقەدەم ئىشچى بىزگە ئازادلىقتىن ئىلگىرى ئۆزى ۋە باشقا ئىشچىلارنىڭ كاپىتالىست بىلەن قانداق كۈرەش قىلغانلىقىنى سۆزلەپ بەردى.

(3) ئەگەر بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت باش جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئىپادىلىگەن خەۋەر پېئىلى لىدىن كېيىن يۈز بەرگەن بولسا، بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى چوقۇم ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان پېئىلىنى ئىشلىتىشى كېرەك.

They did not know when they would go to the Great Wall.

ئۇ سەددىچىن سېپىلىغا قاچان بارغانلىقىنى بىلمەيدىكەن.

He said he was going to be a docker after leaving school.

ئۇ مەكتەپ پۈتتۈرگەندىن كېيىن پىرىستان ئىشچىسى بولىدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] باش جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى ئۆتكەن زامان بولسا، يەنىلا تۆۋەندىكى ئىككى خىل ئەھۋالغا دىققەت قىلىشقا توغرا كېلىدۇ:

(1) بېقىندى جۈملە ئىپادىلىگەن ئەگەر ئادەتتىكى ھەقىقەت ياكى ئوبىيېكتىپ پاكىت بولسا، ئاۋۋالقىدە كىلا ھازىرقى زامان قوللىنىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

The teacher told the pupils that the earth is round.

ئوقۇتقۇچى ساۋاقداشلارغا يەر شارىنىڭ يۇمىلاق ئىكەنلىكىنى ئېيتتى.

Some body told me you are a writer.

بىرسى ماڭا سېنىڭ يازغۇچى ئىكەنلىكىڭنى ئېيتىپ بەردى.

(2) ئەگەر بېقىندى جۈملە ئىپادىلىگەن بىر كۆنكرېت ۋاقت ھالىتى بولسا، خەۋەر پېئىلى ئىپادىلىگەن ھەرىكەت گەرچە

غۇچى پېئىل be بىلەن پۈتۈنلەي ئوخشاش.
 تۆۋەندە ask نى مىسال قىلىپ ھەر خىل شەخس، سان ۋە
 زامانلارنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيلىنى چۈشەندۈرىمىز.

	ئاددىي	پۈتكەن	بولۇۋاتقان
ئۆتكەن	I was asked... You were asked... He } was asked She } We } were asked You } They }	I You He } had been She } asked... We } You } They }	I was being asked... You were being asked... He } was being She } asked... We } were being You } asked... They }
كەلگۈسى	I shall be asked... You } will be He } asked... She } We shall be asked... You } will be They } asked		
ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى	I should be asked... You } would be He } asked... She } We should be asked... You } would be They } asked...		

تۆتىنچى باب مەيىل

مەيىل (voice) دەپمۇ بىلىنىدۇ. ئۇنىڭ ئىككى خىلى بار: ئاكتىپ مەيىل (active voice) ۋە پەس مەيىل (passive voice).

1) مەيىلنىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى: مەيىل بولسا پېئىلنىڭ بىر خىل شەكلى بولۇپ، ئىگە بىلەن خەۋەر پېئىلى ئوتتۇرىسىدىكى مۇناسىۋەتنى چۈشەندۈرۈپ بېرىدۇ.

2) مەيىلنىڭ تۈرى: ئىنگىلىز تىلىدا پېئىللارنىڭ ئىككى خىل مەيىلى بار. يەنى ئاكتىپ مەيىل (active voice) ۋە پاسسىپ مەيىل (passive voice). ئاكتىپ مەيىل ئىگىنىڭ ھەرىكەتتىكى ئورۇنلىغۇچى ئىكەنلىكىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ، پاسسىپ مەيىل ئىگە ھەرىكەتنىڭ ۋارىسى ياكى قوبۇل قىلغۇچىسى ئىكەنلىكىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بۇ باپتا ئاساسلىق توختىلىدىغىنى پاسسىپ مەيىل.

پاسسىپ مەيىلنىڭ ئاساسىي ئوقۇمى:

پاسسىپ مەيىل پېئىلنىڭ بىر خىل ئالاھىدە شەكلى بولۇپ، جۈملىدىكى ئىگىنىڭ ئىش - ھەرىكەتنىڭ قوبۇل قىلغۇچىسى، شۇنداقلا ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئويىپكىتىدۇر. مۇنداقچە قىلىپ ئېيتقاندا، پەقەت ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئويىپكىتى ئۆتۈملۈك پېئىللا ئاندىن پاسسىپ مەيىل بولالايدۇ.

پاسسىپ مەيىلنىڭ شەكلى

ئىنگىلىز تىلىدا پېئىلنىڭ مەيىلى ياردەمچى پېئىل be غا ئۆتۈملۈك پېئىلنىڭ ھازىرقى زامان تارماق شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسىلىدۇ. ياردەمچى پېئىل be نىڭ زامان، شەخس ۋە سان ئۆزگىرىشى بولۇپ، ئۇنىڭ ئۆزگىرىش قانۇنىيىتى باغلىد.

	ئاددىي	بۇتكن	بولۇۋاتقان
تۇتكن	It was written. It was not written. What it written? Yes, it was. No, it was not.	It had been written. It had not been written. Had it been written? Yes, it had. No, it had not.	It was being written. It was not being written. Was it being written? Yes, it was. No, it was not.
كەلگۈسى	It will be written. It will not be written. Will it be written? Yes, it will. No, it will not.		
تۇتكن كەلگۈسى	It would be written. It would not be written. Would it be written? Yes, it would. No, it would not.		

ھەر خىل زامانلارنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيلى ھەققىدىكى مسالار
1) ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان:

Football is played all over the world.

پۇتبول پۈتۈن دۇنيا بويىچە ئوينىلىدۇ.

First-class bicycles are made in Tianjin.

بۇ تىيەنجىندە تۇنجى تۈركۈمدە ئىشلەنگەن ۋېلسپىت.

comrade Li you are wanted on thephone.

	ئاددىي	پۈتكەن	بولۇۋاتقان
۳	I am asked... You are asked... He } is asked She } We } You } are asked They }	I } have been You } asked... He } has been She } asked... We } You } have been They } asked...	I am being asked... You are being asked... He } is being She } asked... We } You } are being They } asked...

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئىنگلىز تىلىدا ئاكتىپ مەيلىنىڭ زامانلىرى 16، بىراق پاسسىپ مەيلىدە دائىم ئىشلىتىلىدىغان زامان پەقەت جەدۋەلدىكىدەك 8 خىل.

پاسسىپ مەيلىنىڭ ئاددىي سوراق جۈملە ۋە ئىنكار جۈملىسىدىكى قۇرۇلمىسى

پاسسىپ مەيلىنىڭ ئاددىي سوراق جۈملىسىدىكى قۇرۇلمىسىنى ھاسىل قىلغان ۋاقىتتا بىرىنچى ياردەمچى پېئىل يۆتكىلىپ ئىگىنىڭ ئالدىغا كېلىدۇ؛ پاسسىپ مەيلىنىڭ ئىنكار قۇرۇلمىسىنى ھاسىل قىلغان ۋاقىتتا، ياردەمچى پېئىلنىڭ كەينىگە not قوشۇلىدۇ. تۆۋەندە write مەسىلىسىنى قىلىنىپ، پاسسىپ مەيلىنىڭ ھەربىر زامانلىرىدىكى بايان، ئاددىي سوراق، قىسقارتىلما جاۋاب قاتارلىق قۇرۇلمىلىرى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلدى.

	ئاددىي	پۈتكەن	بولۇۋاتقان
۳	It is written It is not written Is it written? Yes, it is. No, it is not.	It has been writ- ten It has not been written. Has it been writ- ten? Yes, it has. No, it has not	It is being writ- ten. It is not being written. Is it being writ- ten? Yes, it is. No, it is not.

(5) ھازىر بولۇۋاتقان زامان ۋە ئۆتكەن بولۇۋاتقان زامان:

Two ocean-going freighters are being built
at the shipyard.

بۇ كىمىسازلىق زاۋۇتىدا يىراق ئوكيانغا قاتنايدىغان ئىككى
يۈك پاراخوتى ياسىلىۋاتىدۇ.

Rice is being grown in the mountain areas where
water used to be scarce.

ئىلگىرى سۇ كەمچىل تاغلىق رايوندا شال تېرىلاتتى.

The last time I went back to my home town, big power
station was built there.

ئۆتكەن قېتىم مەن يۇرتۇمغا قايتقاندا، ئۇ يەردە بىر يۇقىرى
بېسىمدا توك چىقىرىدىغان ئېلېكتر ئىستانسىسى قۇرۇلۇۋېتىپتە.
كەن.

ئاكتىپ مەيلىنى پاسسىپ مەيلىگە ئايلاندۇرۇش
(1) جۈملىنىڭ ئاكتىپ مەيلى قۇرۇلمىسىنى پاسسىپ مەيلى
قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرغان ۋاقىتتا، ئالدى بىلەن ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمى-
نىڭ تولدۇرغۇچىسىنى پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىنىڭ ئىگىسىگە ئايلاندۇ-
رۇش كېرەك. (مەسىلەن، ئالماشنىڭ تولدۇرغۇچى شەكلى ئىگە
شەكلىگە ئۆزگەرتىلىشى كېرەك)

(2) ئاندىن كېيىن ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىنىڭ پېئىلى ئاكتىپ
قۇرۇلما پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئۆزگىرىدۇ.

(3) ئاندىن پېئىلنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيلىدىن كېيىن ئالدى قو-
شۇلغۇچى by، يەنە ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىنىڭ ئىگىسى by نىڭ ئالدىغا
قويۇلۇپ، by نىڭ تولدۇرغۇچىسى (مەسىلەن، ئالماشنىڭ ئىگى-
لىك شەكلى تولدۇرغۇچى شەكلىگە ئايلاندۇرۇلىدۇ) بولىدۇ.
[ئەسكەرتىش] by قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمىدە چۈشۈپمۇ قالد-
دۇ. يۇقىرىقى جۈملىلەردە تىرناق ئىچىگە ئېلىنغان قىسىملىرى
قىسقارتىلما بولىدىغان by قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمە.

يولداش لى، سىزگە تېلېفون كەلدى.

English is spoken in Britain, the U.S. and some other countries.

ئەنگىلىيە، ئامېرىكا ۋە باشقا بەزى دۆلەتلەر ئىنگلىز تىلىدا سۆزلىشىدۇ.

(2) ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زامان

The Great Hall of the people was built in 1959.

خەلق سارىيى 1959 - يىلى ياسالغان.

His leg was broken in an accident.

ئۇنىڭ پۇتى سۇنۇپ كەتكەن.

The Internationale was written in 1871 by Eugene Pottier, the French worker—poet.

«ئىنتېرناتسىئونال شېئىرى» فرانسىيىلىك ئىشچى شائىر ئېيۇگېنى پوتتىيېر تەرىپىدىن 1871 - يىلى يېزىلغان (ئىجاد قىلىنغان).

(3) ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زامان ۋە ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى

زامان:

The price of transistor radios has been cut again.

يېرىم قوبۇللىغۇچ رادىئونىڭ باھاسى يەنە چۈشۈرۈلۈپتۇ.

On practice has been translated into many foreign

languages.

«ئەمەلىيەت نەزەرىيىسى» نۇرغۇن دۆلەتلەرنىڭ تىلىغا تەرجىمە قىلىنىپ بولدى.

By 1972 a co-operative medical system had been set

up in this area.

1972 - يىلىغا كەلگەندە بۇ رايوندا بىرلەشمە داۋالاش تۈزۈمى يولغا قويۇلدى.

When the anthem had been played, the congress began.

دۆلەت شېئىرى ئورۇندىلىپ بولغاندىن كېيىن، چوڭ يىغىن باشلىنىدۇ.

Form tools are being sent to the countryside.

دېھقانچىلىق سايمانلىرى يېزىغا توشۇلۇۋاتىدۇ. (كىمىنىڭ بۇ سايمانلارنى توشۇۋاتقانلىقىنى تەكىتلەش ھاجەتسىز)

A small water power station will be built in the mountain area.

تاغلىق رايوندا بىر كىچىك سۇ ئېلېكتر ئىستانسىسى قۇرۇلماقچى. (بۇ ئىستانسىنى كىم قۇرىدىغانلىقىنى سۆزلەش ھاجەتسىز)

We were asked to sing a song.

بىز بىر ناخشا ئورۇنداپ بېرىشكە تەكلىپ قىلىندۇق. (نۇقتا بىز، بىراق كىملىرى تەلەپ قىلغانلىقى سۆزلەنمىسىمۇ بولىدۇ)

(2) بىز ھەرىكەتنى قوبۇل قىلغۇچى ۋە ئىجرا قىلغۇچىغا كۆڭۈل بۆلگەن چېغىمىزدا: (بۇ خىل ئەھۋال ئاستىدا، by ھا ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئىجرا قىلغۇچىسىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلەيدىمىز)

مەسىلەن:

The song by a poor peasant. «The East is Red» was written «شەرق قىزاردى» ناخشىسى بىر كەمبەغەل دېھقان تەرىپىدىن يېزىلغان.

China's first peasant uprising was led by Chensheng and Wu Guang.

جۇڭگونىڭ تۇنجى قېتىملىق دېھقانلار قوزغىلىڭىغا چېن شېڭ ۋە ۋۇ گۇاڭ رەھبەرلىك قىلغان.

Several million tons of steel are turned out by Shanghai steel workers every year.

شاڭخەي پولات - تۆمۈر ئىشچىلىرى ھەر يىلى نەچچە يۈز مىليون توننا پولات ئىشلەپچىقىرىدۇ. قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمە پېئىلنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيلى:

ئاكتىپ مەيىل	پاسىپ مەيىل
every body likes the cook ھەممە كىشى بۇ ئاشپەزنى ياقتۇرىدۇ	The cook is liked by everybody
He wrote a letter. ئۇ بىر پارچە خەت باردى	A letter was written by him
We shall mechanize the بىز بۇ سېخنى ماشىنلاشتۇرىمىز	The workshops will be mechanized (by us)
The commune has set up many workshops كومسۇنا نۇرغۇن زۇۋت قۇردى.	Many workshops have been set up by the commune
They are duilehhy aroad ئۇلار بىر يول قۇرۇۋاتىدۇ (ياساۋاتىدۇ)	A road is being buile (by them)

پاسىپ مەيىلنىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى.

پاسىپ مەيىل تۆۋەندىكى بىر نەچچە خىل ئەھۋال ئاستىدا

ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

(1) بىز ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئورۇنلىغۇچىسىنى بىلەلمىگەن ۋاقىتتا ياكى ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئورۇنلىغۇچىسىنى كۆرسىتىش ھاجەتسىز بولغان چاغدا قوللىنىمىز:

مەسىلەن:

Printing was introduced in to Europe from china.

مەتبەئە تېخنىكىسى جۇڭگودىن ياۋروپاغا تارقىتىلغان.

(كىم تارقاتقانلىقى ئېنىق ئەمەس)

She is honoured for her communist spirit.

ئۇ ئۆزىنىڭ ئىنتېرناتسىئونالىزملىق پەزىلىتى بىلەن ھۆر-

مەتكە سازاۋەر بولغان. (كىمنىڭ ھۆرمىتىگە سازاۋەر بولغانلىقى-

نى تەكىتلەش ھاجەتسىز)

Many skilled workers have been trained in the factory.

بۇ زاۋۇت نۇرغۇنلىغان ئىقتىدارلىق ئىشچىلارنى يېتىشتۈر-

دى. (كىم ئىقتىدارلىقنى سۆزلەش ھاجەتسىز)

3) پېئىل + رەۋىش + ئالدى قوشۇلغۇچى.
do away (ياراتماسلىق) ، look down upon (بەرداشلىق بەرمەك) قاتار-
with (ئېلىۋېتىش) ، put up with (بەرداشلىق بەرمەك) قاتار-
لىقلار.

تۈسلۈك پېئىللارنى ئۆز ئىچىگە ئالغان پاسسىپ مەيىل:
تۈسلۈك پېئىللارنى ئۆز ئىچىگە ئالغان پاسسىپ قۇرۇلما
بولسا: تۈس پېئىل + be + ئۆتۈملۈك پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان
تارماق شەكلى.

مەسىلەن: This thing must be handled with care.
بۇ نەرسە چوقۇم ئاۋايلىنىشى كېرەك.

The plan ought to be put into practice as soon as possible.
پىلان چوقۇم پات ئارىدا ئىجرا قىلىنىشى كېرەك.
تەركىبىدە ئىككى تۈلدۈرگۈچى بولغان ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىنى
پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرۇش.

ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىدا ئىككى تۈلدۈرگۈچى بولغان بولسا، پاس-
سىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرۇشتا، پەقەت ئۇنىڭ ئىچىدىكى بىر
تۈلدۈرگۈچىلا ئىگىگە ئايلىنىپ يەنە بىر تۈلدۈرگۈچى ئۆزگەرمەي-
دۇ (ئادەتتە ساقلانغان تۈلدۈرگۈچى دېيىلىدۇ).

مەسىلەن: We gave him some books.
بىز ئۇنىڭغا ئازراق كىتاب بەردۇق.

He was given some books (by us) ياكى some books
Were given to him (by us).

بەزى كىتابلار ئۇنىڭغا بېرىلدى. (بىز تەرەپتىن)
[ئەسكەرتىش] تەركىبىدە ئىككى تۈلدۈرگۈچى بولغان ئاكتىپ
قۇرۇلمىنى پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرغاندا، ئىنگىلىز
تىلىدا ئادەتتە ھەممىسىدە ۋەكىللىك قىلغۇچىنىڭ تۈلدۈرگۈچىسى

ئادەتتە ئۆتۈمىز پېئىللا پاسسىپ مەيىل بولالايدۇ، بىراق بەزى قىسقارتىلما پېئىللار مەنە جەھەتتە ئۆتۈملۈك پېئىلغا ئوخشاپ قالىدۇ. شۇڭا ئۇلارمۇ پاسسىپ مەيىل بولالايدۇ. قىسقارتىلما پېئىللار ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىدا ئايرىغىلى بولمايدىغان سۆز بىرىكمىسى بولۇپ، پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىدىمۇ شۇنداق بولىدۇ ۋە كەينىدىكى قوشۇلغۇچى ياكى رەۋىشىنى چۈشۈرۈپ قويۇشقا بولمايدۇ. تۆۋەندە قىسقارتىلما پېئىلنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيىلنى تۆت تۈرگە بۆلۈپ بايان قىلىمىز.

(1) پېئىل + ئالدى قوشۇلغۇچى.

مەسىلەن: look at (قارىماق)، laugh at (كۈلدۈرمەك) sent for (ئادەم ئەۋەتىپ تەكلىپ قىلماق) listen to (ئاڭلىماق) قاتارلىقلار.

ئاكتىپ مەيىل	پاسسىپ مەيىل
We have sent for the doctor	The doctor has been sent for
بىز دوختۇر ئەكلىپ قىلىشقا ئادەم ئەۋەتتۇق	دوختۇر ئەكلىپ قىلىشقا ئادەم ئەۋەتىلدى

(2) پېئىل + ئىسىم + ئالدى قوشۇلغۇچى.

مەسىلەن: take care of (خەيرىخاھلىق قىلماق)، carry out (ئەمەلىيلەشتۈرمەك)، hand down (تارقىتىۋېتىش)، put on (كىيىۋېلىش)، take off (سېلىۋەتمەك)، look up (تەكشۈرۈپ كۆرمەك)، give up (قويۇۋېتىش) قاتارلىقلار.

ئاكتىپ مەيىل	پاسسىپ مەيىل
They have successfully carried out the party's policy	The party's policy has been successfully carried out
ئۇلار پارتىيەنىڭ سىياسىتىنى نامايەندىسى باغشى ئىزچىللاشتۇردى.	پارتىيەنىڭ سىياسىتى نامايەندىسى باغشى ئىزچىللاشتۇرۇلدى.

كېلىدۇ، ئەمما سىستېمىلىق قۇرۇلما be پەقەت ئاددىي ۋە پۈتكەن
زاماندىلا كېلەلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن،
پاسسىپ قۇرۇلما:

The children were dressed and taken out for a walk.

باللارنى ياخشى كىيىندۈرۈڭلار ھەم ئۇلارنى ئېلىپ چىقىپ
سەيلە قىلىپ كېلىڭلار.

The composition was written with great care.

بۇ ئەسەر خېلى كۈچەپ يېزىلغان.
سىستېمىلىق كەسە قۇرۇلما:

The children were beautifully dressed for children's Day.

باللار بايرىمدا باللار خېلى چىرايلىق كىيىندۈرۈلۈپتۇ.

The composition is well written.

بۇ ئەسەر ناھايىتى ياخشى يېزىلغان.
[ئەسكەرتىش] تۆۋەندىكى سىستېمىلىق كەسە قۇرۇلمىنى
ئۆز ئىچىگە ئالىدىغان باشقا مىساللار:

The meeting is well organized.

يىغىن ناھايىتى ياخشى تەشكىللەنگەن.

The door is locked ئىشىك تاقالدى.

This test - tube is broken.

بۇ سىناق نەيچە بۇزۇلدى.
مىلتىققا ئوق سېلىندى.
the gun is loaded

[ئەسكەرتىش] پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىنىڭ يەنە بىر خىل «to +
get ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى» دىن ئىبارەت قۇرۇلمىسىمۇ
بار. بۇ خىل قۇرۇلما ئېغىر تىلدا قوللىنىلىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: He got wounded in the Battle of Tianjin.

ئۇ تىيەنجىن ئۇرۇش لىنىيىسىدە يارىلانغان.

Mr Wang got married last week.

ۋاڭ ئەپەندى ئۆتكەن ھەپتەدە توي قىلدى.

ئىگىگە ئايلىنىدۇ. (بۇ ۋاستىلىق تولدۇرغۇچى بولىدۇ)
 تەركىبىدە ئۇيغۇن تولدۇرغۇچىنىڭ ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىسىنى
 پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرۇش. *She was advised to take the medicine.*
 ئاكتىپ قۇرۇلمىنىڭ تەركىبىدە ئۇيغۇن تولدۇرغۇچى بول-
 سا، ئۇنى پاسسىپ قۇرۇلمىغا ئايلاندۇرۇشتا، پەقەت ئۇيغۇن
 تولدۇرغۇچىنىڭ تەركىبىدىكى لوگىكىلىق ئىگىگە ئايلىنىدۇ،
 قالغان قىسمى ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ.

ئاكتىپ مەيىل	پاسسىپ مەيىل
<p>They advised her to teke the medicine. ئۇنىڭغا بورا بېيىشكە نەسەت قىلدى.</p> <p>We found him working in the fields. ئۇلار ئۇنىڭ ئېتىزدا ئىشلەۋاتقانلىقىنى بايقىدى They named the baby xiao Hong. ئۇلار بۇ بالىغا شياۋخۇئا دەپ ئىسىم قويدى.</p>	<p>She was advised to take the medicine.</p> <p>He was found working in the fields.</p> <p>The baby was named XiaoHong</p>

پاسسىپ مەيىل ۋە «باغلىغۇچى پېئىل + to be» كەسمە
 خەۋەر ئىشلەتكەن ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى» (قىسقارتىلىپ
 سىستېمىلاشتۇرۇلغان كەسمە قۇرۇلما) نىڭ پەرقى: *to be*
 «+ ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى» پاسسىپ قۇرۇلما
 ھەمدە «سىستېمىلىق كەسمە قۇرۇلما» بولۇشىمۇ مۇمكىن. ئۇ-
 نىڭدىكى ئاساسى پەرق شۇكى: پاسسىپ قۇرۇلما ھەرىكەتنى ئىپادى-
 دلەيدۇ. جۈملىنىڭ ئىگىسى ھەرىكەتنىڭ ئىگىسى بولالايدۇ،
 بىراق سىستېمىلىق كەسمە قۇرۇلما ئىگىنىڭ مەۋجۇت ھالىتىنى
 چۈشەندۈرۈپ بېرىدۇ، ئۇنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى دەل
 سۈپەتكە ئوخشايدۇ. شۇڭا پاسسىپ قۇرۇلما ھەر خىل زامانلاردا

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئىنكار قۇرۇلمىدا، not ياردەمچى پېئىلنىڭ كەينىگە قويۇلىدۇ.

(2) ياردەمچى پېئىلغا not (ئادەتتە قىسقارتىلما شەكلى بار) قوشۇلغان شەكىل بولۇپ، ئېغىز تىلىدا ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

is not— isn't
are not— aren't
was not— wasn't
were not— weren't
shall not— shan't
will not— won't
should not— shouldn't
would not— wouldn't
have not haven't
has not— hasn't
had not— hadn't
do not— dont
does not — doesnt
didnot — didnt

be . 2

be ياردەمچى پېئىلنىڭ تۆۋەندىكىدەك بىر نەچچە خىل ئىشلىتىلىشى:

(1) be نىڭ كەينىدىن پېئىلنىڭ ھازىرقى زامان تارماق شەكلى كەلسە، بولۇۋاتقان ھەر خىل زامان شەكىللىرىنى تەشكىل قىلىدۇ.

The driver is cleaning the car.
مەسىلەن: شاپۇر ماشىنا سۈرتۈۋاتىدۇ.

yesterday afternoon we were discussing a new teaching plan.
تۈنۈگۈن چۈشتىن كېيىن بىز يېڭى ئوقۇتۇش پىلانىنى مۇزاكىرە قىلدۇق.

بەشىنچى باب ياردەمچى پېئىل

1. ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە
1) ئىنگلىز تىلىدا دائىم ئىشلىتىلىدىغان ياردەمچى پېئىللا-
ردىن (anxiliary verb) be, would, should, will, shall, do, have قاتارلىقلار بار. ياردەمچى پېئىللا ئادەتتە مەنىداش بولمايدۇ، مۇستەقىل خەۋەر پېئىلى سۈپىتىدە ئىشلەتكىلى بولىدۇ. ياردەمچى پېئىلنىڭ جۈملىدىكى رولى شۇكى، ھەر خىل زامان، مەيىل، تۈس، ئىنكار ۋە سوراق قۇرۇلمىلىرىنى ياساشتا ياردەمچىلىك رولىنى ئوينايدۇ.

مەسىلەن: China has entered a Great new era.
جۇڭگو ئۇلۇغ يېڭى دەۋرگە كىردى. (پۈتكەن زاماننى يا-
ساشقا ياردەم بەردى)

some boys written by Gorky.
«ئانا» رومانى گوركى تەرىپىدىن يېزىلغان.
(پاسسىپ مەيىلنى ياساشتا ياردەم قىلدى)

«Mother» We shall have the football match if does no rain.
ئەگەر يامغۇر ياغمىسا بىز توپ مۇسابىقىسى ئۆتكۈزۈمىز.
(كەلگۈسى زامان ۋە ئىنكار قۇرۇلمىسىنى ياساشتا ياردەم قىل-
دى)

Do you see my point!
مېنىڭ مەقسىتىمنى چۈشەندىڭىزمۇ؟
(سوراق قۇرۇلمىسىنى ياساشتا ياردەم قىلدى)

You are to report for duty at the head quarters
on monday.

سەن چوقۇم دۈشەنبە كۈنى باش ئىسپاراتقا بېرىپ دوكلات قىلغىن.

Where am I to put these tools?

بۇ قورال - ياراقلارنى قەيەرگە قويۇشۇم كېرەك؟

What is to be done?

You're to hand in your exercises tomorrow.

سىلەر ئەتە مەشىقلەرنى تاپشۇرۇسىلەر.

(C) مۇمكىنچىلىك، can ياكى may بىلەن ئىپادىلىنىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

I am not sure whether he is to turn up tonight.

مەن ئۇنى بۈگۈن كەچ كېلىدۇ دەپ كېسىپ ئېيتالمايمەن.

My key is now here to be found.

مەن ئاچقۇچۇمنى ھېچيەردىن تاپالمايدىم.

have 3.

have نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى had.

have (had) ياردەمچى پېئىل بولۇپ ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق سۆزى بىلەن بىللە كەلسە، ھەر خىل پۈتكەن زامان قۇرۇلمىسىنى تەشكىل قىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

He has not made up his mind yet.

ئۇ تېخى بىر قارارغا كەلمىدى.

We have always followed comrade Mao Zedong's teachings
on self - reliance and hard struggle.

بىز ماۋزېدۇڭنىڭ ئۆز-ئۆزىنى مۇكەممەللەشتۈرۈش، جاپا-لىق كۈرەش قىلىش تەجربىسىگە داۋاملىق ھۆرمەت قىلىپ كەلدۇق.

By the time we reached the village, they had got
everything ready for us.

Women in our country are playing an important part in socialist construction.

مەملىكىتىمىز ئاياللىرى سوتسىيالىزم قۇرۇلۇشىدا مۇھىم رول ئويناۋاتىدۇ.

(2) be نىڭ كەينىدىن پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى قوشۇلسا، پېئىلنىڭ پاسسىپ مەيلى ياسىلىدۇ. مەسلەن:

A lot of consumer goods are made of nylon.

نۇرغۇنلىغان ئىستېمال تاۋارلىرىنىڭ ھەممىسى نىلوندىن ياسالغان.

The Eight congress of the Chinese communist party was held in 1956.

جۇڭگو كوممۇنىستىك پارتىيىسىنىڭ 8 - قېتىملىق ۋەكىللىرى قۇرۇلتىيى 1956 - يىلى ئۆتكۈزۈلگەن.

The cinema will be closed for repair from march 3rd.

كىنوخانا 3 - ئاينىڭ 3 - كۈنى رېمونتتىن توختاپ تىجارەت باشلايدۇ.

(3) be غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى قوشۇلۇپ، تۆۋەندىكى بىر نەچچە تۈرلۈك ئىشلىتىلىدۇ:

(a) كەلگۈسىدىكى ئورۇنلاشتۇرۇش ۋە پىلاننى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ. مەسلەن:

The delegation is to leave for shanghai tomorrow. ۋەكىللەر ئۆمىكى ئەتە شاڭخەيگە بېرىشقا بېكىتىلدى.

An engineer from the Dagang Oil field was to give

a report the next day.

داڭگاڭ نېفىت مەيدانىنىڭ ئىشچىسى ئىككىنچى كۈنى دوكلات بېرىشكە بېكىتىلدى.

(b) مۇقەررەرلىك ياكى بۇيرۇق ۋە ياكى قارشى تەرەپنىڭ ئىرادىسىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

I do think he is right.

مەن ئۇنىڭكىنى ھەقىقەتەن توغرا دەپ قارايمەن.

Do come often.

دائىم كېلىپ تۇرغىن.

Do ask, if you have any questions.

ئەگەر سوئاللىق بولسا، سورىشلىق كېرەك.

(4) Only then did I understand the importance of productive labour.

پەقەت شۇ ۋاقىتقا بارغاندىلا مەن ئىشلەپچىقىرىش ئەمگىكى-

نىڭ مۇھىملىقىنى چۈشەندىم.

Never did I expect to see him there.

مەن ئۇنى ئۇ يەردە كۆرۈپ قېلىشىمنى ئويلاپ باقماپتىكەن.

مەن.

(5) يەنە ئاساسلىق پېئىلنىڭ ئورنىغا ئالمىشىپ ئىشلىتىدۇ.

تەكرارلىنىشنىڭ ئالدىنى ئالىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Does he also study geography?

ئۇمۇ جۇغراپىيە ئىلمىنى ئۆگىنەمدۇ؟

No, he does not.

Did you make many friends when you were in the countryside?

سەن يېزىدىكى چېغىڭدا نۇرغۇن دوست تۇتقانىمۇ؟

—yes, I did.

شۇنداق، كوممۇنا ئەزالىرى بىلەن دوستلاشقان.

He works even harder than you do.

ئۇ سەندىن بەكرەك تىرىشىشى كېرەك.

will ۋە shall .5

ياردەمچى پېئىل shall نىڭ ئەسلىدىنلا مەنىسى يوق بولۇپ،

پەقەت بىرىنچى شەخسنىڭ كەلگۈسى زامان شەكلىدىلا ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زاماندا shall نىڭ كەينىدە پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى

شەكلى كېلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

بىز كەنتكە يېتىپ كەلگەن ۋاقتىمىزدا، ئۇلار بىز ئۈچۈن
ھەممە نەرسىلەرنى تەييارلاپ قويۇپتۇ.

By then end of 1977, the students of the workers
college had studied physics and calculus.

1977 - يىلىنىڭ ئاخىرىغا كەلگەندە، ئىشچىلار داشۆسىنىڭ
ئوقۇغۇچىلىرى فىزىكا ۋە مىكرو تەڭلىمىلەرنى ئۆگىنىپ بوپتۇ.
[ئەسكەرتىش] have نىڭ قىسقارتىلما شەكلى has ، ve نىڭ
قىسقارتىلما شەكلى s ، had نىڭ قىسقارتىلما شەكلى d' بولىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

I've, you've, he's, I'd, we'd, he'd, they'd...
do . 4

do نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى did . do

(did) ياردەمچى پېئىل بولۇش سۈپىتى بىلەن تۆۋەندىكىلەردەك
ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

(1) ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان ۋە ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماننىڭ سو-
راق شەكلى ۋە ئىنكار جۈملىسىدە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Do you know each other? ئىككىڭلار تونۇشامسىلەر؟

She did not go to town after breakfast. she went to
the canal instead.

ئۇ ئەتىگەنلىك تاماقتىن كېيىن شەھەرگە كىرمىدى، قانالغا
باردى.

How do you find the climate here?

سېنىڭچە بۇ يەرنىڭ كېلىماتى قانداقكەن؟

(2) ئىنكار بۇيرۇق جۈملىنى تەشكىل قىلىدۇ.

Do not hesitate to come when you need help.

قىيىنچىلىقنىڭ بولسا كېلىۋەرگىن.

Don't be so careless.

ئۇنداق چوڭ سۆزلىمە. (ئۇنداق پوچىلىق قىلما)

(3) بايان جۈملە ۋە بۇيرۇق جۈملىنىڭ ئىنتوناتسىيىسىنى

كۆپەيتىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I shall think it over. مەن ياخشىراق ئويلىنىپ باقاي.
Dont worry. we shall tell you all about it.

مەن ئەنسىرىمىگىن، بىز ساڭاھەممىنى دەيمىز.
ياردەمچى پېئىل will نىڭ ئەسلىدىنلا مەنىسى يوق بولۇپ،
پەقەت ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخسنىڭ كەلگۈسى زامان شەكلىدە
ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. will ئاددىي كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ ئاخىرىغا پېئىل.
نىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى قوشۇلىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: The future of the world will be bright
دۇنيانىڭ كەلگۈسى ئەزەلدىنلا پارلاق.

He will be twenty-five years old next month.

ئۇ كېلەر ئايدا 25 ياشقا تولىدۇ.

You will have an examination in English tomorrow.

ئەتە سىلەرنىڭ ئىنگلىز تىلى ئىمتىھانلىرى بار.

The weather forecast says that there'll be heavy
rain tomorrow.

ھاۋارايىدىن مەلۇماتقا قارىغاندا، ئەتە قاتتىق يامغۇر ياغىدۇ.
كەن.

6. should ۋە would

ياردەمچى پېئىل should بولسا shall نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان
شەكلى، ئۇنىڭ ئەسلىدىنلا مەنىسى يوق بولۇپ، بىرىنچى شەخس-
نىڭ ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان شەكلىدە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.
should ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ كەينىگە پېئىلنىڭ
ئەسلى شەكلى قوشۇلىدۇ.

ياردەمچى پېئىل would بولسا will نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەك-
لى بولۇپ، ئۇنىڭ ئەسلىدىنلا مەنىسى يوق، ئۇ ئىككىنچى،
ئۈچىنچى شەخسنىڭ ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زامان شەكلىدە ئىشلىتىد-
لىدۇ. would ئاددىي ئۆتكەن كەلگۈسى زاماننىڭ كەينىدىن پې-
ئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

It was reported that the Korean Government deligation

I can
you can
He
she can
it

We can
you can
They can

(2) بەزى تۈس پېئىللار ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىدە كېلىدۇ.
بەزى ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى ئۇنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى بىلەن ئوخشاش-
ىدۇ.

(a) ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىدە كەلگەن تۈس پېئىللاردىن:

will—would

can—could

may—might

shall—should

dare—dared

need—needed

have do—had to

have to—had to

(b) ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىگە ئۆزگەرمەيدىغان تۈس پېئىللار-
دىن:

(must—must ياكى) had to

Ought to—ought to

(3) كۆپ ساندىكى تۈس پېئىللارنىڭ كەينىدىن پېئىلنىڭ

ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to نى ئېلىپ كەلمىگەن) نىڭ بولۇۋاتقان شەك-
لى، پۈتكەن شەكلى ياكى پاسسىپ شەكلىنى ئىشلىتىشكە بولىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

(have done, be done) be doing (must, may) can قاتارلىقلار.

ئىنكار شەكلى: تۈس پېئىل ياردەمچى پېئىلغا ئوخشاش،

كەينىگە بىۋاسىتە ئىنكار سۆزى not كېلىدۇ.

ئالتىنچى باب تۈس پېئىل

1. ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئالاھىدىلىكى

1) تۈس پېئىل (modal verb) نىڭ ئەسلىدىنلا مەنىسى بار بولۇپ، سۆز قىلىۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ ئىنتوناتسىيىسى ياكى تۈسنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ، بىراق سۆز مەنىسى تولۇق ئەمەس بولۇپ، مۇستەقىل ھالدا خەۋەر پېئىل سۈپىتىدە ئىشلىتىشكە بولمايدۇ. پەقەت to نى ئالمىغان پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (ought قاتارلىقلاردىن باشقا) بىلەن بىرلىكتە خەۋەر پېئىلنى شەكىللەندۈرىدۇ.

2) تۈس پېئىل ئىپادىلەيدىغان تۈس بولسا: بۇيرۇق قىلماق، ۋەدە بەرمەك، تەلپ قىلماق، رەت قىلماق، ئارزۇ قىلماق، ماقۇل بولماق، ۋەزىپە ئۆتۈنمەك، لازىم قىلماق، مۇمكىنلىك، قابىلىيەت، جۈرئەت قىلماق، ئېھتىياج قاتارلىقلاردىن ئىبارەت.

3) تۈس پېئىلدا (ought دىن باشقا) ياردەمچى پېئىل would, should, will, shall قا ئوخشاش، كەينىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بىردەك to نى ئېلىپ كەلمەيدۇ. شەكىل ئۆزگىرىشى

1) شەخس ۋە سان ئۆزگىرىشى بولمىسا، ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ساننىڭ ھازىرقى زامان شەكلىمۇ ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ.

could ۋە can .2

can نىڭ مەنىسى: جىسمانى ياكى ئەقلىي جەھەتتىكى «قا-
بىلىيەت» ۋە ياكى ئويىڭىڭىزنىڭ شارائىتىدا ئاساسەن مەلۇم بىر خىل
ھەرىكەتنى ئىشلىيەلەيدىغان «قابىلىيەت» نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسى-
لەن:

Can you ride a bike? ۋە بىلىشىڭىز بارمىكىن؟

What can I do for you? مەن ساڭا نېمە قىلىپ بېرەلەيمەن؟

Can you use chopsticks? چوڭا ئىشلىتىشنى بىلەمسەن؟

Most peasants here can read and write now.
بۇ يەردىكى كۆپ سانلىق دېھقانلارنىڭ ھەممىسى مەدەنىيەت
ئۆگەندى.

our socialist country even barren mountains can be
turned is to fertile fields.
بىزنىڭ سوتسىيالىستىك دۆلىتىمىزدە، قاقاس تاغلارنىمۇ
سۈپەتلىك يەرلەرگە ئايلاندۇرغىلى بولىدۇ.

can نىڭ ئىنكار جۈملە ۋە سوراق جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىشى
بۇنداق جۈملىلەردە can بەزىدە سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ «گۈ-
مان»، «پەرەز» ياكى «مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرمەسلىك» تەك كەيپىياتنى
ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

where can you be? سەن قەيەردە بولىسەن؟

can the news be true? بۇ خەۋەر راستمۇ؟

It surely can't be six o'clock already? سائەتنىڭ ئالتە بولۇشى مۇمكىن ئەمەسقۇ دەيمەن؟

You can't be hungry so soon, Tom. You've just
had lunch. توم، قورسىقىڭنىڭ بۇنداق تېز ئېچىپ كېتىشى مۇمكىن
ئەمەسقۇ دەيمەن، سەن تېخى ئەمدىلا چۈشلۈك تاماق يېگەندىڭ.

تۇس پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ھەم ئۇنىڭ ئىنكار شەكلى.
نىڭ قىسقارتىلما شەكلى (قىسقارتىلما شەكلى ئېغىز تىلىدا
قوللىنىلىدۇ) تۆۋەندىكى قاتاردىكىلەردە كۆرسىتىلدى.

shall no—shan't[fa:nt]

will not—won't[wəʊnt]

can not—can't[kænt]

must not—mustn't[mʌsnt]

should not—shouldn't

would not—wouldn't

could not—couldn't

dare not—daren't[deənt]

need not—needn't

سوراق جۈملىدىكى ئىشلىتىلىشى

تۇس پېئىلنىڭ سوراق جۈملىدىكى ئىشلىتىلىشى بىلەن يار-
دەمچى پېئىلنىڭ ئوخشاشلىقى. مەسىلەن:

May I ask you a question?

مەن سەندىن بىر سوئال سورىسام بولامدۇ؟

Can you let me use your dictionary for a minute?

سەن لۇغىتىڭنى مېنىڭ بىر دەم ئىشلىتىپ تۇرۇشۇمغا ئار-
يەت بەرسەڭ بولامدۇ؟

Would you like to visit the heavy machinery plant?

سەن يېڭى تىپتىكى ماشىنىسازلىق زاۋۇتىنى زىيارەت قى-
لىشىنى خالايمەن؟

[ئەسكەرتىش] have to نىڭ سوراق جۈملىدىكى ئورنىغا
دېققەت قىلىش كېرەك.

Do you have to go out today?

سەن بۈگۈن چوقۇم سىزقا چىقىش كېرەك، شۇنداقمۇ؟

Does he have to finish the work tomorrow?

ئۇ ئەتە بۇ خىزمەتنى ئىشلىۋەتمەسە بولمامدۇ؟

to send his son to school

گاۋيۇباۋنىڭ دادىسى ياللانما دېھقان بولۇپ، ئۇ ئوغلىنىڭ مەكتەپتە ئوقۇش خىراجىتىنى كۆتۈرەلمەيدۇ (تۆلىەلمەيدۇ).

2. At that time we thought the story could not be true.

ئۇ ۋاقىتتا بىز ئۇنىڭ ئىيتقانلىرى راست بولۇشى مۇمكىن ئەمەس دەپ قارايتىمەنمىز.

[ئەسكەرتىش] could بولسا can ئىپادىلىگەن ھازىرقى ۋاقىتتىكى ھەرىكەتكىمۇ ۋەكىللىك قىلالايدۇ. بىراق ئىنتوناتسىيە جەھەتتىن نىسبەتەن سۆزۈلۈپ ئىپتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Could you help me with my English pronunciation?

سەن مېنىڭ ئىنگلىز تىلى تاۋۇشلىرىنى ئۆگىنىشىمگە ياردەم بەرگىن، ماقۇلمۇ؟

Could you persuade him to join our chorus?

سەن ئۇنى بىزنىڭ خور ئۆمىكىگە قاتنىشىشقا قايىل قىلالامىسەن؟

Could me visit a kindergaten? I've been wanting to see one ever since I came to china.

بىز بىر يەسلىنى كۆزدىن كەچۈرۈپ باقساق بولامدۇ؟ بىز جۇڭگوغا كەلگەندىن تارتىپ، بىرەر يەسلىنى كۆرۈپ بېقىشنى ئويلاۋاتاتتۇق.

can نىڭ شەكلى

can نىڭ ھازىرقى زامان can ۋە ئۆتكەن زامان could دىن

ئىبارەت ئىككى خىل شەكلى بولۇپ، ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان ۋە ئاددىي ئۆتكەن زاماندىن ئىبارەت ئىككى خىل زامانى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بەزى ۋاقىتتا كەلگۈسى زامانىمۇ ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ. باشقا بارلىق زامانلار (كەلگۈسى زامانىمۇ ئۆز ئىچىگە ئالىدۇ) چوقۇم to be able غا يېتىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلىنىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Zhang cannot be so careless.

جاڭنىڭ بۇنداق قوپال بولۇشى مۇمكىن ئەمەس.

what can he mean? ئۇ نېمە دېمەكچىدى؟

[ئەسكەرتىش] can غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to نى

ئېلىپ كەلمەيدۇ) نىڭ بولۇۋاتقان زامان شەكلىنى قوشقاندا يەنە

«گۇمانلىنىش»، «مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرمەسلىك» نىمۇ بىلدۈرىدۇ.

مەسلەن: what can he be doing all this time?

ئۇ ئۇدا نېمە قىلىۋاتىدۇ؟

she cannot be playing ping-pong now.

ئۇنىڭ ھازىر تىكتاك توپ ئوينىشى مۇمكىن ئەمەس.

[ئەسكەرتىش] كۈندىلىك ئالاقىلەردە، can بولسا may نىڭ

ئورنىدا كېلىپ «رۇخسەت قىلماق» مەنىسىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. may

بولسا ھەقىقىي شەكىل. مەسلەن:

you can drop in any time.

سەن خالىغان ۋاقىتتا كېلىپ ئۆتسەڭ بولىدۇ.

Can I use your basin? —of course, you can.

مەن سېنىڭ يۈز يۇيىدىغان دەپسىڭنى ئىشلەتسەم بولامدۇ؟

ئەلۋەتتە بولىدۇ.

You can have my seat, I' m going now.

مەن كەتتىم، سەن مېنىڭ ئورنىمدا ئولتۇرساڭ بولىدۇ.

could, could بولسا can نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى، ئۆتكەن

بىلەن مۇناسىۋەتلىك بولغان ① قابىلىيەت بىلەن ②

مۇمكىنچىلىك، گۇمانلىنىش ياكى مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرمەسلىك (ئىند-

كار ۋە سوراق جۈملىلەردە) مەنىلىرىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

1. We were sure that he could do the work.

بىز ئۇنىڭ بۇ خىزمەتنى ئىشلىيەلەيدىغانلىقىنى مۇئەييەن-

لەشتۈردۇق.

Gaoyu bao's father was a farm hand. He could not afford

[ئەسكەرتىش] could غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to نى ئالمايدۇ) بىلەن كېلىپ پۈتكەن زامان بولۇپ كەلگەندە، بەزى چاغلاردا «ئىلگىرى ئورۇندىلىپ بولغان بولۇشى مۇمكىن، پىراق ئەمەلىيەتتە ئەمەلگە ئاشمىغان ھەرىكەت بولۇشى مۇمكىن» ئىكەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

You could have done the work better.

سەن ئەسلىدىنلا ياخشىراق ئىشلىسەڭ بولاتتى.
(ئەمەلىيەتتە ئىشلىگىنىڭ مېنىڭ ئويلىغىنىمغا يەتمىدى)

You could have got the early train.

سەن ئەسلى ئەتتىگەنلىك پويىزغا ئولتۇرساڭ بولاتتى.
(ئەمەلىيەتتە ئولتۇرمىغان)

3. may ۋە might

may «ئىجازەت» ياكى «تەلپ» نى بىلدۈرىدۇ:

May I come in? —yes, do.

مەن كىرسەم بولامدۇ؟ - كىرىڭ، مەرھەمەت

You may ring us up any time during office hours.

ئىشخانىدىكى ۋاقىتىمدا سەن خالىغان ۋاقىتتا تېلېفون بەر-
سەڭ بولىدۇ.

May I borrow your raincoat?

مەن سېنىڭ يامغۇرلۇق چاپنىڭنى ئارىيەتكە ئىشلىتىپ
تۇرسام بولامدۇ؟

You may go now.

[ئەسكەرتىش] may «رۇخسەت» ياكى «ئىجازەت» نىڭ
ئىنكار شەكلى must not (قىلماسلىق، رۇخسەت يوق).

مەسىلەن:

May I take this book out of the reading-room? —No, you mustn't.

مەن بۇ كىتابنى كىتاب - ژۇرنال بۆلۈمىدىن ئېلىپ چىقسام

With their help, we shall be able to complete the re-
servoir in a few months.

ئۇلار بىرلىكتە ياردەم قىلسا، بىز سۇ ئامبىرىنى بىر نەچچە
ئاي ئىچىدە ياساپ بولالايمىز.

They have not been able to come to Beijing.

ئۇلار بېيجىڭغا كېلەلمىدى.

Mr Li rang up just now to say that he won't be
able to come over this evening.

لى ئەپەندىدىن ھېلى تېلېفون كېلىپ، بۈگۈن كەچتە كېلە-
لمەيدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

could, can ئىنكار ياكى سوراق جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىشى
can (could) ئىنكار ياكى سوراق جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلگەندە،

كەينىدىن پېشلىنىش ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to نى ئېلىپ كەلمەيدۇ)
نىڭ پۈتكەن زامان شەكلى كەلگەن ۋاقىتتا، ئىلگىرى يۈز بەرگەن
ئىشنىڭ «گۇمانلىق» ياكى «ئىنكار» ئىكەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.
سوراق بولسا can غا نىسبەتەن سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ «ئىن-
كار» نى تېخىمۇ كۈچەيتىپ ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن: ئۇ كەتتە-
مۇ؟

Can he have left already?

Could she have forgotten my address?

ئۇنىڭ مېنىڭ ئادرېسىمنى ئۇنتۇپ كېتىشى مۇمكىنمۇ؟

It couldnt have been Laozhang He has gone to the factory.

ئۇنىڭ لاۋجاڭ بولۇشى مۇمكىن ئەمەس، ئۇ ئاللىقاچان
زاۋۇتقا كەتكەن.

F Surely she can not have taken all the farm tools
to the field by herself.

ئۇ بىر ئادەم بۇ دېھقانچىلىق سايمانلىرىنى ئېتىزغا ئېلىپ
بارالشى مۇمكىن ئەمەس.

[ئەسكەرتىش] might بولسا may نىڭ ئورنىدىمۇ كېلىپ،
ھازىرقى ۋاقىتتىكى ھەرىكەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ، بىراق ئىنتوناتسىيە
بىر ئاز ئۆزگىرىپ، «تۈزۈت قىلماق» ياكى «تېخىمۇ مۇئەييەن-
لەشتۈرمەسلىك» تەك مەنىلەرنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

He might not come today.

بۈگۈن ئۇ ئېھتىمال كەلمەس.

Might I make a suggestion.

مەن پىكىر بەرسەم بولامدۇ؟

[ئەسكەرتىش] might ئىشلىتىلسە ھازىرقى ۋاقىت شۇنداقلا
«نەسەت» مەنىلىرىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

You might pay more attention to spoken English.

سەن ئىنگلىز تىلىنىڭ ئېغىز تىلىغا تېخىمۇ دىققەت قىل-
شاك كېرەك.

You might shut the windows The wind is blowing so hard
outside.

دېرىزىنى يېپىۋەت، سىرتتا بوران ناھايىتى كۈچلۈك.
may (might) نىڭ كەينىدىن پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى
(to كەلمەيدۇ) نىڭ پۈتكەن شەكلى كەلسە ئۆتكەننى پەرەز
قىلىش، ئويلاشنى ئىپادىلەپ، ئىلگىرىكى مەلۇم بىر ئىشنىڭ
«مۇمكىنچىلىك» ئىچىدە يۈز بەرگەنلىكىنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

Xiao Tian may (might) have gone to the library.

شياۋتيەن بەلكىم كۈتۈپخانىغا كەتتىغۇ دەيمەن.

Their production team may (might) have got in
wheat by now.

ئۇلارنىڭ ئىشلەپچىقىرىش ئەترىتى بۇغدايلارنى يىغىپ بول-
غان بولۇشى مۇمكىن.

بولامدۇ؟

- ياق بولمايدۇ.

may يەنە سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ پەرىزىنى ئىپادىلەپ، مەلۇم بىر ئىشنىڭ «بەلكىم» ياكى «مۇمكىن» چىلىك ئىچىدە يۈز بېرىش ئېھتىمالىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

We may call on you this evening.

بىز بەلكىم بۈگۈن كەچتە كېلىپ سېنىڭ بىلەن كۆرۈشۈمىز.

She may not go to the concert tonight.

بۈگۈن كەچتە ئۇ مۇزىكا كېچىلىكىگە بارالماسلىقى مۇمكىن.

The news may or may not be true.

خەۋەر بەلكىم خاتا ياكى توغرا بولۇشى مۇمكىن. [ئەسكەرتىش] may ئۈندەش جۈملىسىدە ئۇتۇق ياكى ئارزۇنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. (May جۈملىسىنىڭ بېشىدا ئىشلىتىلگەندە ئارزۇ، تىلەك نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ). مەسىلەن:

May you succeed.

ئامان بولۇڭ. May you have a pleasant journey.

might بولسا may نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى. مەسىلەن:

The speaker said we might ask him any question.

دوكلات بەرگەن ئادەم بىز ئۇنىڭدىن ھەرقانداق سوئالنى سورىساق بولىدۇ دېدى.

Mr. Wang said he might go to the Lu Xun Musuem on Sunday.

ۋاڭ ئەپەندى: «ئۇ يەكشەنبە كۈنى لۇشۈن مۇزېيىغا بېرىپ ئېكسكۇرسىيە قىلسا بولىدۇ» دېدى.

Soldiers must obey orders.

جەڭچىلەر چوقۇم بۇيرۇققا بويسۇنۇشى كېرەك.

You must get to the station before three o' clock.

سەن چوقۇم سائەت ئۈچتىن بۇرۇن بېرىپ بولۇشۇڭ كېرەك.

You must come earlier tomorrow.

must نىڭ ئىنكار شەكلى must نىڭ ئىنكار شەكلى must not بولسا، «قىلماسلىق»

ياكى «رۇخسەت يوق» دېگەن مەنىنى ئىپادىلەپ، ئىنتوناتسىيىسى نىسبەتەن كۈچلۈكرەك كېلىدۇ.

مەسلەن:

We musn't waste our time.

بىز ئۆزىمىزنىڭ ۋاقتىمىزنى ئىسراپ قىلماسلىقىمىز كېرەك.

Passengers must not walk across the railway line.

بېھمانلار تۆمۈر يولىنى كېسىپ ئۆتۈشكە بولمايدۇ.

You mustn't miss that modern ballet, it is extremely good.

سەن ھازىرقى زامان بالېت تىياتىرىنى خاتا چۈشىنىپ قالما.

مىغىن، ئۇ ناھايىتى ياخشىكەن.

One must not divorce oneself from the masses.

ئاممىدىن ئايرىلىپ قېلىشقا بولمايدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] «ھاجەتسىز» نى ئىشلىتىش زۆرۈر بولغاندا

need not بولىدۇ.

Must we hand in our exercises today? —No, you needn't.

بىز بۈگۈن تاپشۇرۇقنى چوقۇم تاپشۇرامدۇق؟ — ياق، ھاجەتسىز.

must يەنە ئۆتكەنكى ۋاقتىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

must پەقەت ھازىرقى زامان بولۇپ، ئادەتتە ھازىرنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

She may (might) have missed the plane.
ئۇ ئېھتىمال ئايرۇپىلانغا ئۆلگۈرەلمىگەن بولۇشى مۇمكىن.

He may (might) not seen the film.
ئۇ بۇ كىنونى كۆرمىگەن بولۇشى مۇمكىن.

in order to so that [ئەسكەرتىش] might may بىلەن دائىم ۋە
that كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان مەقسەت ھالەت بېقىندى جۈملىدە (ھا-
زىر ئىنگلىز تىلىدا يەنە دائىم can ئىشلىتىلىدۇ) ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

Write it in simple language on order that everybody

may understand it.

كۆپچىلىكنىڭ چۈشىنىشىگە ئاسان بولسۇن ئۈچۈن، سەن
يېغىنچاق بېزىقنى ئىشلەتكىن.

He died so that others might live.

ئۇ باشقىلار ئۈچۈن قۇربان بولدى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] might غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ)

to كەلمەيدۇ) پۈتكەن شەكلىنى قوشۇپ، مەلۇم بىر ئىشنىڭ

ئۆتكەندە ئەمەلگە ئاشمىغانلىقى ھەمدە يەنە «نەسەت» ھەتتا «ئە-

يىبەش» مەنىسىنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىشتە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

you might have told me earlier.

سەن ئەسلىدە ماڭا بالدۇرراق دېسەڭ بوپتىكەن.

you might have been more careful.

سەن ئەسلىدە كۆپرەك ئېھتىيات قىلساڭ بوپتىكەن.

must . 4

must نىڭ مەنىسى

must «مۇقەررەر» ياكى «لازىم» دېگەن مەنىلەرنى بىلدۈردۇ.

I must leave at 9.
مەسىلەن: مەن چوقۇم سائەت 9 دا بۇ يەردىن ئايرىلىشىم كېرەك.

سەن بۈگۈن ئەتتىگەندە تاماقنى ناھايىتى ئاز يېدىڭ، ھازىر چوقۇم قورسىقىڭ ئېچىپ كەتتى. [ئەسكەرتىش] must غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ (to كەلمەيدۇ) بولۇۋاتقان زامان شەكلىنى قوشقاندىمۇ ھازىر يۈز بەرگەن ھەرىكەتكە بولغان پەرەزنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ. يەنە «چو-قۇم» ياكى «دەل» دېگەن مەنىدە كېلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

She must be working on the experimental plot.
ئۇ ھازىر چوقۇم تەجرىبە ئېتىزىدا ئىشلەۋاتىدىغۇ دەيمەن.
must غا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى قوشقاندىكى پۈتكەن شەكلى (to نى ئېلىپ كەلمەيدۇ)

بۇ ئۆتكەنكى شەيئىلەرگە بولغان پەرەزنى ئىپادىلەپ، «چو-قۇم» ياكى «دەل» دېگەن مەنىلەرنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:
I mailed the letter two weeks ago. she must have received it.
مەن ئىككى ھەپتە ئىلگىرى خەت سالغان. ئۇ بۈكەمگىچە تاپشۇرۇپ ئالدى.

She must have studied English before.
ئۇ ئىلگىرى چوقۇم ئىنگلىز تىلى ئۆگەنگەن.

He must have been in the countryside for some time he knows so much about farm work.

ئۇ دەل يېزىدا كۆپ ۋاقىت تۇرۇپ باققان، ئۇ يېزا تۇرمۇ-شىنى ناھايىتى ياخشى بىلىدۇ.

have to . 5 =

have to غا پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلىنى قوشقاندا بىلدۈرىدۇ. بىخىنى «بولمىسا بولمايدۇ» بولۇپ، «مۇقەررەر» دېگەننى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. ئۇ must غا قارىغاندا «ئويىيىكتىپ شارائىت شۇنداق قىلغۇزغان» دېگەن مەنىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ ھەمدە كۆپرەك زامانلاردا كەلگەن بولىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

رۇشتە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ، بىراق بەزى ۋاقىتلاردا يەنە ئۆتكەننىمۇ بىلدۈرىدۇ (كۆپرەك يىراق تولدۇرغۇچىلىق جۈملىلىرىدە قوللىنىلىدۇ). مەسىلەن:

He told us we must all be ready by time.
ئۇ ماڭا دەل ۋاقىتتا چوقۇم تەييار بولۇپ تۇرىشىمىزنى ئىيتتى.

It was too late to go back, we must go on.
بەك كەچ بولۇپ كەتتى، قايتالمايدىغان بولدۇق، بىز پەقەت داۋاملىق ئىلگىرىلىشىمىز كېرەك.
[ئەسكەرتىش] have to (لازم) يەنە ھەر خىل ۋاقىتلارنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I am afraid you will have to wait a while.
مېنىڭچە سەن بىردەم ساقلاپ تۇرغىن.

At every step I had to pull my legs out of the snow.
ھەر بىر قەدەم ئالغىنىمدا ئىككى پۈتۈمنى قاردىن ئېلىپ ماڭدىم.

must يەنە سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ شەيئىلىرىگە بولغان پەرىزنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بىراق may غا قارىغاندا تېخىمۇ كۈچلۈك مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرىدۇ.
مەسىلەن:

He must be in the packingshop now.
ئۇ ھازىر دەل ئوراش - قاچىلاش سېخىدا.

Grandpa Li must be over seventy now.
لى بوۋا دەل 70 ياشتىن ئاشتى.

She must know how to do farm work.
ئۇ ھازىر چوقۇم دېھقانچىلىقتا قانداق ياشاشنى چۈشەندى.

You ate very little at breakfast today. you must be hungry now.
سەن بۈگۈن تۇتۇق بىر نەرسە يەدىڭ. سەن ھازىر ئىچكىرىڭ كەلسەن.

ئىشلىمىگەن چىشلىمەيدۇ. (بۇيرۇق)
Socialist public property shall be inviolable.
سوتسىيالىزمنىڭ ئومۇمىي گەۋدىسى بۇزغۇنچىلىققا ئۇچرىد-
ماسلىقى كېرەك. (ئاگاھلاندۇرۇش)

سوراق جۈملىدە، تۈس پېئىل shall بىرىنچى شەخس، ئۇ-
چىنچى شەخسلەردە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. بۇ سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ قار-
شى تەرەپنىڭ پىكرىنى ئېلىش ياكى قارشى تەرەپنىڭ زۇخستىنى
ئېلىشىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسلەن: مەن ھازىر نېمە قىلىشىم كې-
رەك؟ what shall I do now?

Shall we go for a walk?
بىز سەيلە قىلىپ كېلەيلى ماقۇلمۇ؟

Shall we have to clean the machines this week?
بىز بۇ ھەپتىدە بۇ ماشىنىلارنى سۈرتەمدۇق؟

Where shall I put the tape-recorder?
مەن ئۇنئالغۇنى قەيەردە قويۇشۇم كېرەك؟

Shall he come tomorrow?
سەن ئۇنى ئەتە كەلسۈن دەسەن؟

7. should
تۈس پېئىل should «نەسەت»، «قارار» مەنىسىنى بىل-
دۈرگەن ۋاقىتتا، دائىم «قىلىش كېرەك» دېگەن مەنىنى ئىپادى-
لەپ بېرىدۇ. مەسلەن:

We should learn about the computer and make full
use of it.

بىز ھېسابلاش ماشىنىسىنى ئۆگىنىۋېلىشىمىز ھەمدە تولۇق
پايدىلىنىشىمىز كېرەك.

You should listen to the doctor's advice.
سەن دوختۇرنىڭ نەسەتىنى ئاڭلىشىڭ كېرەك.

You should study the article carefully.

We revolutionaries have to use our heads.
بىز ئىنقىلابنىڭ ئىشەنچلىك ئادەملىرىدىن بولمىساق بولمايمىز.

دۇ.
At that time the villagers had to work for the landlord.
ئۇ چاغلاردا، كەنت ئەزالىرى يەر ئىگىلىرىگە ئىشلەپ بەر-
مىسە بولمايتتى.

We will have to get up very early tomorrow.
ئەتە بىز ئەتتىگەن تۇرمىساق بولمايدۇ.

I shall have to go to the clinic today for my bad cough.
بۈگۈن مەن بەك يۆتۈلۈپ كەتتىم، چوقۇم داۋالاش ئورنىغا
بېرىپ كۆرۈنۈپ باقمىسام بولمىغۇدەك.

You have ، I have got to ئېغىز تىلىدىكى
got to قاتارلىقلار ، I have to ، you have to . بۇ ئىككى خىل
سوراق شەكلى ئوخشاشلا.
Have I got to? Do I have to?
شۇنداق بولۇپ ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.
shall . 6

shall تۇس پېئىلى بولۇش سۈپىتى بىلەن ئىككىنچى
شەخس، ئۈچىنچى شەخسلەردە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ ۋە سۆزلەۋاتقان ئا-
دەمنىڭ قارشى تەرەپكە بولغان «بۇيرۇق»، «ئاگاھلاندۇرۇش»
، «ئىجازەت»، «تەھدىت» قاتارلىق مەنىلىرىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مە-
سىلەن:

You shall have the book as soon as I finish it.
بۇ كىتابنى مەن كۆرۈپ بولۇپلا ساڭا بېرىمەن. (ئىجازەت)
He shall do it, whether he wants to or not.
ئۇ مەيلى ئۇ رازى بولامدۇ، بولمامدۇ بۇ خىزمەتنى چوقۇم
ئىشلىشى كېرەك. (بۇيرۇق)

He who does not work, neither shall he eat.

tor's permission. مەن ئۇنىڭ رۇخسەتسىز ئالماي تۇرۇپ، خىزمەت قىل-
ماسلىقىڭ كېرەك ئىدى.

He should have come earlier.

ئۇ ئەتىگەنرەك كېلىشى كېرەك.

I should have done this.

مەن ئەسلىدە بۇ ئىشنى قىلىشىم كېرەك.

will .8

تۇس، پېئىل will نى ھەر خىل شەخسلەردە ئىشلىتىشكە
بولىدۇ، ئۇ «ئىرادە»، «نىيەت» ۋە «قارار» نى بىلدۈرىدۇ.
مەسلەن:

I will do my best.

مەن چوقۇم كۈچۈمنىڭ يېتىشىچە ئىشلەيمەن.

We will never seek hegemonism and we will never be a
super power.

بىز مەڭگۈ ئاياغ ئاستى بولمايمىز، مەڭگۈ دەرىجىدىن تاشقى-
رى دۆلەت بولمايمىز.

I'll go and get my raincoat for you.

مەن بېرىپ ساڭا ئۆزۈمنىڭ يامغۇرلۇق چاپىنىمنى ئەكېلىپ

بېرىمەن.

They won't go to the theatre tonight.

بىز بۈگۈن تياتىر كۆرگىلى بارمايمىز.

will سوراق جۈملىدە ئىككىنچى شەخستە كەلگەندە، جۈملە
سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم قارشى تەرەپكە بىلدۈرگەن تەلەپ ياكى سوراق
مەنىسىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسلەن:

Will you give me a piece of paper?

ماڭا بىر ۋاراق قەغەز بېرىمەن؟

بىز بۇ ماقالىنى ئەستايىدىل ئۆگىنىشىمىز كېرەك.
should يەنە «ئالدىن مۆلچەرلەش»، «ئىمكانىيەت مەنلىرىدە»
نىمۇ بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

They should be here by now.

ئۇلار ھازىر كەلگەن بولۇشى مۇمكىن.

The reference book should be in the reading-room.

بۇ پايدىلىنىش كىتابى كىتاب - ژۇرنال بۆلۈمىدە بولۇشى
مۇمكىن.

should بەزى چاغلاردا سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ ھېسسىياتى ۋە
ھەيران قېلىش، غەزەپلىنىش، ئۈمىدسىزلىنىش قاتارلىق مەندە.

لەرنى ئىپادىلەپ بېرىدۇ. مەسىلەن:
مەن نېمىشقا بارىمەن؟ (ئارازلىق) why should I go?

I am sorry that he should be so obstimate.

مەن ناھايىتى ئەپسۇسلىنىمەن. ئۇ مۇشۇنداق جاھىل ئىدە.
كەن. (ئۈمىدسىزلىك)

It's strange that it should be so hot today.

ئەجەب ئىش، بۈگۈن نىمانچە ئىسسىق. (ھەيرانلىق)

should نىڭ كەينىگە پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to

كەلمەيدۇ) نىڭ پۈتكەن زامان شەكلى كەلگەندە، جۈملە كۆرسە.

تىدىغىنى ئۆتكەنكى ئەھۋال. ئەگەر مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرگۈچى جۈملە

بولسا، مەلۇم بىر ئىش ئەسلى ئورۇندىلىشقا تېگىشلىك، بىراق

ئورۇندىلىپ بولۇنمىغانلىقىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. ئەگەر ئىنكار جۈملە

بولسا، يۈز بېرىشكە تېگىشلىك بولمىغان ئىشنىڭ يۈز بەرگەنلىدە.

كىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

You should have stopped at the red light.

سەن قىزىل چىراقنى كۆرگەندىن كېيىن ئەسلىدە ماشىنىنى

توختىتىشىڭ كېرەك ئىدى.

You should not have done back to work without the doc

تى.
 I told Xiao zhang that I would go along with him.
 مەن شياۋجاڭغا ئۇنىڭ بىلەن بىللە بارىدىغانلىقىمنى ئېيتتىم.

All the doctors and nurses told Dr. Bethune not to give his own blood to the wounded, but he wouldn't listen.
 دوختۇر ۋە سېستىرالار دوختۇر بېتھۇنغا قېنىنى يارىدارلارغا بەرمەسلىكىنى نەسىھەت قىلغاندا، ئۇ ئاڭلىمىدى.
 would نى ئىشلىتىپ ھازىرقى ۋاقىتنى بىلدۈرگەندە،
 would مەيلى سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ ئەسلى ئىرادىسىنى ياكى
 قارشى تەرەپكە قويغان تەلپىنى ئىپادىلىسۇن، ئوخشاشلا will غا
 قارىغاندا كۈچلۈكرەك ئېيتىلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Would you tell us something about yourself?

ئۆزۈڭ ھەققىدە بىز بىلەن سۆھبەتلەشكىن، بولامدۇ؟
 Would you like to have a glass of wine?

سەن ھاراق ئىچمەسەن؟

Would you please tell me the way to the great peoples Hall?

خەلق تىياتىرىغا قانداق ماڭىدىغانلىقىنى ماڭا ئېيتىپ بېرە.

لەمەن؟

Would you mind helping me with my packing?

يۈك - تاقىمىنى ئەكىلىشىپ بېرەمسەن؟

I would like to [ئەسكەرتىش] كۈندىلىك ئالاقىلاردا، ۋە

I should like to لارنىڭ ھەممىسىنى ئىشلىتىش

قىسقارتىلما شەكلى I'd like ئارقىلىق ئىپادىلەشكە بولىدۇ.

مەسىلەن:

I should (would) like to have a look at the new tele-

vision set.

Will you please explain the sentence once more?
سەن بۇ جۈملىنى يەنە بىر قېتىم چۈشەندۈرۈپ بەرگەن،
ماقۇلمۇ؟

Will you have western food or Chinese food, Mr Smith?
سىمىت ئەپەندى، سىز غەربچە تاماق يەمسىز ياكى جۇڭگوچە
تاماق يەمسىز؟

will you pass me the butter?
سىرىق ماينى ماڭا بېرەمسەن؟

I suppose [ئەسكەرتىش] will تۆۋەندىكى جۈملىلەردە
(مېنىڭ ئويۇمچە) ياكى probably (تەخمىنەن، ئومۇمەن) دېگەن
سۆزلەرنىڭ مەنىسى بىلەن تەڭ.

will=I suppose, probably.

This will be the room you are looking for.

بۇ ئۆي سەن ئىزدەگەن ئاشۇ ئۆي بولۇشى مۇمكىن.

you will remember the story I told you the other day.

سىلەر ئاشۇ كۈنى مەن سۆزلەپ بەرگەن ھېكايىنى ئېسىڭلار.

دا ساقلاڭلار.

[ئەسكەرتىش] will بەزى ۋاقىتلاردا ئادەتلەنگەن ھەرىكەت
ياكى ھالەتنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Water will boil at degrees Centigrade.

سۇ ئەزەلدىن 100 سېلسىيە گرادۇستا قاينايدۇ.

Boys will be boys.

would . 9

would بولسا will نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى بولۇپ، ھەر

خىل شەخسلەردە ئىشلىتىلىپ، ئىلگىرىكى ۋاقىتتىكى «ئىرادە»

، «ئارزۇ» ۋە «قارار» نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

He declared that he would do everything to help us.

ئۇ پۈتۈن كۈچى بىلەن بىزگە ياردەم بېرىدىغانلىقىنى ئېيتتى.

نىغا بارغىن. *ought* [ئەسكەرتىش] بىلدۈرىدىغان «كېرەك» زۆرۈر» نىڭ ئىنتوناتسىيىسى *should* دىن كۈچلۈك. *ought* قا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى قوشۇپ پۈتكەن شەكلىنى ياسىغاندا، ئىلگىرىكى ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ. ئەگەردە مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرۈلگەن شەكىل (*ought to have done*) ئىشلىتىلسە، مەلۇم بىر ئىش ئورۇنلىش زۆرۈرىيىتى بولغان، ئەمما ئورۇندالمىغانلىقىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. بۇ *should have done* غا ئوخشايدۇ. ئەگەردە بولۇمسىز شەكىل بولغان (*ought not to have done*) ئىشلىتىلسە، قىلىشقا تېگىشلىك بولمىغان بىر ئىشنىڭ يۈز بەرگەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. بۇ *should not have done* قا ئوخشايدۇ. مەسىلەن:

He ought to have done the exercise more carefully.

ئۇ بۇ مەشىقنى يەنىمۇ ئىنچىكىلەپ ئىشلىشى كېرەك ئىدى.

I ought to have returned these books to the library last week.

مەن ئۆتكەن ھەپتىدىلا بۇ كىتابنى كۈتۈپخانىغا قايتۇرۇپ

بېرىشىم كېرەك ئىدى.

You oughtn't to have been so rude.

سەن بۇنداق قوپاللىق قىلماسلىقىڭ كېرەك ئىدى.

You ought not to have taken his skates without asking him.

سەن ئۇنىڭ روخسىتىنى ئالماي تۇرۇپ ئۇنىڭ يازلىق ئايدى-

غىنى ئېلىپ كەتمەسلىكىڭ كېرەك ئىدى.

dare .11

dare (جۈرئەت قىلماق) نىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى ۋە ئۇنىڭ باشقا

پېئىللار بىلەن بولغان پەرقى: شىنجاڭ ئۇنىۋېرسال ئىلىم نەشرىياتى

dare ئىنكار جۈملە ياكى سوراق جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلسە،

مەن يېڭى تېلېۋىزورنى كۆرۈپ باقاي.

I'd like to borrow a copy of the *(Communist Manifesto)*.
مەن «كوممۇنىستىك پارتىيە خىتاپنامىسى» دىن بىرنى ئا.
رىيەت ئالىمەن.

I would like to see the Monument to the Peoples Heroes
said a foreign visitor.

بىر چەت ئەللىك: «مەن خەلق قەھرىمانلىرى خاتىرە مۇنا.
رىسىنى ئېكسكۇرسىيە قىلىمەن» دېدى.
would يەنە ئىلگىرى ئادەتكە ئايلىنىپ يۈز بەرگەن ھەرىكەت.
نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

The old retired worker would often go to the park
to play chess.

بۇ پېنسىيىگە چىققان پېشقەدەم ئىشچى دائىم خەلق باغچە.
سىغا بېرىپ شاھمات ئوينايدۇ.

10. ought

ought بولسا بىر خىل شەكىل بولۇپ، كەينىدە چوقۇم
to دىن ئىبارەت پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى قوشۇلۇپ كېلىدۇ.
ought «مەجبۇرىيەت ۋە زۆرۈرىيەت» ئاستىدا مەلۇم بىر ئىشنى
ئىشلەشنى بىلدۈرىدۇ ھەمدە «نەسىھەت» مەنىسىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.
مەنەسلىن:

You ought to follow old Wang's advice.

لاۋۋاڭنىڭ نەسىھىتىنى ئاڭلىشىڭ كېرەك.

You oughtn't to smoke so much.

سەن تاماكنى بۇنداق كۆپ چەكمەسلىكىڭ كېرەك.

You ought to go to the clinic at once you don't

look well.

سېنىڭ چىرايىڭ ئۆزگىرىپ كېتىپتۇ. دەرھال دوختۇرغا.

جۈملىدىمۇ ۋە ئۇندىن باشقا تۈس پېئىللارغا ئوخشاش ئۆزىدىن ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ. كەينىدە پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بولغان to كەلمەيدۇ. مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرگۈچى جۈملىدە كەلگەندە، ئەمەلىي مەنىدە كەلگەن پېئىلغا ئوخشاش، كەينىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بولغان to كېلىدۇ. ئۈچىنچى شەخس بىرلىك ئاددىي ھازىرقى زامان شەكلىگە s - قوشۇلىدۇ ھەمدە زامانلارنىڭ ئۆز-گىرىشى ھاسىل بولىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Need we return the magazines today?

بىز بۈگۈن ژۇرنالنى قايتۇرۇۋالامدۇق؟

Every member needs to pay only a little money a year to get medical care.

ھەر بىر ئەزاغا ھەر يىلى ئازراق پۇل بولسىلا، داۋالىغىلى بولىدۇ.

You need not write down your translation you may do it orally.

سىلەر تەرجىمىنىڭ مەشىقىنى يازماي ئېغىزچە ئىشلىسەڭلارمۇ بولىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] dare غا ئوخشاش، ئىنكار جۈملە ۋە سوراق جۈملىدە، need يەنە ئەمەلىي ئىشلىتىلىدىغان پېئىلغا ئوخشايدۇ. ياردەمچى پېئىل to do ياردەملىشىپ، كەينىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى to نى جەزمەن بىللە ئېلىپ كېلىشى كېرەك. مەسىلەن:

Do they need to take any tools with them? —No, they dont need to.

ئۇلار قورال - ياراق ئېلىۋالامدۇ؟ - ھاجەتسىز.

He did not to go there so early.

ئۇنىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى باشقا تۈس پېئىللىرىغا ئوخشاش بولىدۇ.
dare ئەسلىدە ئۆزگۈرمەيدۇ، كەينىگە ئەگىشىپ كېلىدىغان پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى to كەلمەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

They dare not tell the truth.

ئۇلار راست گەپ قىلىشقا پېتىنالمىدى.

Dare he admit his mistake?

ئۇ خاتالىقىنى تونۇشقا جۈرئەت قىلالامدۇ؟

بىراق dare مۇئەييەنلەشتۈرگۈچى قۇرۇلمىدا ئىشلىتىلگەندە، كەينىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى to نى قوشۇشقا بولىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

young people should dare to think, dare to speak and dare to act.

ياشلار ئويلاشقا، سۆزلەشكە ۋە قىلىشقا جۈرئەت قىلىشى كېرەك.

The peasant boy dared to defy the landlord.

بۇ دېھقاننىڭ ئوغلى يەر ئىگىسىگە قارشىلىق قىلىشقا جۈرئەت قىلدى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئىنكار جۈملە ياكى سوراق جۈملىدە، dare يەنە ئەمەلىي مەنىدىكى پېئىل بولۇپ كېلىپ، ياردەمچى پېئىل do ياردەملىشىپ كېلىدۇ، كەينىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى to بىلەن بىللە كېلىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

Do they dare to do it?

سېلىر بۇ ئىشنى قىلىشقا جۈرئەت قىلالامسىلەر؟

The enemy did not dare to come out after dark.

دۈشمەنلەر كېچىدە سىرتقا چىقىشقا جۈرئەت قىلالمايدۇ.

need . 12

need (ئېھتىياجلىق) نىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى dare بىلەن پۈتۈد.

لەي دېگۈدەك ئوخشايدۇ. گەرچە ئىنكار جۈملە ياكى سوراق

You needn't have brought your umbrella we are going by taxi.

سەن كۈنلۈك ئالماساغۇ بولدىۇ. بىز كىرا ماشىنىسىغا ئولتۇرۇپ بارىمىز. *ئەسكەرتىش* [didn't need to ۋە didn't have to] ئىلگىرى ئىشلەنمىگەن ھەمدە ئىشلىنىشكە تېگىشلىك بولمىغان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ.

We knew how to run the machine, so we didn't need to ask the workers help.

بىز ماشىنىنى قانداق ھەيدەيدىغانلىقىنى بىلىمىز. ئىشچىلارنى تەكلىپ قىلىش ھاجەتسىز.

need نىڭ كەينىدىكى ئىسىملار تولدۇرغۇچى بولۇپ كەلگەن ۋاقىتتا، پۈتۈنلەي ئەمەلىي ئىشلىتىلىدىغان پېئىلنىڭ ئورنىدا كېلىدۇ ۋە «ئېھتىياجلىق» ياكى «كەمچىل» بولغان مەلۇم بىر شەيئىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. بۇ ۋاقىتتا ئۇنىڭ ئۆزگىرىشى، ئاددىي مەنىدىكى ئەمەلىي ئىشلىتىلىدىغان پېئىلغا تامامەن ئوخشايدۇ. مەسىلەن:

I need a dictionary. مەن لۇغەتكە ئېھتىياجلىق.
مەن چېچىمنى ياساتسام بولغۇدەك.

I need a hair-cut.

Do you need a fountain-pen?

سەن بىر سىياھلىق قەلەمگە ئېھتىياجلىقمۇ؟

We always need the workers help in running our school work shops.

بىزنىڭ مەكتەپ ئىشخانىسى سېخى دائىم ئىشچىلارنىڭ ياردىمىگە مۇھتاج.

Our revolutionary cause needs thousands of cadres armed with Marxism and foreign languages.

بىزنىڭ ئىنقىلابىي ئىشلىرىمىز مىليونلىغان ماركسىزمنى قورال قىلىدىغان ۋە چەت ئەل تىلى بىلەن تونۇشلۇق كادىرلارغا مۇھتاج.

needn't نىڭ كەينىگە پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (to) نى ئېلىپ كەلمەيدۇ) نىڭ پۈتكەن شەكلى كەلگەن ۋاقىتتا، ئۆتكەندە ئىشلىنىپ بولغان، بىراق قىلمىسىمۇ بولىدىغان ھەرىكەتنى كۆرسىتىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

You needn't have watered the vegetables, as it is going to rain.

سەن قورۇما كۆكتاتلارنى سۇغۇرمىساڭمۇ بولىدۇ. ياغاي ياغاي دەپ قالدى.

ئەتە مەشىق دەپتىرىڭنى ئالغاچ كەل.

Make yourself at home.

ئىرىكىن بولۇڭ، قورۇنماڭ.

Dont' move! قىمىرلىما!

Dont' be late. كېچىكىشكە بولمايدۇ.

Be quiet! تىنچلىنىڭلار!

(c) تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە (subjunctive mood) تۆۋەندىكى پاراگرافتا سۆزلىنىدۇ.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە
تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە بىر خىل ئالاھىدە بولغان پېئىل شەكلى بولۇپ، سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم سۆزىنىڭ پاكىت ئەمەسلىكى، ئەمما پەقەت بىر ئارزۇ، پەرەز، گۇمان، پىكىر، خىيال، مۇمكىنچىلىك ياكى نوقۇل ھالدىكى قۇرۇق خىيال قاتارلىقلار ئىكەنلىكىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسىلەن:

If I were not so busy, I would go with you.

ئەگەر مەن ئانچە ئالدىراش بولمىغان بولمىسام، چوقۇم سەن بىلەن بىللە باراتتىم. (پەرەز)

I wish Laoli were here, He would know how to fix the machine.

لاۋلى بۇ يەردە بولغان بولسا، بۇ ماشىنىنى ياسىغان بولاتتى. (ئارزۇنى بىلدۈرىدۇ)

He suggests that we should all go to see the film

ئۇنىڭ پىكىرى بىز ھەممىمىز كىنو كۆرگىلى بارساق. (پىكىر)

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ پېئىل شەكلى نىسبەتەن ئالاھىدە رەك بولۇپ، ئومۇمەن تۆۋەندىكىدەك يەتتە خىل بولىدۇ:

(1) پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى (بارلىق شەخس ۋە ساندا كېلىدۇ)

(2) پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى (بارلىق شەخس ۋە سانلاردا كېلىپ، be نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى بىردەك were بولۇپ كېلىدۇ)

يەتتىنچى باب ئىنتوناتسىيە ۋە تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە

1. ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

ئىنتوناتسىيە ۋە ئۇنىڭ تۈرى

(1) ئىنتوناتسىيە (mood). ئىنتوناتسىيە بولسا پېئىلنىڭ بىر خىل شەكلى بولۇپ، سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ مەلۇم بىر ھەرىكەت ياكى ئىشقا بولغان كۆز قارىشى ۋە پوزىتسىيەسىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

(2) ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ تۈرى تۆۋەندىكىدەك ئۈچكە بۆلۈنىدۇ:
a) بىۋاسىتە ئىپادىلەنگەن ئىنتوناتسىيە (indicative mood) سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەم سۆزىنىڭ بىر پاكىت ئىكەنلىكىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

The are two sides to every question.

ھەر بىر مەسىلىنىڭ ئىككى تەرىپى بولىدۇ.

Jin zhou is famous for its apples.

جىنجۇ ئالما ئىشلەپچىقىرىش بىلەن داڭلىق.

Mr. Zhang side had a deep love for the party.

چاڭ سىدى ئەپەندى پارتىيىگە چوڭقۇر مۇھەببەت باغلىغاندى.

b) بۇيرۇق ئىنتوناتسىيەسى (imperative mood) سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمنىڭ قارشى تەرەپكە بولغان تەلەپ ياكى بۇيرۇقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

Bring along your exercise books tomorrow.

	شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە	نەتىجە باش جۈملە
ھازىرقى ئەھلىيەت بىلەن ئوخشاش بولمىغان	if i (we, you, he, they) ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى (be ? were) ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى	I (we) should He would You would They would } پېشلىنىشقا ئەسلى شەكلى
ئۆتكەنكى ئەھلىيەتنىڭ ئەكسىچە	if i (we, you, he + they) + had + ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى	I (we) should He would You would They would } + ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى
كەلگۈسى ئەھلىيەت بىلەن قارىمۇقار شى بولۇشى مۇمكىن	if i (we, you, he, hthey) + (be ? were) پېشلىنىشقا ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى نىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى	I (we) should He would You would They would } + پېشلىنىشقا ئەسلى شەكلى

1) ھازىرقى پاكىت بىلەن ئەكسىچە بولغان شەرت ياكى نەتىجىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: If I were you, I should go and see the dentist at once.
 ئەگەر مەن سېنىڭ ئورنىڭدا بولغان بولسام، دەرھال چىش

(3) had + ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى (بارلىق شەخس ۋە سانلاردا)

(4) should + پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى (بارلىق شەخس ۋە سانلاردا)

(5) should have + ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى (بارلىق شەخس ۋە سانلاردا)

(6) should (بىرىنچى شەخس)، would (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) + پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى.

(7) should (بىرىنچى شەخس)، would (ئىككىنچى، ئۈچىنچى شەخس) + have ئۆتكەن زامان تارماق شەكلى

[ئەسكەرتىش] يۇقىرىدا بايان قىلغىنىنى بەزى پېئىل شەكىللىرى ۋە بىۋاسىتە ئىنتوناتسىيىنىڭ بەزى پېئىل شەكىللىرى بىلەن ئوخشايدۇ، بىراق ئۇلارنىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى ھەم ئىپادىلىگەن ۋاقىت قارشى پۈتۈنلەي ئوخشىمايدۇ، ئىككىسىنى ئارىلاشتۇرۇۋېتىشكە بولمايدۇ.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە دائىم شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە ۋە نەتە-جىنى بىلدۈرىدىغان باش جۈملىلەردە قوللىنىلىدۇ. شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە ۋە نەتجە باش جۈملىنىڭ ھەر بىرىنىڭ پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى تۆۋەندىكى جەدۋەلدە كۆرسىتىلگەن:

[ئەسكەرتىش] ئامېرىكا تىلىدا، نەتجە باش جۈملىدە بىرىندى چى شەخستە ئىشلىتىلگەن should دائىم would غا ئالمىشىپ كېلىدۇ.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىنىڭ شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە ۋە نەتجە بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىشى:

ئىلىيەلمىگەن بولاتتى. *If he hadn't lived among the workers for so many years,*

if he hadn't lived among the workers for so many years, he wouldn't have been able to write such a good novel.

ئەگەر ئۇ ئىشچىلار بىلەن كۆپ يىل بىللە ياشىمىغان بولسا،

بۇنداق ياخشى روماننى يېزىپ چىقالمىغان بولاتتى.

(3) كەلگۈسىدىكى پاكىتقا ئەكسىچە بولۇش ئېھتىمالى بول-

غان شەرت ۋە نەتىجىنى بىلدۈرىدۇ. ئۇنىڭ ئىشلىتىلىشى ھازىر-

قى پاكىتقا ئەكسىچە بولغان شەرت ۋە نەتىجە بىلەن ئوخشاش

بولدۇ. *If it were Sunday tomorrow, I would go to see my*

مەسىلەن: *friends there.*

If it were Sunday tomorrow, I would go to see my

friends there.

ئەتە يەكشەنبە بولغان بولسا، مەن ئۇ دوستۇمنى يوقلاپ

كەلگەن بولاتتىم.

If you dropped the glass, it would break.

ئىستاكان چۈشۈپ كەتسە، سۇنۇپ كېتىدۇ.

What would happen if I put the paper on the fire? —it

Would burn.

مەن ئەگەر قەغەزنى ئوتنىڭ ئۈستىگە قويسام قانداق بول-

دۇ؟ — قەغەز كۆيۈپ كېتىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] كەلگۈسى پاكىت بىلەن ئەكسىچە بولۇش مۇم-

كىنچىلىكى بولغان شەرت بېقىندى جۈملىدە، + were to

پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى (نەسبەتەن ھەقىقىيەرەك، دائىم يېزىق

شەكىللىرىدە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ) ۋە + should پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەك-

لى. مەسىلەن: *If you were to come tomorrow, I might have time*

to see you.

ئەگەر سەن ئەتە كېلىدىغان بولساڭ، مەن ۋاقىت چىقىرىپ

سەن بىلەن كۆرۈشەي.

دوختۇرىغا كۆرۈنگەن بولاتتىم. (ئەمەلىيەتتە مەن سەن ئەمەس)
if there were no gravity, we should not be able
to walk.

ئەگەر تارتىشىش كۈچى بولمىسا، بىز پىيادە ماڭالمىغان
بولاتتۇق.

if they had time, they would study Italian too.
ئۇلارنىڭ ۋاقتى بولغان بولسا، ئىتالىيان تىلىنىمۇ ئۆگەنگەن
بولاتتى. (ئەمەلىيەتتە ئۇلارنىڭ ۋاقتى يوق)

if she knew German, she would read Marx and English
in the original.

ئەگەر ئۇ نېمىس تىلىنى بىلگەن بولسا، ماركس ۋە ئىنگ-
لىسنىڭ ئەسلى ئەسەرلىرىنى ئوقۇيالمىغان بولاتتى.

He would tell me if he knew, but he does not know any
thing about it.

ئەگەر ئۇ بىلگەن بولسا بىزگە ئېيتقان بولاتتى، بىراق ئۇ
بىر ئازمۇ بىلمەيدۇ.

(2) ئۆتكەنكى پاكىتنىڭ ئەكسىچە بولغان شەرت ۋە نەتىجىنى
بىلدۈرىدۇ. مەسلەن:

I should have died of hunger if the Communist party had
not come in 1949.

1949 - يىلى كوممۇنىستىك پارتىيە كەلمىگەن بولسا، مەن

ئاچلىقتىن ئۆلگەن بولاتتىم.

if you had come a few minutes earlier, you would have
met him.

سەن بىر نەچچە مىنۇت بۇرۇن كەلگەن بولساڭ، ئۇنىڭ
بىلەن ئۇچراشقان بولاتتىڭ.

if she hadn't been so strict with herself, she wouldn't have
made such great progress.

ئۇ ئۆزىگە قاتتىق تەلەپ قويىمىغان بولسا، بۇنداق زور ئىلگە-

It would be a good idea to go swimming at the summer palae.

يازلىق باغچىغا سۇ ئۈزۈشكە بېرىش بىر ياخشى پىكىر.

All this would have been impossible in the old society.

كونا جەمئىيەتتە بۇلارنىڭ ھەممىسىنىڭ بولۇشى مۇمكىن

ئەمەس.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە ۋە تۈس پېئىل

تەخمىن قۇرۇلما (مەيلى بېقىندى جۈملە ياكى باش جۈملە

بولسۇن) دا دائىم تۈس پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى قوللىنىدۇ.

لىنىدىغان بولۇپ، would ، might ، could قاتارلىق تۈس پېئىل

كېلىدىغان پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ياكى to نى ئېلىپ

كەلمىگەن پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ پۈتكەن شەكلى خەۋەر

پېئىل بولۇپ كېلىدۇ. بۇ تۈس پېئىللار تەخمىن قۇرۇلمىنى

ئىپادىلەشتىن سىرت يەنە ئۆزىدىمۇ مۇستەقىل مەنە بولىدۇ.

could (ئىمكانىيەتنىڭ بېرىچە) ، might (ئېھتىمال) ،

would (رازىلىق، قارار قىلىش) قاتارلىقلار.

If I were you, I would go. مەسىلەن:

ئەگەر مەن سېنىڭ ئورنىڭدا بولغان بولسام، بېرىشقا رازى

بولاتتىم.

If he were here, he might agree with you.

ئەگەر ئۇ بۇ يەردە بولغان بولسا، ساڭا قوشۇلۇشى مۇمكىن

ئىدى.

I would help you if I could.

ئەگەر ئىمكانىيەت بولغان بولسا، ساڭا چوقۇم ياردەم

قىلاتتىم.

بەزى چاغلاردا شەرت بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ ھەرىكىتى ۋە نەتىجە

جە باش جۈملىنىڭ ھەرىكىتىنى يۈز بەرگەن ۋاقتى ئوخشاش ياكى

بىردەك بولمايدۇ. بۇ چاغدا، پېئىلنىڭ شەكلى ئۇ ئىپادىلىگەن

ۋاقتقا ئاساسەن تەڭشەش ئېلىپ بارىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

If he had followed the doctor's advice, he would be

If it should rain tomorrow, what would we do?

ئەتە يامغۇر ياغسا، بىز قانداق قىلىمىز؟

If I were to see her tomorrow, I would tell her about your decision.

مەن ئەتە ئۇنى كۆرۈپ قالسام، سېنىڭ قارارىڭنى ئۇنىڭغا

دەيمەن.

if چۈشۈپ قالغان شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە قۇرۇلمىسى:

يېزىق تىلىدا شەرت بېقىندى جۈملە بەزى چاغلاردا باغلىغۇ.

چى if نى ئىشلەتمەيدۇ، لېكىن were، had ياكى should لار

ئىگىنىڭ ئالدىدا كېلىدۇ. ئەگەر بېقىندى جۈملىدە were، had

ياكى should بولمىسا، بۇنداق قىلىشقا بولمايدۇ.

Should he come, tell him to ring me up.

ئۇ كېلىپ قالسا، ماڭا تېلېفون بېرىشنى دەپ قويغىن.

Were I in your position, I would go.

ئەگەر مەن سېنىڭ ئورنىڭدا بولغان بولسام، بارغان بولاتتىم.

Had they not helped us, our experiment would have failed.

ئۇلارنىڭ ياردىمى بولمىغان بولسا، بىزنىڭ تەجرىبىمىز

مەغلۇب بولغان بولاتتى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] بەزى چاغلاردا تەخمىن شەرت، شەرت بېقىندى

دى جۈملىنى ئىشلەتمەسە، قىسقارتىلما ئالدى قوشۇلغۇچى سۆز

بىرىكمىسىنى ئىشلىتىدۇ ھەمدە پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى قا-

تارلىقلار ئارقىلىقىمۇ ئىپادىلىنىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: Without contradiction nothing would exist.

زىددىيەت بولمىسا، دۇنيامۇ بولمايدۇ.

We could not have done the work well without your help.

سېنىڭ ياردىمىڭ بولمىغان بولسا، بىز بۇ خىزمەتنى ياخشى

ئىشلىيەلمىگەن بولاتتۇق.

time to lose.

پويىز 30 : 8 دا قوزغالسا، بىز ۋاقتىنى چىڭ تۇتايلى.

If the rain stops, I'll go for a swim.

ئەگەر يامغۇر توختىسا، بىز سۇ ئۈزگىلى بارىمىز.

بېقىندى جۈملە ياكى باش جۈملىنىڭ تەخمىن قۇرۇلمىسى

چۈشۈپ قالدىغان قۇرۇلمىلار

تەخمىن قۇرۇلمىدىكى بېقىندى جۈملە ياكى باش جۈملىدە

بەزى شەكىللەردە چۈشۈپ قالدۇ. ئەمما مەنىسى ئىلگىرىكىدەك

ساقلىنىپ قالدۇ.

(1) شەرت بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ تەخمىن قۇرۇلمىسى چۈشۈپ

قالسا:

ئۇنداقتا بەك ياخشى بوپتۇ. That would be fine.

(if you should do it) قا ئوخشاش شەرت چۈشۈپ قالغان)

you might stay here forever.

سەن بۇ يەردە مەڭگۈ تۇرۇپ قالساڭ بولىدۇ.

(if you wanted to) چۈشۈپ قالغان)

I would not have done it.

مەن ئۇنداق ئىشنى قىلمىغان بولاتتىم.

(if were you) چۈشۈپ قالغان)

[ئەسكەرتىش] تەخمىن قۇرۇلمىدىكى بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ

چۈشۈپ قالغانلىقىنى بەزى چاغدا ئاسان بىلگىلى بولمايدۇ. مە.

سىلەن:

Who would have thought of it?

بۇنداق بولۇشنى كىم ئويلاپ باققان؟

(2) نەتىجە باش جۈملىنىڭ بېقىندىلىق قۇرۇلمىسىنىڭ چۈ.

شۈپ قېلىشى (دائىم ئارزۇنى بىلدۈرىدۇ).

If only I could help you!

ئەگەر مەن ساڭا ياردەم بېرەلگەن بولسام، ئۇنداقتا نېمە

دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى - ھە!

quite all right now.

ئۇ ئەينى ۋاقىتتا دوختۇرنىڭ پىكرىنى ئاڭلىمىغان بولسا،
بۈگۈنكىدەك ياخشى بولۇپ كېتەلمىگەن بولاتتى. (بېقىندى جۈمە-
لە ئۆتكەنكىنى، باش جۈملە ھازىرنى ئىپادىلىدى)

If I were you, I would have gone to the theatre.

ئەگەر مەن سېنىڭ ئورنىڭدا بولغان بولسام، تياتىر كۆر-
گىلى بارغان بولاتتىم. (بېقىندى جۈملە كۆرسەتكەن ۋاقىت ھا-
زىرىمۇ كۆرسەتتى، باش جۈملە ئىلگىرىنى كۆرسەتتى)

If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't have finished if on
time and most likely I would be still working now.

ئەگەر سەن ماڭا ياردەم قىلمىغان بولساڭ، مەن خىزمەتنى
ۋاقىتتا ئورۇنلاپ بولالمىغان بولاتتىم، چوقۇم ھازىرغىچە ئىشلى-
شىم كېرەك ئىدى. (بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئۆتكەننى، باش جۈملە
ئۆتكەن ۋە ھازىرنى چۈشەندۈردى)
بىۋاسىتە ئىپادىلەنگەن ئىنتوناتسىيە ئارقىلىق شەرت ۋە نە-
تىجىنى ئىپادىلەش

ھازىرقى زامان ئىنگلىز تىلىدا، بىۋاسىتە ئىنتوناتسىيە بى-
لەن شەرت ۋە نەتىجىنى كۆپرەك ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بىۋاسىتە ئىنتونات-
سىيىنىڭ شەرت ۋە نەتىجىنى ئىپادىلىگىنى كۆپ ھاللاردا پاكىت-
تىن ئىبارەت بولىدۇ. ئەگەر پاكىت بولمىسا ئۇنىڭ مۇمكىنچە-
لىكى تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىنىڭكىدىن كۈچلۈكرەك بولىدۇ. مە-
سلەن:

If it rains tomorrow, we shall not go out.

ئەتە يامغۇر ياغسا، بىز سىرتقا چىقمايمىز.

We must follow the mass line if we want to do our
work well.

ئەگەر بىز خىزمەتنى ياخشى ئىشلىمەكچى بولساق، چوقۇم
ئاممىۋى لۇشىيەندە مېڭىشىمىز كېرەك.

If the train leaves at eight thirty, ther in no

ناھايتى ئەجەبلىنەرلىك، ئۇ بىزگە دەپ قويمايلا كېتىپ قاپتۇ.

It is necessary that the question should be settled at once.

بۇ مەسىلىنى دەرھال ھەل قىلىشىمىز كېرەك. تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلگەندە، تۆۋەندىكى ئىككى خىل تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ:

(1) پېئىل wish نىڭ كەينىدىكى تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىدە (دائىم باغلىغۇچى سۆز that چۈشۈپ قالىدۇ)، ئەمەلگە ئاشمايدىغان ئارزۇنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ پېئىلى ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىنى ئىپادىلىگەن بولسا، سۆزلەۋاتقان ئادەمدە مەۋجۇت بولۇۋاتقان ئەپسۇسلىنارلىق ئىشنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. (تۆۋەندىكى 1 - 2 - مىسالدىكى جۈملىدە)

ئەگەر ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن زامان ئىشلىتىلگەن بولسا، ئىلگىرى يۈز بەرگەن ئەپسۇسلىنارلىق ئىشنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ؛ (تۆۋەندىكى 3 - 4 - مىسالدىكى جۈملىگە ئوخشاش)

I wish I were a PLA soldier.
مەن ئازاتلىق ئارمىيە جەڭچىسى بولغان بولسام ياخشى بولاتتى.

(I'm sorry I am not)
I wish knew how to operate the machine.
مەن بۇ ماشىنىنى ئىشلىتەلگەن بولسام نېمە دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى - ھە!

(Im sorry I don't know)
I wish he hadn't gone.
ئۇ ماڭمىغان بولسا نېمە دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى!

(I'm sorry he has gone.)
We wish you had come to our New year's party.

If only were here!

ئەگەر ئۇ بۇ يەردە بولغان بولسا نېمە دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى
— ھە!

If only he had not left!

ئۇ ماڭمىغان بولسا، ياخشى بولاتتى!

If only I were ten years younger!

ئەگەر مەن ئون ياش كىچىكلىيەلگەن بولسام، نېمە دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى!

If only the wind would stop!

بۇ شامال توختىغان بولسا، نېمە دېگەن ياخشى بولاتتى - ھە!

3. تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىشى

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە باش بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلگەن.

دە: ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىشى

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ باشقا ئىشلىتىلىشى

(important, strange, necessary) it is natural that...

دەك جۈملە شەكىللىرى ئىچىدە، that كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان باش

بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلىدا دائىم دېگۈدەك should نىڭ

كەينىگە پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى قوشۇلىدۇ. مەسلەن:

It is important that we should speak politely.

بىز سۆزلىگەندە ئەدەبلىك بولۇشىمىز كېرەك. بۇ ئىنتايىن

مۇھىم.

It is imperative that we should practise criticism

and self-criticism.

بىز تەنقىدلەش ۋە ئۆز - ئۆزىنى تەنقىدلەشنى ئېلىپ بېرىد.

شىمىز لازىم.

It is quite natural that he should think so.

ئۇنىڭ بۇنداق ئويلىشى ناھايىتى تەبىئىي ئىش.

It is strange that he should have gone away

without telling us.

مەسلەن:

I suggest that we should hold a meeting tonight.

مېنىڭ پىكرىم - بۈگۈن ئاخشام يىغىن ئېچىش.

The chairman proposed that we should discuss the question.

رەئىس بىزنىڭ بۇ مەسىلىنى مۇزاكىرە قىلىشىمىزنى ئوتتۇ-

رىغا قويدى.

Most students insist that they should have more English classes.

كۆپ ساندىكى ساۋاقداشلار ئىنگلىزچە دەرسنى كۆپرەك ئۆ-

تۈشتە چىڭ تۇردى.

[ئەسكەرتىش] بۇ خىل قۇرۇلمىدا دائىم should

ئىشلىتىلمەيدۇ، پەقەت پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى ئىشلىتىلىدۇ

(بارلىق شەخسلەردە ئىشلىتىلىدۇ). يۇقىرىقى مىسالدىكى ئۈچ

جۈملىدە hold، discuss ۋە have ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. should hold،

should discuss ۋە should have ئىشلىتىلىدۇ. يەنە مەسلەن:

I suggest that we make a new experiment.

مەن يېڭى تەجرىبە ئېلىپ بېرىشنى ئوتتۇرىغا قويمەن.

I propose that the matter be put to the vote at once.

مەن بۇ مەسىلىنى دەرھال جەدۋەللەشتۈرۈپ ھەل قىلىشنى

تەشەببۇس قىلىمەن.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيەنىڭ ھالەت بېقىندى جۈملىدە ئىشلى-

تىلىشى:

as if ياكى as though كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان ھالەت بېقىندى

جۈملە سېلىشتۇرۇش ياكى ئۇسۇلنى بىلدۈرگەندە، بېقىندى جۈم-

لىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلى تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە بولۇپ ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.

پېئىل شەكلى پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىدە (be→were)

ياكى + had پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلى قوشۇلۇپ ئىشلىتى-

لىدۇ. مەسلەن:

My mother looked after the orphan as if he were her

بىز سىزنىڭ يېڭى يىل كېچىلىكىمىزگە قاتنىشىپ بېرىش
 ئىزنى ئۈمىد قىلغاندۇق. (but you did not)
 پېئىل wish ئەگەر ئۆتكەن زامان شەكلىدە كەلگەن بولسا،
 كەينىدىكى تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملىدىكى پېئىلنىڭ تەخمىن
 ئىنتوناتسىيىسى ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ. ئاۋالقىدە كىلا ئۆتكەن زامان شەك-
 لى ياكى ئۆتكەن پۈتكەن شەكلى ئىشلىتىلىدۇ.
 مەسلەن:

She wished she knew how to drive a tractor.
 ئۇ تراكتور ھەيدەشنى ئارزۇ قىلاتتى.

(she was sorry she didnt know)
 I wished I hadn't been so forgetful. Then I shouldn't
 have missed the talk.

مەن مۇشۇنداق ئۇنۇتقا بولمىغان بولسام، نېمەدېگەن ياخ-
 شى بولاتتى - ھە! شۇنىڭ بىلەن دوكلات ئاڭلىغىلى بارغان بولات-
 تىم.

[ئەسكەرتىش] بەزىدە بېقىندى تولدۇرغۇچى جۈملىدە
 would ياكى might قا پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى قوشۇلسا ئەمەلگە ئېشىش
 ئىمكانىيىتى بولغان ئۈمىدى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. مەسلەن:

I wish he might stay with me.
 مەن ئۇنىڭ مەن بىلەن بىللە تۇرۇشنى ئۈمىد قىلىمەن.

He wishes I would go with him.
 ئۇ مېنىڭ ئۆزى بىلەن بېرىشىمنى ئۈمىد قىلىدۇ.

I wish you would be quiet.
 مەن سېنىڭ بىر ئاز تىنچلىنىشىڭنى ئۈمىد قىلىمەن.

(2) پېئىل demand (تەلپ قىلماق)، suggest (پىكىر)
 ، order (بۇيرۇق)، insist (قەتئىي داۋاملاشتۇرماق)، propose
 (قارار) قاتارلىقلارنىڭ كەينىدىكى تولدۇرغۇچى بېقىندى جۈملى-
 دە should (بارلىق شەخسلەردە كېلىدۇ) نىڭ كەينىگە پېئىلنىڭ
 ئەسلى شەكلىنى قوشقاندا، تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىسى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

ياشسۇن جۇڭگو كوممۇنىستىك پارتىيىسى!

Long live the people! ياشسۇن خەلق!

live) بۇ يەردە تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىنىڭ بىر خىل شەكلى بولۇپ، lives دەپ ئىشلىتىشكە بولمايدۇ.

May (2 جۈملىنىڭ بېشىدا ئىشلىتىلگەندە، «ئارزۇ، تىلەك» نى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. (كۆپىنچە رەسمىي يېزىقتا ئىشلىتىلىدۇ)

مەسلەن: May good luck be yours. ساڭا مۇۋەپپەقىيەت تىلەيمەن.

May you be happy. ساڭا خۇشاللىق تىلەيمەن.

May you do even better. ئەڭ زور مۇۋەپپەقىيەت قازىنىشىڭنى تىلەيمەن.

own child.

مېنىڭ ئاپام بۇ يېتىم بالىلارغا ئۆزىنىڭ بالىلىرىغا ئوخشاش قارايدۇ.

You speak as if you had really been there.

سەن ئۇ يەرگە راستلا بېرىپ باققاندىكى سۆزلىدىڭ.

It looks as if it might rain.

يامغۇر ياغىدىغاندەك تۇرىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] باغلىغۇچى سۆز lest ۋە incase كەلتۈرۈپ

چىقارغان ھالەت بېقىندى جۈملىنىڭ خەۋەر پېئىلىمۇ تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىسىنى ئىشلىتىدۇ.

it is time (that) جۈملە شەكلىدە بېقىندى جۈملىدىكى

خەۋەر پېئىلى دائىم تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىسىنى ئىشلىتىپ كەل-

گۈسى زاماننى بىلدۈرىدۇ، پېئىلنىڭ شەكلى پېئىلنىڭ ئۆتكەن

زامان شەكلىنى ئىشلىتىدۇ. مەنىسى بولسا «مەلۇم بىر ئىشنى

قىلىدىغان ۋاقىت بولدى، بىراق ۋاقىت بىر ئاز كېيىن قالغان»

دىن ئىبارەت. مەسىلەن:

It is time we left.

بىز ماڭىدىغان ۋاقىت بولۇپ قالدى.

It is time we went to bed.

بىز ئۇخلايدىغان ۋاقىت بولۇپ قايتۇ.

It is time we summed up our results.

نەتىجىمىزنى خۇلاسەلەيدىغان ۋاقىت بولۇپ قالدى.

تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيىنىڭ ئاددىي جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلىشى

تۆۋەندە تەخمىن ئىنتوناتسىيە ئاددىي جۈملىدە ئىشلىتىلگەندە

دائىم ئۇچرايدىغان ئىككى خىل ئەھۋال كۆرسىتىلدى:

(1) پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلى live بولسا long live دا

ئىشلىتىلگەندە تۆۋەندىكىدەك بولىدۇ:

مەسىلەن: Long live the communist party of China.

ئۇلار ناخشا ئېيتىشنى ياقتۇرىدۇ.
 چەكلىمىلىك پېئىل be ئىگىنىڭ شەخس ۋە سان چەكلىمىدە.
 سىگە ئۇچرايدۇ، ئۇنىڭ شەكلى ئىگە بىلەن بىردەك بولۇشى
 كېرەك. بىرىنچى جۈملىدە was، ئىككىنچى جۈملىدە were
 بولىدۇ. چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل walking ئىگىنىڭ چەكلىمىسىگە
 ئۇچرىمايدۇ. ئۇنىڭ شەكلى ئىگىنىڭ ئۆزگىرىشىگە ئەگىشىپ
 ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ.

مەسىلەن:
 The man walking in front was carrying a red flag
 ئالدىمىزدا كېتىۋاتقان ئادەم قىزىل بايراق كۆتۈرۈۋالغانىدى.

The men walking in front were carrying red flags
 ئالدىدىكى ئادەملەر قىزىل بايراق كۆتۈرۈۋالغانىدى.
 (a) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنىڭ پېئىللىق ئالاھىدىلىكى بولىدۇ.

(a) ئەگەر چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللار ئۆتۈملۈك پېئىللار بولسا،
 چوقۇم تولدۇرغۇچى بولۇشى كېرەك.
 (b) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنى ھالەت ئارقىلىق ئېنىقلاشقا
 بولىدۇ.

(c) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنىڭ يەنىلا تۈرى ۋە زامان ئۆزگىرىشى
 بولىدۇ.
 (d) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنىڭ بىر مۇنچە پېئىلىسىز ئالاھىدىلىكى
 بولىدۇ. ئۇلار ئىسىم، سۈپەت قاتارلىقلارغا ناھايىتى
 ئوخشايدۇ. جۈملىدە مۇشۇنىڭغا ئوخشاش سۆزلەرنى ئىشلىتەلەي.

دىغان جۈملە بۆلەكلىرى كېلىدۇ.
 (e) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنىڭ قوش تەكرارلىنىشچانلىقىغا
 دائىر مىساللار.

He promised to do it tonight.

سەككىزىنچى باب چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللار

1. ئومۇمىي چۈشەنچە

تۈرى، مەنىسى ۋە ئالاھىدىلىكى
1) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل (verbal) پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقىمىز شەكلى، ھەرىكەتنام ۋە تارماق سۆزدىن ئىبارەت ئۈچ خىل بولىدۇ.

2) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل ۋە چەكلىمىلىك پېئىلنىڭ ئاساسىي پەرقى.

a) چەكلىمىلىك پېئىل جۈملىدە مۇستەقىل خەۋەر پېئىل بولۇپ كېلىدۇ، چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل جۈملىدە مۇستەقىل خەۋەر پېئىل بولۇپ كېلەلمەيدۇ.

b) چەكلىمىلىك پېئىلنىڭ شەكلى ئىگىنىڭ شەخس ۋە سانى بىلەن بىردەك بولۇشى كېرەك. بىراق چەكلىمىسىز پېئىلنىڭ شەكلى بولسا ئىگىنىڭ شەخس ۋە سانىنىڭ چەكلىمىسىگە ئۇچرىمايدۇ. مەسىلەن:

چەكلىمىلىك پېئىل like ئىگىنىڭ شەخس ۋە سانىنىڭ چەكلىمىسىگە ئۇچرايدۇ. ئۇنىڭ شەكلى ئىگە بىلەن بىردەك. بىرىنچى جۈملىدە likes، ئىككىنچى جۈملىدە like بولدى. چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل to sing بولسا بۇ خىل چەكلىمىنى قوبۇل قىلمايدۇ، ئۇنىڭ شەكلى ئىگىگە ئەگىشىپ ئۆزگەرمەيدۇ.

He likes to sing.

ئۇ ناخشا ئېيتىشنى ياخشى كۆرىدۇ.

They likes to sing.

I have no time to finish that long novel this week.

بۇ ھەپتەدە مېنىڭ بۇ روماننى ئوقۇپ بولۇشقا ۋاقتىم يوق.
(ئېنىقسىز قىسقارتىلما بىرىكمە)

Forgetting the past means betrayal.

ئۆتكەنكىنى ئۇنتۇش ئاسىيلىقتىن دېرەك بېرىدۇ. (ھەردە-
كەتنام بىرىكمە)

Members wishing to see the play are
requested to notify Mr. Li before saturday.

تئاتر كۆرىدىغان ئەزالار شەنبە كۈنىدىن بۇرۇن لى ئەپەندى-
دىگە ئۇقتۇرۇپ قويۇڭلار.

2. پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى

مەنىسى، شەكلى ۋە ئالاھىدىلىكى

(1) ئاساسىي ئۇقۇمى ۋە شەكلى.

پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى (infinitive) بولسا بىر خىل
چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل بولۇپ، ئۇ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ بەلگىسى
بولغان to غا پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلىنى قوشۇش ئارقىلىق ياسى-
لىدۇ.

پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى ئىسىم، سۈپەت ۋە رەۋىشنىڭ
ئالاھىدىلىكىگە ئىگە بولىدۇ ھەمدە بىرلا ۋاقىتتا پېئىلنىڭ ئالا-
ھىدىلىكىگىمۇ بولىدۇ.

(2) پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ پېئىللىق ئالاھىدىلىكى
(a) ئەگەر پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ئۆتۈملۈك بولسا،
چوقۇم تولدۇرغۇچىسى بولۇشى كېرەك. مەسىلەن:

He wants to study japanese.

ئۇ ياپون تىلىنى ئۆگىنىشنى ئويلاۋاتىدۇ. (پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىق-
سىز شەكلى to study نىڭ كەينىدە تولدۇرغۇچى japanese بار؛

ئۇ بۈگۈن ئاخشام ئىشلەشكە ماقۇل بولدى. (to do)
(چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل to do نىڭ پېئىللىق سۈپىتى ئۇنىڭ
تولدۇرغۇچىسى it ۋە ھالەت tonight نىڭ بارلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.
ئۇنىڭ چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللىق سۈپىتى ئۇ promised نىڭ تولدۇر-
غۇچىسىنى ئىشلىتىۋاتقانلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ).

I am sorry to have disturbed you.

كەچۈرۈڭ، مەن سىزگە دەخلى قىلدىم.
(to have disturbed) بولسا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى
بولۇپ to disturb نىڭ پۈتكەن شەكلى، چەكلىمىسىز پېئىللارنىڭ
زامان جەھەتتىكى پەرقىنى چۈشەندۈرىدۇ. بۇمۇ چەكلىمىسىز
پېئىللارنىڭ پېئىللىق سۈپىتىدىن ئىبارەت).

I saw many people spreading manure in the fields.

مەن كۆپلىگەن كىشىلەرنىڭ ئېتىزغا ئوغۇت تۆكۈۋاتقانلىقىدىن
نى كۆردۈم.

(چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل spreading بولسا ھازىرقى زامان تار-
ماق شەكلى، ئۇنىڭ تولدۇرغۇچىسى manure ۋە ھالىتى in the
fields بار)

There is no time to be lost.

ۋاقىتنى چوقۇم چىڭ تۇتۇش كېرەك.

(to be lost) پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بولۇپ،
to lose نىڭ مەجھۇل شەكلى، چەكلىمىسىز پېئىلنىڭ تۈسلۈك ئۆزگىرىش
شى بارلىقىنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ. بۇمۇ چەكلىمىسىز پېئىلنىڭ پېئىل-
لىق سۈپىتى)

(4) چەكلىمىسىز پېئىلنىڭ قىسقا سۆز بىرىكمىسى تولدۇر-
غۇچى ياكى ھالەتنىڭ چەكلىمىسىز پېئىل سۆز بىرىكمىسىنى
ئېلىپ كېلىدۇ، شۇڭا چەكلىمىسىز پېئىلنىڭ قىسقارتىلما بىرى-
كىمىسى دېيىلىدۇ.

مەسىلەن: I saw many people spreading manure in the fields.

(سۇن

1) ئىگە

To talk with him is a great pleasure.

ئۇنىڭ بىلەن سۆزلىشىش كۆڭۈللۈك.

To die for the people is a glorious death!

خەلق ئۈچۈن ئۆلۈش شەرەپلىك ئىش.

پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بىرىكمىسى ئىگە بولۇپ كەلگەن
ۋاقىتتا، دائىم خەۋەر پېئىلنىڭ كەينىگە قويۇلدى، ئەمما ئىش-
لىتىپ كەلتۈرۈپ چىقارغان it بولسا گرامماتىكىلىق ئىگە بولدى.
دۇ. يۇقىرىدا بايان قىلىنغان ئىگىنى مۇنداق ئۆزگەرتىشكىمۇ
بولدى:

It is a great pleasure to talk with him.

It is a glorious death to die for the people.

تۆۋەندىكىلەر ئوخشاش خىلدىكى جۈملىلەر: (ئەسكەرتىش)
: «it is + سۈپەت + پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكىل قىسقا بىرىكمە-
سى» بولسا ئىنگىلىز تىلىدا دائىم ئىشلىتىلىدىغان بىر خىل
جۈملە شەكلى.

It is necessary to make a plan for this course of study.

بۇ دەرسنى ئۆگىنىش پىلانىنى چوقۇم بېكىتىش كېرەك.

It is not difficult to learn a foreign language if you

spend time and effort on it.

پەقەت ۋاقىت چىقىرىپ تىرىشساڭلا، بىرەر چەت ئەل تىلىنى

ئۆگىنىش ئۈچۈن تەس ئەمەس.

2) كەسە خەۋەر:

Her wish is to become a tractor driver and serve

the people

ئۇنىڭ ئۈمىدى بىر ياخشى تراكتور شۈبۈرى بولۇپ، خەلق

ئۈچۈن خىزمەت قىلىپ بېرىش. (ئەسكەرتىش: serve نىڭ ئالدى-

دىكى to چۈشۈپ قالدى)

(b) پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى ھالەت ئارقىلىق ئىزاھلاشقا بولىدۇ. مەسلەن:

The rain continued to fall heavily.

يامغۇر ناھايىتى قاتتىق يېغىۋاتىدۇ.
 (پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى to fall نىڭ كەينىدە ھالەت heavy بار)

پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى تولدۇرغۇچى ۋە ياكى ھالەتنى قوشۇۋالسا پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بىرىكمىسى ھاسىل بولىدۇ، يۇقىرىقى ئىككىنچى جۈملىدىكى to study japanese ۋە to fall heavily غا ئوخشاش بولىدۇ.
 (C) پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنىڭ تۆۋەندىكىدەك زامان ۋە تۈس ئۆزگىرىشى بولىدۇ:

	ئاكتىپ مەيىل	پاسسىپ مەيىل
ئاددىي شەكىل	to write	to be written
بولۇۋاتقان شەكىل	to be writing	
كەلگۈچى شەكىل	to have been written	to have been written

ئىشلىتىلىشى

پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ئىسىم، سۈپەت ۋە رەۋىشلىك ئالاھىدىلىككە ئىگە بولغاچقا، ئۇ جۈملىدە ئىگە، كەسمە خەۋەر، تولدۇرغۇچى، ئېنىقلىغۇچى ۋە ھالەت بولۇپ كېلەلەيدۇ. ئىككى ياكى ئىككىدىن ئارتۇق پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى بىر - بىرىگە تەڭداش بولۇپ كەلسە، بىرىنچى ئېنىقسىز شەكىل to نى ئېلىپ كېلىدۇ، كەينىدىكى ئېنىقسىز شەكىل دائىم to نى چۈشۈرۈپ قويدۇ. (مىسالى تۆۋەندىكى 2) نىڭ بىرىنچى مىسالغا قارال.

قولايلىق بولسۇن ئۈچۈن، يەنە abel (مۇمكىنچىلىك) sure ،
(چوقۇم) ، glad (خۇشال بولماق) sorry (ئازابلنىش) ،
pleased ، afraid (قورقۇش) ، free (ئۆزىمەيلى) ،
(خۇشاللىق) ، determined (ئىرادە) ، willing (رازى بول-
ماق) قاتارلىقلارمۇ بار.
مەسىلەن:

Communism is sure to triumph over capitalism.

كوممۇنىزم چوقۇم كاپىتالىزم ئۈستىدىن غەلبە قىلىدۇ.

How do you do? I'm glad to meet you.

ياخشى تۇرىۋاتامسىز؟ كۆرۈشكىنىمگە ئىنتايىن خۇشالمەن.

The boys and girls are anxious to learn how to skate.

بۇ ئوغۇل - قىزلار مۇز تېيلىشنى ئارزۇ قىلىدۇ.

4) ئېنىقلىغۇچى: پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ئېنىقلىغۇچى

بولۇپ كەلگەندە، ئىزاھلىنىدىغان ئىسىم ياكى ئالماشنىڭ كەينى-
گە قويۇلىدۇ.

He is always the first one to get up.

ئۇ ئەزەلدىن بىرىنچى بولۇپ ئورنىدىن تۇرىدۇ.

I have a few words to say on this question.

بۇ مەسىلە توغرىسىدا مېنىڭ بىرئاز پىكىرىم بار.

After Ching Ming Festival it is time to sow sorghum.

millet and corn.

چوكانتال مەزگىلى ئۆتكەندىن كېيىن، دەل كۆممە قوناق،

تېرىق ۋە گۈرۈچ تېرىدىغان مەزگىل كېلىدۇ.

5) ھالەت: پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ھالەت بولۇپ كەلگەندە،

ئادەتتە ئۇ ئىزاھلاپ كېلىدىغان پېئىلنىڭ كەينىدە كېلىدۇ.

(a) مەقسەتنى ئىپادىلەيدۇ.

Early in 1938 he went to Yanan to study.

1938 - يىلىنىڭ دەسلەپىدە، ئۇ يەنئەنگە ئۆگىنىشكە بار-
دى.

Our plan is to finish the work in two weeks.

بىزنىڭ پىلانىمىز ئىككى ھەپتىنىڭ ئىچىدە بۇ پىلانى ئورۇنلاپ بولۇش.

Lei feng's only desire was to be useful to the people and country.

لېي فېڭنىڭ بىردىنبىر ئارزۇسى خەلق ۋە دۆلەتكە ياراملىق ئادەم بولۇپ چىقىش ئىدى.

(3) تولدۇرغۇچى: بەزى ئۆتۈملۈك پېشىلار دائىم پېشىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلىدە كېلىپ تولدۇرغۇچى بولۇپ كېلىدۇ. بۇنداق پېشىلاردىن: want (قىلماقچى)، wish (ئارزۇ)، like (ياخشى كۆرمەك)، decide (قارار قىلماق)، help (ياردەم قىلماق)، pledge (كاپالەت قىلماق)، begin (باشلانماق)، forget (ئۇنتۇماق)، learn (ئۆگەنمەك)، ask (تەلپ) قاتارلىقلار بار. پېشىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ئادەتتە ئالدى قوشۇلغۇچىلىق تولدۇرغۇچى بولۇپ كەلمەيدۇ.

He wished to be a village school teacher in a mountain area.

ئۇ تاغلىق كەنتنىڭ ئوقۇتقۇچىسى بولماقچى.

Do you like to watch football matches?

سەن پۇتبول مۇسابىقىسىنى كۆرۈشنى ياخشى كۆرەمسەن؟

learn to walk before you run.

ئاۋۋال مېڭىشنى ئۆگەن، ئاندىن يۈگۈرۈشنى ئۆگەن.

we decided to make changes in our plan.

بىز پىلانى بىر ئاز ئۆزگەرتىشنى قارار قىلدۇق.

پېشىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى يەنە بەزى سۈپەتلەرنىڭ تولدۇر-

غۇچىسى بولۇپمۇ كېلىدۇ. بۇنداق سۈپەتلەر ئادەتتە پەقەت ready

(تەييارلاندى) رازى بولدى، eager (تەقەززا بولۇش)،

anxious (ئالدىراپ) قاتارلىقلاردىن ئىبارەت. بىراق ئۆگىنىشتە

I Present and past tenses

توققۇزىنچى

I Auxiliary verbs

Read the following

a in the negative

b in the interrogative

c in the third person singular

(Auxiliaries are used both by themselves and as part of various tenses of ordinary verbs .)

Note

I may for 'possibility' cannot be used in the interrogative at the beginning of a sentence. Instead we use a phrase such as 'Do you think that' + a future tense, or 'Is it likely' + an infinitive.

e. g. No. 1 Am I likely to see him?

No. 13 Do you think that they will come?

2 Use needn't as the negative of must in Nos. 15, 23, and 30.

1. I may see him.

2 They should read more.

3 You are six feet tall.

4 We are seeing Mary tomorrow.

5 They can play the guitar.

6 The girls are playing tennis.

7 We can tell you the time.

8 The birds are eating the buds.

9 I can show him the way.

10 They have a house.

11 My boss will be angry.

The villagers dug tunnels to prepare? Are for tunnel war—
are against the enemy.

يولداشلار يەر ئاستى يولى قېزىپ، دۈشمەنلەر بىلەن يەر
ئاستى ئۇرۇشى قىلىشقا تەييارلىنىۋاتىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] پېئىلنىڭ ئېنىقسىز شەكلى مەقسەتنى ئىپادىلەشنى تەكىتلەپ كەلگەندە، پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلى ئۆزگەرىپ، in order to (ئۈچۈن) ياكى so as to (ئەپلىك) گە پېئىلنىڭ ئەسلى شەكلىنى قوشۇشقا بولىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

We often listen to English broadcasts on Radio Peking in order to get more practice in training our ears.

بىز دائىم بېيجىڭ رادىئو ئىستانسىسىنىڭ ئىنگلىزچە ئاڭلىتىشىنى ئاڭلايمىز. بۇ بىزنىڭ ئىنگلىزچە ئاڭلاش مەشىقىنى كۈچەيتىشىمىزگە پايدىلىق ئىكەن.

In order to learn Acupuncture, she practised on herself every day.

ئۇ ئۆگىنىشتە تېخىمۇ ئالغا بېسىش ئۈچۈن، ھەركۈنى ئۆز بەدىنىدە تەجرىبە قىلىدۇ.

The peoples liberation army often do mass work so as to be always at one with the masses

ئازاتلىق ئارمىيە دائىم خەلق بىلەن بىرلىشىپ كېتىش ئۈچۈن ئەمگەك قىلىدۇ.

[ئەسكەرتىش] پېئىل ئېنىقسىز شەكلىنى جۈملىنىڭ بېشىدا قويۇشقا بولىدۇ، بۇنىڭ بىلەن ئۇ ئىپادىلىگەن مەقسەت تېخىمۇ روشەن ئىپادىلىنىدۇ. مەسىلەن:

To be a teacher of the people, one must first be their pupil.

خەلقنىڭ ئوقۇتقۇچىسى بولۇش ئۈچۈن، خەلقنىڭ ئوقۇغۇچىسى بولۇش كېرەك.

- dinary verbs.)
- Use had to as the past tense of must.
- 1 He isn't working hard.
 - 2 She doesn't like cats.
 - 3 I can't say anything.
 - 4 We must read it carefully.
 - 5 I am afraid of cows.
 - 6 He can lift it easily.
 - 7 It isn't far from London.
 - 8 Isn't it too heavy to carry?
 - 9 He is mowing the grass.
 - 10 He hopes that Tom will be there.
 - 11 How much does this cost?
 - 12 They haven't much money.
 - 13 How old is he?
 - 14 Do you see any difference?
 - 15 I do what I can.
 - 16 How far can you swim?
 - 17 You must change that.
 - 18 Tom can always ride my bicycle.
 - 19 What time is it?
 - 20 Have you time to do it?
 - 21 Are you frightened?
 - 22 Must you pay for it yourself?
 - 23 What have you got in the box?
 - 24 We hope that he'll come.
 - 25 He says that she may not be in time. (He said that she...)
 - 26 Do you understand what he is saying? I don't.

- 12 Tom and Ann can go by bus.
- 13 They may come tonight.
- 14 We are cleaning our own shoes.
- 15 They must obey me.
- 16 The boys have seen the comet.
- 17 These lakes are deep.
- 18 These exercises are all wrong.
- 19 They are very cold.
- 20 They may (permission) take the car.
- 21 They have made a cake.
- 22 These nests are made by wasps.
- 23 You must be quick.
- 24 Their gardens are full of weeds.
- 25 They are in a hurry.
- 26 You have a lot of grey hairs.
- 27 I am ashamed.
- 28 You'll be able to drive in a few days.
- 29 They have written to him.
- 30 We must lend him some money.
- 31 The cows are walking on the daffodils.
- 32 These plays are written by the students.
- 33 They will be ill if they eat it.
- 34 These repairs will take a long time.
- 35 Some pearls are made by oysters.
- 36 I have a bad cold.

2 Auxiliary verbs

Put the following verbs into the past tense. (Auxiliaries are used both by themselves and as part of certain forms and tenses of or-

- 9 Does he know you? 4 The simple present tense
- 10 Are your neighbours noisy? Read the following in the third
- 11 May I borrow your car? the first if it is plural.
- 12 Is English difficult? 1 I think I can't.
- 13 Will she see him? 2 Politeness often has a soft
- 14 Do you play cards? 3 They help the teacher.
- 15 Should I tell the police? 4 Butchers sell meat.
- 16 Can you cook? 5 We live in London.
- 17 Are you Mr Pitt? 6 They worry too much.
- 18 Did she sing well? 7 You drive too quickly.
- 19 Is your name Pitt? 8 I always carry an umbrella.
- 20 Were they frightened? 9 Why do dogs bark?
- 21 Will his mother be there? 10 His sons go to the local school.
- 22 Ought I to get a new hat? 11 Cats don't bark.
- 23 Should I marry him? 12 Buses go every ten minutes.
- 24 Was the driver killed? 13 I always read the Guardian.
- 25 Have you any money? 14 Do you like boiled eggs for breakfast?
- 26 Did you dismiss him? 15 The seats cost £8.
- 27 Do you live here? 16 I go to church on Sundays.
- 28 Should we cut the grass? 17 Elephants never forget.
- 29 Is he happy? 18 You make very bad coffee.
- 30 Is it cold today? 19 Do ducks lay big eggs?
- 31 Can I help you? 20 I often forget my own age.
- 32 Must you type it? 21 Do you like snails?
- 33 Are you having a bath? 22 Do you often eat garlic?
- 34 Am I in your way? 23 I cook my own meals.
- 35 Does he love you? 24 Englishmen seldom speak at breakfast.
- 36 Are you hungry? 25 Detectives don't wear uniforms.

- 27 There are accidents every day at these crossroads.
- 28 She thinks that it may cost £100. (She thought that it...)
- 29 Doesn't Mr Pitt know your address?
- 30 They aren't expecting me, are they?
- 31 He thinks that the snakes may be dangerous. (see 28)
- 32 She wants to know if she may borrow the car. (She wanted to know if...)
- 33 Is she interested in crocodiles?
- 34 Tom is certain that he will win.
- 35 Can you read the notice? No, I can't.
- 36 I don't think that the bull will attack us.

3 Auxiliary verbs

Answer the following questions

a in the affirmative

b in the negative

in each case repeating the auxiliary and using a pronoun as subject.

e. g. Do you need this? Answer: Yes, I do. No, I don't.

Can Tom swim? Answer: Yes, he can. No, he can't.

Use needn't as the negative of must.

- 1 Is the water deep?
- 2 Do you know the way?
- 3 Can you swim?
- 4 Does he come every day?
- 5 Are you afraid of ghosts?
- 6 Are you feeling better?
- 7 Must you go?
- 8 Are you enjoying this?

- 26 What do they do?
 They do nothing. They lie in bed all day.
- 27 Good children always obey their parents.
- 28 They kiss their mother when they come home from school.
- 29 Englishmen rush home when the day's work is over.
- 30 The boys box in the gymnasium on Fridays.
- 31 His dogs always attack strangers.
- 32 These hotels don't allow dogs.
- 33 Motor cycles don't make a lot of noise.
- 34 I brush my hair every night.
- 35 My hens often fly over the wall and lay eggs in Mr Pitts garden.
- 36 They do exercises every morning before breakfast.

5 The simple present tense

Read the following

a in the negative

b in the interrogative.

In Nos. 2 and 14, have is used as an ordinary verb and should be treated as one.

- 1 You know the answer.
- 2 He has breakfast at 8.00.
- 3 Jack loves Jill.
- 4 Some schoolgirls wear uniforms.
- 5 He trusts you.
- 6 It melts in the sun.
- 7 The bell rings at 8.00.
- 8 The flowers look fresh.
- 9 Those children like sweets.

4 The simple present tense

Read the following in the third person singular. Do not change the object if it is plural.

- 1 I think I am right.
- 2 Policemen often direct traffic.
- 3 They help their father.
- 4 Butchers sell meat.
- 5 We live in London.
- 6 They worry too much.
- 7 You drive too quickly.
- 8 I always carry an umbrella.
- 9 Why do dogs bark?
- 10 His sons go to the local school.
- 11 Cats don't bark.
- 12 Buses go every ten minutes.
- 13 I always read the Guardian.
- 14 Do you like boiled eggs for breakfast?
- 15 These seats cost £2.
- 16 I go to church on Sundays.
- 17 Elephants never forget.
- 18 You make very bad coffee.
- 19 Do ducks lay big eggs?
- 20 I often forget my own age.
- 21 Do you like snails?
- 22 Do you often eat garlic?
- 23 I cook my own meals.
- 24 Englishmen seldom speak at breakfast.
- 25 Detectives don't wear uniform.

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous tense. In No. 25, have is used as an ordinary verb 'and can therefore be used in the continuous tense.

1 She (not work), she (swim) in the river.

2 He (teach) his boy to ride.

3 Why Ann (not wear) her new dress?

4 The aeroplane (fly) at 2,000 metres.

5 What Tom (do) now? He (clean) his shoes.

6 This fire (go) out. Somebody. (bring) more coal?

7 It (rain)?

Yes, it (rain) very hard. You can't go out yet.

8 You (mend) my shirt.

9 You (not tell) the truth.

How do you know that I . (not tell) the truth?

10 Who (move) the furniture about upstairs?

It's Tom. He (paint) the front bedroom.

11 Mrs Jones (sweep) the steps outside her house.

12 What you (read) now? I (read) Crime and Punishment.

13 It is a lovely day. The sun (shine) and the birds (sing).

14 Someone (knock) at the door. You (not go) to answer it?

I (go) in a minute. I just (get) out of my bath.

15 . She always (ring) up asking silly questions.

16 . My mother doesn't usually make cakes on Monday's but she

(make)one today as my aunt (come) to tea tomorrow.

17 where is Tom? He (lie) under the car.

18 Can I borrow your pen or you (use) it at the moment?

19 You (do) anything this evening? No, I'm not. Well, I (go) to

the cinema. Would you like to come with me?

- IO He thinks too much.
- II He lives beside the sea.
- 12 They talk in their sleep.
- 13 This stove heats the water.
- 14 She has a cold bath every day.
- J5 Climbers often carry ropes.
- 16 He usually believes you.
- 17 He sows seeds in the spring.
- 18 I remember the address.
- 19 She plays chess very well.
- 20 They always forget to pay.
- 21 These thieves usually work at night.
- 22 He leaves home at 8.00 every day.
- 23 Most men shave every day.
- 24 She agrees with you.
- 25 Their dogs bark all night.
- 26 Their neighbours often complain.
- 27 Tom enjoys driving at night.
- 28 They feel very cold.
- 29 Tom looks very well.
- 30 They sell fresh grape juice here.
- 31 She spends all her money on clothes.
- 32 She cuts her husband's hair every week.
- 33 They pick the apples in October.
- 34 The last train leaves at midnight.
- 35 This car breaks down frequently.
- 36 That planet moves round the sun.
- 6. The present continuous tense**

32 The children are very quiet. Go and see what they (do).

They (cut) up some f5 notes.

33 What you (wait) for?

I (wait) for my change; the boy just (get) it.

34 I can't hear what you (say); the traffic (make) too much noise.

35 She always (lose) her glasses and asking me to look for them.

36 Why you (hide) the bottles?

I (hide) them because my mother—in—law (come) to dinner tomorrow and she doesn't approve of drink.

7 The simple present and the present continuous

Put the verbs in brackets into the simple present or the present-continuous tense.

I Cuckoos (not build) nests. They (use) the nests of other birds.

2 You can't see Tom now; he (have) a bath.

3 He usually (drink) coffee but today he (drink) tea.

4 What she (do) in the evenings?

She usually (play) cards or (watch) TV.

5 I won't go out now as it (rain) and I (not have) an umbrella.

6 The last train (leave) the station at 11.30.

7 He usually (speak) so quickly that I (not understand) him.

8 Ann (make) a dress for herself at the moment. She (make) all her own clothes.

9 Hardly anyone (wear) a hat now a days.

10 I'm afraid I have broken one of your coffee cups.

Don't worry. I (not like) that set anyway.

11 I (wear) my sun glasses today because the sun is very strong:

- 20 Child: Come and look. The house across the road is on fire!
 Mother: I can't come now, I (make) an omelette. Is the Fire Brigade there?
- Child: Yes, they have just arrived and the men (jump) down from the engine.
- 21 Mother: What the people of the house (do)?
 Child: Some of them (stand) in the street holding a blanket and others (throw) things down from the windows.
- 22 A woman (wave) from the attic. I think she is trapped. Perhaps the stairs (blaze) .
- 23 The firemen (put) up a ladder, and one of them (climb) up to help her .
- 24 Now the fireman (come) down again. He (carry) a baby. The woman (follow) .
- 25 We (have) breakfast at 8.00 tomorrow because Tom (catch) an early train.
- 26 Why you (type) so fast? You (make) a lot of mistakes.
- 27 What is the strange smell?
 The people next door (cook) cabbage.
- 28 Tom usually feeds the hens but I (do) (it) today as he isn't well.
- 29 You can't see Ann because she (rest). She always rests after lunch.
- 30 They (dig) an enormous hole just outside my gate.
 Why they (dig) it?
 I don't know. Perhaps they (look) for oil.
- 31 What (make) that terrible noise?
 It's the pneumatic drill. They (repair) the road.

27 Who (whistle)? It is Mr Pitt. He (feel) happy.

28 These workmen are never satisfied; they always (complain).

29 We (use) this room today because the window in the other room is broken .

30 He always (say) that he will mend the window but he never (do) it.

31 You (know) why an apple (fall) down and not up?

32 You (write) to him tonight?

Yes, I always (write) to him on his birthday. You (want) to send any message?

33 Tom and Mr Pitt (have) a long conversation. I (wonder) what they (talk) about.

34 You (believe) all that the newspapers say?

No, I (not believe) any of it.

Then why you (read) newspapers?

35 This car (make) a very strange noise. You (think) it is all right?

Oh, that noise (not matter). It always (make) a noise like that.

36 The fire (smoke) horribly. I can't see across the room.

I (expect) that birds (build) a nest in the chimney. They always (do) that .

Why you (not put) wire across the tops of your chimneys?

We do sometimes but the birds usually (remove) it.

8 The simple present and the present continuous

Put the verbs in brackets into the simple present or present continuous tense .

1 What Tom (think) of the Budget?

He (think) it most unfair.

- 12 Tom can't have the newspaper now because his aunt (read) it.
- 13 I can't answer the phone now because I (paper) the sitting room walls .
- 14 The kettle (boil) now. Shall I make the tea?
- 15 You (enjoy) yourself or would you like to leave now?
- I (enjoy) myself very much. I (want) to stay to the end.
- 16 How you (get) to work as a rule?
- I usually (go) by bus but tomorrow I (go) in Tom's car.
- 17 Why you (put) on your coat?
- I (go) for a walk. You (come) with me?
- Yes, I'd love to come. You (mind) if I bring my dog?
- 18 How much you (owe) him? I (owe) him £5.
- You (intend) to pay him?
- 19 You (belong) to your local library? Yes, I do.
- You (read) a lot? Yes, quite a lot.
- How often you (change) your books? I (change) one every day.
- 20 Mary usually (learn) languages very quickly but she (not seem) able to learn modern Greek.
- 21 I always (buy) lottery tickets but I never (win) anything.
- 22 I (ou like) this necklace? I (give) it to my daughter for her birthday tomorrow .
- 23 I won't tell you my secret unless you (promise) not to tell anyone. I (promise) .
- 24 You always (write) with your left hand?
- 25 You (love) him?
- No, I (like) him very much but I (not love) him.
- 26 You (dream) at night? — Yes, I always (dream) and if I (eat) too much supper I (have) nightmares.

- (want) to send a reply.
- 15 Stop! You (not see) the notice?
I (see) it but I can't read it because I (not wear) my glasses:
What it (say) ?
It (say) 'These premises are patrolled by guard dogs'.
- 16 She always (borrow) from me and never (remember) to pay
me back .
- 17 You (need) another blanket or you (feel) warm enough?
- 18 It (save) time if you (take) the path through the wood?
No, it (not matter) which path you take.
- 19 I (save) up because I (go) abroad in July.
- 20 I (think) it is a pity you don't take more exercise. You (get)
fat.
- 21 The plane that you (look) at now just (take) off for Paris.
- 22 Tom never (do) any work in the garden; he always (work)
on his car.
- 23 What he (do) to his car now? I (think) he (polish) it.
- 24 That film (come) to the local cinema next week. You (want)
to see it?
- 25 How Peter (get) on at school?
Very well. He (seem) to like the life.
- 26 why Mrs Pitt (look) so angry?
Mr Pitt (smoke) a cigarette and (drop) the ash on the carpet.
- 27 This is our itinerary. We (leave) home on the 8th, (arrive) in
Paris on the 9th, (spend) the day in Paris, and (set) out that
night for Venice. That (sound) most interesting. You must tell
me all about it when you (get) back.
- 28 This story is about a boy who (make) friends with a snake

- 1 I (agree) with him.
- 2 What this one (cost)? It (cost) forty pence.
- 3 You (hear) the wind? It (blow) very strongly tonight.
- 4 You (see) my car keys anywhere?
- No I (look) for them but I (not see) them.
- 5 He never (listen) to what you say. He always (think) about some— thing else.
- 6 This book is about a man who (desert) his family and (go) to live on a Pacific island.
- 7 You (understand) what the lecturer is saying?
No, I (not understand) him at all.
- 8 What you (have) for breakfast usually?
I usually (eat) a carrot and (drink) a glass of cold water.
- 9 When the curtain (rise) we (see) a group of workcers. They (picket) a factory gate .
- 10 Why you (walk) so fast today? You usually (walk) quite slowly.
- I (hurry) because I (meet) my mother at 4 o'clock and she (not-like) to be kept waiting.
- 11 I (wish) that dog would lie down. He (keep) jumping up on my lap.
- I (think) he (want) to go for a walk.
- 12 You (recognize) that man?
I (think) that I have seen him before but I (not remember) his name.
- 13 My mother hopes that Jack (not come) to the party because he always (get) drunk.
- 14 This telegram has just arrived and the man (wait) in case you

I (refuse) to answer any question about my brother.

9 The simple past tense

Put the verbs in the following sentences into the simple past tense.

1 I go to work every day.

2 I meet her on Tuesdays.

3 He always wears black.

4 I make the cakes.

5 She gets up at 6.30.

6 He understands me.

7 They have lunch at 1.00.

8 She speaks slowly.

9 He leaves the house at 9.00.

10 I read a chapter every night.

11 You eat too much.

12 He often falls.

13 Tom sings very well.

14 He cries when he is hurt.

15 Who knows the answer?

16 He takes the dog out twice a day.

17 The curtain rises at 8.00.

18 I smoke 100 cigarettes a week.

19 We eat them raw.

20 I dream every night.

21 Blue tits often lay eggs in that nesting box.

22 He often feels ill.

23 I know what he wants.

24 I usually pay him 50p.

which he (find) in his garden. Then he (go) away but he (not forget) the snake and some years later he (return) and (look) for it.

29 He (find) the snake who (recognize) its old friend and (coil) round him affectionately. But, unfortunately, the snake is by now full-grown boa-constrictor and its embrace (kill) the poor boy.

30 The snake (feel) sorry about this?

I (not know). The story (end) there.

31 How you (end) a letter that (begin), Dear Sir?

I always (put), 'Yours truly', but Tom (prefer) 'Yours faithfully'.

32 What the word 'catastrophe' (mean)?

It (mean) 'disaster'.

33 What you (wait) for?

I (wait) for the shop to open.

But it (not open) till 9.00.

I (know) but I (want) to be early, as their sale (start) today.

34 Why you (smoke) a cigar, Mrs Pitt? You (not smoke) cigars as a rule.

I (smoke) it because I (want) the ash. Cigar ash mixed with oil (remove) heat stains from wood.

35 Who (own) this umbrella?

I (not know). Everybody (use) it but nobody (know) who (own) it.

36 You (mind) if I (ask) you a question?

That (depend) on the question.

It (concern) your brother.

- 13 I lent you 20p.
- 14 She knelt on the floor.
- 15 Tom worked very hard.
- 16 He broke his arm.
- 17 His wife came at 8. 00.
- 18 He lost his wallet.
- 19 His son wrote a poem.
- 20 We flew to New York.
- 21 Ann drew a map.
- 22 The duck laid an egg.
- 23 Mr Pitt fell downstairs.
- 24 She lost her way.
- 25 He forbade her to leave.
- 26 I sent it to the laundry.
- 27 Jack kept the money.
- 28 He rode slowly.
- 29 I spent f5.
- 30 She sold the car.
- 31 Jean rang the bell.
- 32 The sun rose at 6. 00.
- 33 The boys ran home.
- 34 Mr Pitt shook the bottle.
- 35 He forgave her.
- 36 Mrs Pitt translated it.

11 The past continuous tense
 Put the verbs in brackets into the past continuous tense.

1 Detective, 'I'm afraid I must ask you both what you (do) yesterday at 10. 20 P. m.'

- 25 His dog always bites me.
- 26 I change my library book every week.
- 27 It costs 30p.
- 28 He signs the cheques.
- 29 I lie down after lunch.
- 30 We drink water.
- 31 His roses grow well.
- 32 I hate him.
- 33 I see him every day.
- 34 These dogs always fight.
- 35 I sometimes try to separate them.
- 36 He sleeps badly.

10 The simple past tense

Put the verbs in the following sentences into

a the negative

b the interrogative.

- 1 I saw your brother.
- 2 We heard a terrible noise.
- 3 He slept till 10.00.
- 4 He looked at the picture.
- 5 They drank all the wine.
- 6 They set out for Rome.
- 7 She thought about it.
- 8 The police caught the thief.
- 9 He dug a deep hole.
- 10 She found her watch.
- 11 His nose bled for ages.
- 12 My mother chose this hat.

- 18 As she (climb) the ladder it slipped sideways and she fell off it.
- 19 When I first met him he (work) in a restaurant.
- 20 He watched the children for a moment. Some of them (bathe) in the sea, others (look) for shells, others (play) in the sand.
- 21 Where he (live) when you saw him last?
- 22 She said that she couldn't come to the door because she (wash) her hair.
- 23 From the sounds it was clear that Mary (practise) the piano.
- 24 There had been an accident and men (carry) the injured people to an ambulance.
- 25 Two men (fight) at a street corner and a policeman (try) to stop them.
- What they (fight) about?
- Nobody seemed to know.
- 26 Tom (sit) in a corner with a book. I told him that he (read) in very bad light.
- 27 I went into the garden to see what the boys (do). James (weed) and Alexander (cut) the grass.
- 28 They had taken off the wheel of the car and (mend) the puncture. I asked when it would be ready.
- 29 When I arrived at the meeting the first speaker had just finished speaking and the audience (clap).
- 30 The traffic (make) so much noise that I couldn't hear what he (say).
- 31 While he (learn) to drive he had twenty—five accidents.
- 32 He had a bad fall while he (repair) his roof.
- 33 He was a little mad. He always (try) to prove that the earth

- Mr X, 'I (play) chess with my wife'.
- Mr Y, 'I (listen) to a play on the radio.'
- 2 The children were frightened because it (get) dark.
- 3 It was a fine day and the roads were crowded because a lot of people (rush) to the seaside.
- 4 The aeroplane in which the football team (travel) crashed soon after taking off.
- 5 He usually wears sandals but when I last saw him he (wear) boots.
- 6 The house was in great disorder because he (redecorate) it.
- 7 The director didn't allow the actors to travel by air while they (work) on the film.
- 8 The car had nobody in it but the engine (run).
- 9 Two children (play) on the sand and two fishermen (lean) against an upturned boat.
- 10 I was alone in the house at that time because Mr Jones (work) in the garage and Mrs Jones (shop).
- 11 He said that he was the captain of a ship which (sail) that night for Marseilles .
- 12 Are you going to Rome? I thought that you (go) to Milan.
- 13 My wife and I (talk) about you the other day.
- 14 When I first met him he (study) painting.
- 15 There was a strong smell and the sound of frying. Obviously Mrs Jones (cook) fish.
- 16 Tom ate nothing for lunch because he (diet). He said that he (try) to lose 10 kilos.
- 17 Who you (talk) to on the telephone as I came in?
- I (talk) to Mr Pitt.

11 He always (wear) a raincoat and (carry) an umbrella when he walked to the office.

12 Have you read his last book? Yes, I have.

What you (think) of it? I (like) it very much.

13 I (share) a flat with him when we were students. He always (complain) about my untidiness.

14 He suddenly (realize) that he (travel) in the wrong direction.

15 He (play) the guitar outside her house when someone opened the window and (throw) out a bucket of water.

16 I just (open) the letter when the wind (blow) it out of my hand.

17 The burglar (open) the safe when he (hear) footsteps. He immediately (put) out his torch and (crawl) under the bed.

18 When I (look) for my passport I (find) this old photograph.

19 You looked very busy when I saw you last night. What you (do)?

20 The boys (play) cards when they (hear) their father's step. They immediately (hide) the cards and (take) out their lesson books.

21 He (clean) his gun when it accidentally (go) off and (kill) him.

22 He (not allow) us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind (blow).

23 As I (cross) the road I (step) on a banana skin and (fall) heavily.

24 I still (lie) on the road when I (see) a lorry approaching.

25 Luckily the driver (see) me and (stop) the lorry in time.

26 How you (damage) your car so badly?

was flat.

34 While we (fish) someone came to the house and left this note.

35 The exam had just begun and the candidates (write) their names at the top of their papers.

36 Just as I (wonder) what to do next, the phone rang.

12 The simple past and the past continuous

Put the verbs in brackets into the simple past or the past continuous tense .

1 I lit the fire at 6.00 and it (burn) brightly when Tom came in at 7.00.

2 When I arrived the lecture had already started and the professor (write) on the overhead projector.

3 I (make) a cake when the light went out. I had to finish it in the dark.

4 I didn't want to meet Paul so when he entered the room I (leave).

5 Unfortunately when I arrived Ann just (leave), so we only had time for a few words.

6 He (have) a bath when the phone rang. Very unwillingly he (get) out of the bath and (go) to answer it.

7 He was very polite. Whenever his wife entered the room he (stand) up.

8 The admiral (play) bowls when he received news of the invasion. He (insist) on finishing the game.

9 My dog (walk) along quietly when Mr Pitt's Pekinese attacked him.

10 When I arrived she (have) lunch. She apologized for starting without me but said that she always (lunch) at 12.30.

tense.

1 Mr Smith never (wake) up in time in the mornings and always (get) into trouble for being late; so one day he (go) to town and (buy) an alarm clock.

2 To get home he (have to) go through a field where a bad — tempered bull usually (graze).

3 This bull normally (not chase) people unless something (make) him angry. Unfortunately, as Mr Smith (cross) the field, his alarm clock (go) off.

4 This (annoy) the bull, who immediately (begin) to chase Mr Smith.

5 Mr Smith (carry) an open umbrella as it (rain) slightly. He (throw) the umbrella to the ground and (run) away as fast as he could.

6 The bull (stop) and (begin) to attack the umbrella. While he (do) this Mr Smith escaped.

7 When he (awake) she (sit) by the window. She (look) at something in the street, but when he (call) her she (turn) and (smile) at him.

8 Why you (interrupt) me just now? I (have) a very interesting conversation with Mr Pitt.

9 The murderer (carry) the corpse down the stairs when he (hear) a knock on the door.

10 When I (look) through your books I (notice) that you have a copy of Murder in the Cathedral.

11 As they (walk) along the road they (hear) a car coming from behind them. Tom (turn) round and (hold) up his hand. The car (stop).

I (run) into a lamp—post yesterday.

I suppose you (drive) too quickly or were not looking where you (go).

27 As he (get) into the bus it (start) suddenly and he (fall) backwards on to the road.

28 I (call) Paul at 7.00 but it wasn't necessary because he already (get) up.

29 When he (mend) the fuse he (get) a very bad shock.

30 When I (hear) his knock I (go) to the door and (open) it, but I (not recognize) him at first because I (not wear) my glasses.

31 When I came in they (sit) round the fire. Mr Pitt (do) a crossword

puzzle, Mrs Pitt (knit), the others (read). Mrs Pitt (smile) at me and (say), Come and sit down.

32 While the guests (dance) thieves (break) into the house and (steal) a lot of fur coats.

33 The next day, as they (know) that the police (look) for them, they (hide) the coats in a wood and (go) off in different directions.

34 She was very extravagant. She always (buy) herself new clothes.

35 Her mother often (tell) her that she (spend) too much money but she never (listen).

36 I looked over the wall and (see) Mr Pitt. He (plant) cabbages and (be) too busy to speak to me.

13 The simple past and the past continuous

Put the verbs in brackets into the simple past or past continuous

21 I (see) you yesterday from the bus. Why you (use) a stick? I (use) a stick because I had hurt my leg that morning falling off a horse.

Whose horse you (ride)?

22 The floor was covered with balls of wool. Obviously Mrs Pitt (knit) something.

23 Ann said that she (be) on holiday. I (say) that I (hope) that she (enjoy) herself.

24 While he (water) the flowers it (begin) to rain. He (put) up his umbrella and (go) on watering.

25 I just (write) a cheque when I (remember) that I (have) nothing in the bank.

26 I (find) this ring as I (dig) in the garden. It looks very old. I wonder who it (belong) to?

27 When I last (see) her she (hurry) along the road to the station. I (ask) her where she (go) and she (say), 'London', but I don't think she (speak) the truth because there (not be) any train for London at that time.

28 The tailor said, 'Your suit will be ready on Monday. But when I (call) on Monday he still (work) on it.'

29 The teacher (come) into the classroom unusually early and one of the boys, who (smoke) a cigarette, (have) no time to put it out. So he (throw) it into his desk and (hope) for the best.

30 A little later the teacher (notice) that smoke (rise) from this desk.

'You (smoke) when I (come) in?' he (ask).

31 While I (swim) someone (steal) my clothes and I (have to) walk home in my swimsuit.

12 When I (arrive) at the station Mary (wait) for me. She (wear) a blue dress and (look) very pretty. As soon as she (see) me she (wave) her umbrella and (shout) something, but I couldn't hear what she (say) because everybody (make) such a noise.

13 The prisoner (escape) by climbing the wall of the garden where he (work). He (wear) blue overalls and black shoes.

14 She said that the car (travel) at 40 k. P. h. when it (begin) to skid.

15 She said that she (not like) her present flat and (try) to find another.

16 While he (make) his speech the minister suddenly (feel) faint. But someone (bring) him a glass of water and after a few minutes he (be able) to continue.

17 When I (see) him he (paint) a portrait of his wife. You (like) it?

He only just (start) when I (see) it, so I couldn't judge.

18 I (take) my friend to a murder trial the other day. Who (be) tried?

A man called Bill Sykes.

Was he acquitted?

I don't know. They still (listen) to the evidence when we (leave).

19 I (be) sorry that I (have to) leave the party early, because I (enjoy) myself.

20 As we (come) here a policeman (stop) us. He (say) that he (look) for some stolen property and (ask) if he could search the car.

- 9 The phone (stop) ringing.
- 10 You (hear) from her lately? No, I . . .
- 11 I just (wash) that floor.
- 12 The cat (steal) the fish.
- 13 You (explain) the exercise? Yes, I . . .
- 14 There aren't any buses because the drivers (go) on strike.
- 15 You (have) enough to eat?
Yes, I (have) plenty, thank you.
- 16 Charles (pass) his exam? Yes, he . . .
- 17 How many bottles the milkman (leave)? He (leave) six.
- 18 I (live) here for ten years.
- 19 How long you (know) Mr Pitt? I (know) him for ten years.
- 20 Would you like some coffee? I just (make) some.
- 21 Mary (water) the tomatoes? Yes, I think she . . .
- 22 You (not make) a mistake? No, I'm sure I . . .
- 23 Why you (not mend) the fuse? I (not have) time.
- 24 You (dive) from the ten—metre board yet? No, I . . .
- 25 You ever (leave) a restaurant without paying the bill?
No, I . . .
- 26 I (ask) him to dinner several times.
- 27 He always (refuse).
- 28 You ever (ride) a camel?
- 29 I (buy) a new carpet. Come and look at it.
- 30 He (post) the letter?
- 31 Why he (not finish)? He (have) plenty of time.
- 32 I often (see) him but I never (speak) to him.
- 33 You ever (eat) caviar. No, I . . .
- 34 We just (hear) the most extraordinary news.

32 The men (say) that they (work) on the road outside my house and that they (want) some water to make tea.

33 He (say) that he (build) himself a house and that he (think) it would be ready in two years.

34 At 3 a. m. Mrs Pitt (wake) her husband and (say) that she (think) that someone (try) to get into the house.

35 Why you (lend) him that book? I still (read) it. I'm sorry. I (not know) that you still (read) it.

36 I (come) in very late last night and unfortunately the dog (wake) up and (start) to bark. This (wake) my mother who (come) to the top of the stairs and (say), Who is there? I (say), It is me, but she (not hear) me because the dog (bark) so loudly, so she (go) back to her room and (telephone) the police.

14 The present perfect tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect tense, and fill the spaces by repeating the auxiliary.

e. g. You (wash) the plates? Yes, I have.

Have you washed the plates. Yes, I have.

You (see) him lately? No, I haven't.

Have you seen him lately? No, I haven't.

1 Where you (be)? I (be) to the dentist.

2 You (have) breakfast? Yes, I have.

3 The post (come)? Yes, it has.

4 You (see) my watch anywhere? No, I'm afraid I haven't.

5 Someone (wind) the clock? Yes, Tom has.

6 I (not finish) my letter yet.

7 He just (go) out.

8 Someone (take) my bicycle.

- b No, I (not see) him since Christmas . . .
- 10 Have you been to the opera this week? a Yes, I . . .
- b Yes, I (go) to Faust on Friday.
- 11 Have you ever driven this car? a "y'es, I (drive) it once or twice.
- b Yes, I (drive) it when you were away.
- 12 Has he missed his train? a No, he . . .
- b Yes, he . . . It (go) five min utes ago.
- 13 Have they been through Cus toms? a Yes, they . . .
- b Yes, their luggage (be) ex a mined at Victoria.
- 14 Has he spoken to her? a Yes, he . . .
- b Yes, he (speak) to her on Friday . . .
- 15 Have you spent all your money a No, I only (spend) half of it.
- b Yes, I . . .
- 16 How much have you saved since Christmas? a I (not save) anything.
- b I (save) f3.
- 17 Has his temperature gone down? a No, it . . .
- b Yes, it (go) down last night.
- 18 Have you seen his garden? a No, I (not see) it yet.
- b I (see) the house on Monday . . .
- but I (not see) the garden.
- 19 Have you paid the bill? a Yes, I . . .
- b Yes, I (pay) it while you were away . . .
- 20 Have you ever flown a plane? a No, I . . .
- b Yes, I (fly) during the war.
- 21 Has your dog ever bitten anyone last week a Yes, he (bite) a

35 The police (recapture) the prisoners who escaped yesterday.

36 I (not pay) the telephone bill yet.

15 The present perfect and the simple past

a Fill the spaces by repeating the auxiliary used in the question, putting it into the negative where necessary.

b Put the verb in brackets into the present perfect or the simple past tense .

e. g. Have you seen that play? a Yes, I have.
Yes, I have.

b Yes, I (be) there last night.
Yes I was there last night.

1 Have you wound the clock? a Yes, I have.
b Yes, I (wind) it on Monday.

2 Have you ever eaten snails? a No, I haven't.
b Yes, I (eat) some at Tom's party last week.

3 Has she fed the dog? a Yes, I think she has.
b Yes, she (feed) him before lunch .

4 Have they repaired the road? a No, they haven't.
b They only (repair) part of it so far .

5 Have they done their home work? a Yes, they (do) it all.
b Yes, they (do) it before they left school.

6 Have you found the matches? a No, I haven't.
b No, I (not find) them yet.

7 Have you made the coffee? a Yes, I have.
b I (make) some yesterday; we can use that.

8 Have you been here before? a No, I haven't.
b Yes, I (be) here several times.

9 Have you seen him lately? a No, I haven't.

- 10 Chopin (compose) some of his music in Majorca.
- 11 When he (arrive)? He (arrive) at 2.00.
- 12 You (lock) the door before you left the house?
- 13 I (read) his books when I was at school. I (enjoy) them very much.
- 14 I can't go out because I (not finish) my work.
- 15 I never (drink) whisky. Well, have some now.
- 16 I (write) the letter but I can't find a stamp.
- 17 The clock is slow. It isn't slow, it (stop).
- 18 Here are your shoes; I just (clean) them.
- 19 I (leave) home at 8.00 and (get) here at twelve.
- 20 I (do) this sort of work when I (be) in the army.
- 21 He just (go) out.
- 22 He (go) out ten minutes ago.
- 23 You (have) breakfast yet? Yes, I (have) it at 8.00.
- 24 I (meet) him last June.
- 25 You (see) the moon last night?
- 26 The concert (begin) at 2.30 and (last) for two hours. Everyone (enjoy) it very much.
- 27 The play just (begin). You are a little late.
- 28 The newspaper (come)? Yes, Ann is reading it.
- 29 The actors (arrive) yesterday and (start) rehearsals early this morning.
- 30 It (be) very cold this year. I wonder when it is going to get warmer.
- 31 Cervantes (write) Don Quixote.
- 32 We (miss) the bus. Now we'll have to walk.
- 33 He (break) his leg in a skiing accident last year.

policeman last

b Yes, he (bite) me several times .

22 Have you planted your peas? a Yes, I (plant) them on Tuesday .

b No, I . . . yet.

23 Has he written to the paper? a Yes, he . . .

b Yes, he (write) at once.

24 Have you ever drunk pure alcohol? a No, I . . .

b I (drink) it once years ago and it nearly (kill) me.

16 The present perfect and the simple past

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or the simple past tense. (In some sentences the present perfect continuous is also possible.)

1 This is my house.

How long you (live) here?

I (live) here since 1970.

2 He (live) in London for two years and then (go) to Edinburgh.

3 You (wear) your hair long when you were at school?

Yes, my mother (insist) on it.

4 But when I (leave) school I (cut) my hair and (wear) it short ever since .

5 Shakespeare (write) a lot of plays.

6 My brother (write) several plays. He just (finish) his second tragedy.

7 I (fly) over Loch Ness last week.

You (see) the Loch Ness monster?

8 I (not see) him for three years. I wonder where he is.

9 He (not smoke) for two weeks. He is trying to give it up.

Yes, that is Miss Thrift. Is she a customer of yours?

Not exactly. She (be) in here several times but she never (buy) anything.

6 He (leave) the house at 8.00.

Where he (go)?

I (not see) where he (go).

7 He (serve) in the First World War.

When that war (begin)?

It (begin) in 1914 and (last) for four years.

8 Who you (vote) for at the last election?

I (vote) for Mr Pitt.

He (not be) elected, (be) he?

No, he (lose) his deposit.

9 You (like) your last job?

I (like) it at first but then I (quarrel) with my employer and he (dismiss) me.

How long you (be) there?

I (be) there for two weeks.

10 I (not know) that you (know) Mrs Pitt. How long you (know) her?

I (know) her for ten years.

11 That is Mr Minus, who teaches me mathematics, but he (not have) time to teach me much. I only (be) in his class for a week.

12 You (hear) his speech on the radio last night?

Yes, I . . .

What you (think) of it?

13 I (not know) that you (be) here. You (be) here long?

34 Mr Pound is the bank manager. He (be) here for five years.
35 Mr Count (work) as a cashier for twenty—five years. Then
he (retire) and (go) to live in the country.
36 You (be) here before?
Yes' I (spend) my holidays here last year.

You (have) a good time?
No, it never (stop) raining.

17 The present perfect and the simple past

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or simple past tense.

Fill the spaces by repeating the auxiliary used in the preceding verb.

e. g. You (see) Mary on Monday: Yes, I . . .

Did you see Mary on Monday? Yes, I did.

1 Where is Tom?

I (not see) him today, but he (tell) Mary that he'd be in for dinner.

2 I (buy) this in Bond Street.

How much you (pay) for it?

I (pay) £100.

3 Where you (find) this knife?

I (find) it in the garden.

Why you (not leave) it there?

4 I (lose) my black gloves. You (see) them anywhere?

No, I'm afraid I . . . When you last (wear) them?

I (wear) them at the theatre last night.

Perhaps you (leave) them at the theatre.

5 Do you know that lady who just (leave) the shop?

- Yes, very much. We (take) part in a race.
 You (win)?
 No, we (come) in last.
 21 How long that horrible monument (be) there?
 It (be) there six months. Lots of people (write) to the Town Council asking them to take it away but so far nothing (be) done.
 22 I just (be) to the film war and Peace. You (see) it?
 No, I . . . Is it like the book?
 I (not read) the book.
 I (read) it when I (be) at school.
 When Tolstoy (write) it?
 He (write) it in 1868.
 He (write) anything else?
 23 Hannibal (bring) elephants across the Alps.
 Why he (do) that?
 He (want) to use them in battle.
 24 Where you (be)? I (be) to the dentist.
 He (take) out your bad tooth? Yes, he . . .
 It (hurt)? Yes, horribly.
 25 She (say) that she'd phone me this morning, but it is now 12.30 and she (not phone) yet.
 26 I just (receive) a letter saying that we (not pay) this quarter's electricity bill. I (not give) you the money for that last week?
 Yes, you . . . but I'm afraid I (spend) it on something else.
 27 How long you (be) out of work?
 I'm not out of work now. I just (start) a new job.
 How you (find) the job?

Yes, I (be) here two months.

You (be) to the Cathedral?

Yes, I (go) there last Sunday.

14 You ever (try) to give up smoking?

Yes, I (try) last year, but then I (find) that I was getting fat so I (start) again.

15 You (see) today's paper?

No, anything interesting (happen)?

Yes, several of the patients (escape) from our local mental hospital.

16 Mary (feed) the cat?

Yes she (feed) him before lunch.

What she (give) him?

She (give) him some fish.

17 How long you (know) your new assistant?

I (know) him for two years.

What he (do) before he (come) here?

I think he (be) in prison.

18 I (not see) your aunt recently.

No. She (not be) out of her house since she (buy) her colour TV.

19 The plumber (be) here yet?

Yes, but he only (stay) for an hour.

What he (do) in that time?

He (turn) off the water and (empty) the tank.

20 Where you (be)?

I (be) out in a yacht.

You (enjoy) it?

- 4 There is sawdust in your hair. I'm not surprised. I (cut) down a tree.
- 5 Have you seen my bag anywhere? I (look) for it for ages.
- 6 What you (do)? I (work) in the laboratory.
- 7 He (study) Russian for two years and doesn't even know the alphabet yet.
- 8 How long you (wait) for me? I (wait) about half an hour.
- 9 It (rain) for two days now. There'll be flood soon.
- 10 We (argue) about this for two hours now. Perhaps we should stop!
- 11 I (bathe). That's why my hair is all wet.
- 12 You (drive) all day. Let me drive now.
- 13 How long you (wear) glasses?
- 14 The petrol gauge (say) mpty for quite a long time now. Dont you think we should get some petrol?
- 15 I'm sorry for keeping you waiting. I (try) to make a telephone call to Rome.
- 16 You (not eat) enough lately. That's why you feel irritable.
- 17 He (speak) for an hour now. I expect hesll soon be finished.
- 18 That aeroplane (fly) round the house for the last hour; do you think the pilot wants to drop a bomb on us?
- 19 The radio (play) since 7 a. m. I wish someone would turn it off.
- 20 I (shop) all day and I haven't a penny left.
- 21 We (live) here since 1977.
- 22 I'm on a diet. I (eat) nothing but bananas for the last month.
- 23 The children (look) forward to this holiday for months.
- 24 That pipe (leak) for ages. We must get it mended.

I (answer) an advertisement in the paper.

28 You (finish) checking the accounts?

No, not quite. I (do) about half so far.

29 I (cut) my hand rather badly. Have you a bandage?

I'll get you one. How it (happen)?

I was chopping some wood and the axe (slip).

30 How you (get) that scar?

I (get) it in a car accident a year ago.

31 You (meet) my brother at the lecture yesterday?

Yes, I . . . We (have) coffee together afterwards.

32 He (lose) his job last month and since then he (be) out of

work. Why he (lose) his job?

He (be) very rude to Mr Pitt.

33 What are all those people looking at?

There (be) an accident.

You (see) what (happen)?

Yes, a motor cycle (run) into a lorry.

34 I (phone) you twice yesterday and (get) no answer.

35 Originally horses used in bull fights (not wear) any protec-

tion, but for some time now they (wear) special padding.

18 The present perfect continuous tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect continuous

tense.

1 I (make) cakes. That is why my hands are all covered with

flour.

2 Her phone (ring) for ten minutes. I wonder why she doesn't

answer it .

3 He (overwork). That is why he looks so tired.

- 5 How many you (make)? I (make) 200.
- 6 That boy (eat) seven ice-creams.
- 7 He (not stop) eating since he arrived.
- 8 The driver (drink). I think someone else ought to drive.
- 9 I (pull) up 100 dandelions.
- 10 I (pull) up dandelions all day.
- 11 What you (do)? We (pick) apples.
- 12 How many you (pick)? We (pick) ten baskets.
- 13 I (sleep) on every bed in this house and I don't like any of them.
- 14 He (sleep) since ten o'clock. Its time he woke up.
- 15 He (ride); that's why he is wearing breeches.
- 16 I (ride) all the horses in this stable.
- 17 What a lovely smell! Mary (make) jam.
- 18 The students (work) very well this term.
- 19 I only (hear) from him twice since he went away.
- 20 I (hear) from her regularly. She is a very good correspondent.
- 21 I (grease) my car. That's why my hands are so dirty.
- 22 I (polish) this table all the morning and Mrs Pitt isn't satisfied with it yet.
- 23 I (work) for him for ten years and he never once (say) 'Good morning' to me.
- 24 He (teach) in this school for five years.
- 25 I (teach) hundreds of students but I never (meet) such a hopeless class as this.
- 26 Why you (be) so long in the garage?
The tyres were flat; I (pump) them up.

25 Tom (dig) in the garden all afternoon. Why you not (help) him?

26 I (ask) you to mend that window for six weeks. When are you going to do it?

27 Someone (use) my bicycle. The chain's fallen off.

28 How long you (drive)? I (drive) for ten years.

29 The trial (go) on for a long time. I wonder what the verdict will be.

30 It (snow) for three days now. The roads will be blocked if it doesn't stop soon.

31 Mary (cry)?

No, she (not cry), she (peel) onions.

32 The car (make) a very curious noise ever since it ran out of oil.

33 He walked very unsteadily up the stairs and his wife said Your (drink)!

34 Your fingers are very brown. You (smoke) too much.

35 You usually know when someone (eat) garlic.

36 Ever since he came to us that man (try) to make trouble.

19 The present perfect and the present perfect continuous

Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or the present perfect continuous tense. (In some cases either could be used.)

1 We (walk) ten kilometres.

2 We (walk) for three hours.

3 You (walk) too fast. That's why you are tired.

4 I (make) sausage rolls for the party all the morning.

- 6 That man has been standing there . . . six o'clock.
- 7 She has worn the same hat . . . 1975.
- 8 Things have changed . . . I was a girl.
- 9 The kettle has been boiling . . . a quarter of an hour.
- 10 The central heating has been on . . . October.
- 11 That trunk has been in the hall . . . a year.
- 12 He has been very ill . . . the last month.
- 13 I've been using this machine . . . twelve years.
- 14 We've been waiting . . . half an hour.
- 15 Mr Pitt has been in hospital . . . his accident.
- 16 He hasn't spoken to me . . . the last committee meeting.
- 17 I have been very patient with you . . . several years.
- 18 They have been on strike . . . November.
- 19 The strike has lasted . . . six months.
- 20 It has been very foggy . . . early morning.
- 21 They have been quarrelling ever . . . they got married.
- 22 I've been awake . . . four o'clock.
- 23 I've been awake . . . a long time.
- 24 We've had no gas . . . the strike began.
- 25 I've earned my own living . . . I left school.
- 26 Nobody has seen him . . . last week.
- 27 The police have been looking for me . . . four days.
- 28 I haven't worn low-heeled shoes . . . I was at school.
- 29 He had a bad fall last week and . . . then he hasn't left the house.
- 30 He has been under water . . . half an hour.
- 31 That tree has been there . . . 2,000 years.
- 32 He has been Minister of Education . . . 1976.

- 27 I (pump) up three tyres. Would you like to do the fourth?
- 28 I (look) for mushrooms but I (not find) any.
- 29 He (cough) a lot lately. He ought to give up smoking.
- 30 You (hear) the news? Tom and Ann are engaged!
- That's not new, I (know) it for ages!
- 31 I (try) to finish this letter for the last half-hour. I wish you'd go away or stop talking.
- I hardly (say) anything.
- 32 The driver of that car (sound) his horn for the last ten minutes.
- 33 It (rain) for two hours and the ground is too wet to play on, so the match (be) postponed.
- 34 He (hope) for a rise in salary for six months but he (not dare) to ask for it Yet.
- 35 Mr Smith, you (whisper) to the student on your right for the last five minutes. You (help) him with his exam paper or he (help) you?
- 36 Why You (make) such a horrible noise?
- I (lose) my key and I (try) to wake my wife by throwing stones at her window.
- You (throw) stones at the wrong window. You live next door.
- 20 for and since**
- Fill the spaces in the following sentences by using for or since.
- 1 We've been fishing . . . two hours.
- 2 I've been working in this office . . . a month.
- 3 They've been living in France . . . 1970.
- 4 He has been in prison . . . a year.
- 5 I've known that . . . a long time.

- 16 I (have) my photograph taken tomorrow.
- 17 I (buy) her a burglar alarm for a wedding present.
- 18 The elections (be) held next week.
- 19 I (have) lunch with my aunt on Thursday.
- 20 The committee (meet) next Wednesday.
- 21 My grandparents (celebrate) their golden wedding next week.
- 22 I (lend) him my car for his holidays.
- 23 The strikers (return) to work next week.
- 24 Smith's (open) a new branch in this street in July.
- 25 We've bought a new house and (move) in very soon.
- 26 I (take) up judo next winter.
- 27 They (get) married next week.
- 28 You (do) anything tonight?
Yes, I (go) my carpentry class.
- 29 The Prime Minister (fly) to America tomorrow.
- 30 Ho (start) a new job on Friday.
- 31 The Queen (give) a garden party next week. You (go)?
- 32 My brother (be) released on Tuesday. I (meet) him outside the prison.
- 33 I (catch) the 6.30 plane tomorrow.
Where you (leave) your car?
I (leave) it at the airport.
- 34 Her mother (send) her to France next year.
- 35 I (go) to the dentist tomorrow. Miss Pitt (take) my class.
- 36 I (let) my flat to my American cousins next year.
- 22 The be going to form

- 33 I've been trying to open this door . . . forty—five minutes.
 34 He hasn't eaten anything . . . twenty—four hours.
 35 We've had terrible weather . . . the last month.
 36 Nobody has come to see us . . . we bought these blood-hounds.

2. Future and conditional tenses

21 The present continuous tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous tense.

- 1 They are going to drill for oil here. They (start) on Monday.
 2 My uncle (make) a speech on Friday.
 3 I (take) my sister to the ballet tomorrow.
 4 She (call) for me at six.
 5 He (play) at Wimbledon next summer.
 6 I (meet) her at the station at ten.
 7 The sales (start) on Monday.
 8 How you (get) to the party tomorrow?

I (go) by car.

Who (drive)?

- 9 The piano tuner (come) this afternoon.
 10 You (give) up anything for Lent?
 Yes, I (give) up cigarettes.
 11 The windows (be) cleaned this afternoon. Then we'll be able to see out .
 12 She (come) out of hospital next week.
 13 We (have) dinner early tonight as we (go) to the theatre.
 14 Where you (go) for your holidays this year?
 I (go) to Holland.
 15 He (give) a lecture tonight.

- 25 I (not sleep) in this room. It is haunted.
- 26 We (buy) a metal detector and look for buried treasure.
- 27 You (reserve) a seat?
- 28 I (plant) an oak tree here.
- 29 The dog (bury) the bone.
- 30 I (have) a bath.
- 31 I (smuggle) this out of the country.
- 32 There was very little blossom this spring. Apples (be) scarce.
- 33 I don't like this macaroni. I (not finish) it.
- 34 I (not stay) here another minute.
- 35 They (try) him for manslaughter when he comes out of hospital.
- 36 We (make) a lot of money out of this.

23 The present continuous and the be going to form

Planned future actions can be expressed by the present continuous tense with a time expression or by the be going to form with or without a time expression. The present continuous is mainly used for very definite arrangements in the near future. The be going to form can be used more widely.

Use the present continuous where possible in the following sentences and put the remaining verbs into the be going to form.

- 1 I (play) bridge tonight with Tom and Ann.
- 2 He (have) an operation next week.
- 3 It's very cold. I (light) a fire.
- 4 We (have) some friends to lunch tomorrow.
- 5 I've bought a piano; it (be) delivered this afternoon.
Where you (put) it?

- Put the verbs in brackets into **be going to** form:
- 1 You (miss) your train.
 - 2 The pressure cooker (explode).
 - 3 When your husband (cut) the grass?
 - 4 She (dye) the old curtains blue.
 - 5 We (make) this whisky bottle into a lamp.
 - 6 What you (do) with this room?
 - 7 I (paint) the walls in black and white stripes.
 - 8 You (eat) all that?
 - 9 That man with the tomato in his hand (throw) it at the speaker.
 - 10 That door (slam).
 - 11 The bull (attack) us.
 - 12 It (rain). Look at those clouds.
 - 13 The cat (have) kittens.
 - 14 The men in the helicopter (try) to rescue the man in the water.
 - 15 That rider (fall) off.
 - 16 These swans (eat) all our sandwiches.
 - 17 The Lord Mayor is standing up. He (make) a speech.
 - 18 He (grow) a beard when he leaves school.
 - 19 This aeroplane (crash).
 - 20 I (stop) here for a moment to get some petrol.
 - 21 You (ask) him to help you?
 - 22 I've lent you my car once. I (not do) it again.
 - 23 I have seen the play. Now I (read) the book.
 - 24 My son (be) a frogman when he grows up.

27 The inspector (ask) you a few questions.

28 Her parents (give) a party for her next month. They (invite) sixty guests .

29 Have you got a ticket for the big match on Saturday?

No, I don't even know who (play).

France (play) England.

30 They (launch) a ship this afternoon. You (come) to see it?

31 What you (do) with the money?

32 I (pick) you up at 6. 30; don't forget.

33 Where you (go) tonight?

I (go) out with Peter. He (call) for me at eight.

34 I (compete) in the bicycle race tomorrow.

35 Mr Pitt has just phoned to say that he (not come) back till

Wednesday night.

36 I (read) you his answer to my letter of complaint.

24 The future tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the future tense.

1 I (know) the result in a week.

2 You (be) in Rome tonight.

3 You (have) time to help me tomorrow?

4 It (matter) if I don't come home till morning?

5 You (be) able to drive after another five lessons.

6 Do you think that he (recognize) me?

7 Unless he runs he (not catch) the train.

8 He (lend) it to you if you ask him.

9 I hope I (find) it.

10 If petrol pump attendants go on strike we (not have) any

petrol.

- 5 I (put) it in the dining room.
- 6 You (go) to the auction tomorrow?
- Yes, I (go) but I (not buy) anything.
- 7 I've reminded you once; I (not do) it again.
- 8 I (have) my hair cut this afternoon.
- 9 My nephew (come) to stay with me next weekend.
Where you (put) him?
- I (put) him in the room in the tower.
- 10 Our class (start) German next term.
- 11 I (spend) a few days in London next week.
- 12 The Town Council (build) a new school here.
- 13 What you (tell) the police? I (tell) them the truth.
- 14 He (start) tomorrow.
- 15 . The Queen (open) Parliament next month.
- 16 The Prime Minister (speak) on TV tonight.
- 17 This shop (close) down next week.
- 18 When you (have) your next lesson?
I (have) it on Monday.
- 19 I (collect) my new dress this afternoon.
- 20 We (take) the children to the seaside this summer.
- 21 I (give) him a football for his next birthday.
- 22 She (sing) in her first big concert next month.
- 23 He (go) to Spain for his holidays.
He (fly)?
- No, he (go) by boat.
- 24 She (see) a specialist next week.
- 25 He (wash) the car?
- 26 He (ring) me up tonight.

35 If I drop this it (explode).

36 What your father (say) when he hears about this accident?

He (not say) much but he (not lend) me the car again.

25 The present continuous and the future tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous or the future tense, using the present continuous where possible. (The be going to form could be used here instead of the present continuous, but for the sake of simplicity students are advised to use only the two tenses first mentioned.)

1 I am sure that I (recognize) him.

2 I (see) her tomorrow.

3 He (play) in a tennis match on Friday.

4 She (come) back on Monday.

5 I (go) again next year.

6 We (know) tonight.

7 You pay and I (owe) you the money.

8 I (believe) it when I see it.

9 I (have) my car repainted next week.

10 I hope that you (have) a good time tomorrow.

11 His speech (be) broadcast tonight.

12 The sweep (come) at eight tomorrow.

13 Tom (catch) the 7.40 train.

14 Where you (meet) them?

I (meet) them at midnight. in the middle of the wood.

15 What horse you (ride) tomorrow?

16 Look! I've broken the teapot. What Mrs Pitt (say)?

She (not mind); she never liked that one.

17 I've left the light on. It (matter)?

- 11 He (believe) whatever you tell him.
- 12 I (remember) this day all my life.
- 13 Perhaps he (arrive) in time for lunch.
- 14 If he works well I (pay) him £10.
- 15 I wonder how many of us still (be) here next year.
- 16 If you think it over you (see) that I am right.
- 17 If you learn another language you (get) a better job.
- 18 I am sure that you (like) our new house.
- 19 Newspaper announcement: The President (drive) along the High Street in an open carriage.
- 20 He (mind) if I bring my dog?
- 21 You (need) a visa if you are going to Spain.
- 22 If you open that trapdoor you (see) some steps.
- 23 You (feel) better when you've had a meal.
- 24 He (be) offended if you don't invite him.
- 25 She (have) £400 a year when she is twenty-one.
- 26 If you put any more polish on that floor someone (slip) on it.
- 27 I wonder if he (succeed).
- 28 Papers (not be) delivered on the Bank Holiday.
- 29 I hope he (remember) to buy wine.
- 30 If you leave your skateboard on the path someone (fall) over it.
- 31 If they fall over it and hurt themselves they (sue) you.
- 32 Announcement: Mrs Pitt (present) the prizes.
- 33 If you want twenty cigarettes you (have) to give me more money.
- 34 Notice: The management (not be) responsible for articles left on the seats.

of the examples the present continuous could be used instead of the be going to form .)

1 The fire has gone out!

So it has. I (go) and get some sticks.

2 Did you remember to book seats?

Oh no, I forgot. I (telephone) for them now.

3 He has just been taken to hospital with a broken leg.

I'm sorry to hear that. I (send) him some grapes.

4 I've hired a typewriter and I (learn) to type.

5 I see that you are wearing your gardening gloves. You (do) some weeding?

6 I can't understand this letter.

I (call) my son. He (translate) it for you.

7 You (buy) bread?

No, because I (not eat) it any more. I (eat) biscuits instead.

8 A lot of paint was delivered here today. You (redecorate) your kitchen?

9 Why are you getting out the jack?

We have a puncture and I (change) the wheel.

I (help) you.

10 Look what I've just bought an auction!

What an extraordinary thing!

where you (put) it?

11 Why are you peeling that bit of garlic?

I (put) it in the stew

12 What you (do) when you grow up?

I (be) an acrobat in a circus.

13 Why are you taking out all your dresses?

- 18 He (not forget) to come.
- 19 He (leave) in a few days.
- 20 I (remember) it.
- 21 If you drop that bottle it (break).
- 22 I never (forgive) him.
- 23 I'm sure that you (like) him.
- 24 They (lay) the foundations next week.
- 25 You (see) a signpost at the end of the road. 26 He has cut my hair too short.
- Don't worry; it (grow) again very quickly.
- 27 You (understand) when you are older.
- 28 The cat (scratch) you if you pull its tail.
- 29 I (be) back at 8. 30.
- 30 If he doesn't work hard he (not pass) his exam.
- 31 She (go) on a cruise next summer.
- 32 I (move) to a new flat next week.
- 33 I am sorry that the child saw the accident.
- I don't think it matters. He soon (forget) all about it.
- 34 I (wait) here till he comes back.
- 35 He (not write) to you unless you write to him.
- 36 There (be) a big meeting here tomorrow.

26 will + infinitive and the be going to form

Future with intention can usually be expressed by will + infinitive or the be going to form. Very often either of these can be used, but when the intention is clearly premeditated the be going to form must be used, and when the intention is clearly unpremeditated we must use will + infinitive.

Put the verbs in brackets into one of these two forms. (In some

30 Child: I've torn my dress.

Mother: I (mend) it for you.

31 I'm catching the 6.30 train, m,

so am I. I (give) you a lift to station.

32 I've bought some blue velvet and I (make) curtains for the drawing room.

33 Why are you carrying that saw?

I (shorten) the legs of the dining room table.

34 You won't need the big basket, will you?

Oh yes, I will, I (buy) a lot of vegetables.

35 I've planned my future for the next ten years.

That is very clever of you. What you (do) when you leave the university?

36 Why are you putting that old loaf into a paper bag?

I (give) it to Mrs Pitt for her hens.

27 will + infinitive and the be going to form

Both will you and are you going to can introduce questions about future intentions. But will you very often introduces a request or invitation. For this reason are you going to is more usual than will you in questions about intentions. are you going to must of course be used when the intention is obviously premeditated. (See also Exercise 31.)

Put the verbs in brackets into one of these two forms. Where both are possible it will be noted in the key. (In some examples the present continuous tense could be used instead of the be going to form.) The exercise contains requests, invitations, and questions about intentions.

1 You (open) the door for me, please? Yes, certainly.

- I (shorten) the skirts.
- 14 Will you lend me your season ticket?
No, I (not lend) it to you. It is against the law.
- 15 That tree makes the house very dark.
very well, I (cut) it down.
- 16 I've just enrolled at the local technical college. I (attend) pottery classes next winter.
- 17 How do I get from here to London Bridge?
I don't know, but I (ask) that policeman.
- 18 why are you carrying a corkscrew?
I (open) a bottle of wine.
- 19 I see that you've got a letter from Charles. what does he say?
I don't know. I (not read) the letter now as I haven't time.
- 20 My brother has just returned from America.
Oh good, we (ask) him to our next party.
- 21 Why have you set your alarm to go off at five-thirty?
- 22 I hear that you've decided to go on a diet. When you (start)?
I (start) on Monday.
- 23 You look frozen. sit down by the fire and I (make) you a cup of tea.
- 24 They've brought a rope and they (tow) the car a garage.
- 25 I haven't bought any cigarettes because I (give) up smoking.
- 26 I have tried to explain but she doesn't understand English.
- 27 I've come out without any money.
Never mind, I (lend) you some. How much do you want?
- 28 Do you see that car? They (raffle) it for charity.
- 29 Why are you taking up that floor board?
I (put) my money under the floor. I don't trust banks.

- 16 You (finish) this book or shall I take it back to the library?
- 17 You (give) me IOp, please?
- Yes, here you are. You (make) a telephone call?
- 18 You (leave) that coil of barbed wire in the hall? Someone will fall over it if you do.
- 19 You (bath) your dog? Yes, you (help) me?
- 20 You (drive), please? I dont like driving at night.
- 21 You (ride) that horse? He looks very bad—tempered to me.
- 22 You (eat) it raw? You will be ill if you do.
- 23 You (have) some of this cake? I made it myself.
- 24 You really (call) the fire brigade? I dont think it is at all necessary.
- 25 You (paint) the whole room by yourself? It will take you ages.
- 26 You (be) ready in five minutes?
- 27 Hostess: You (sit) here, please, beside Mr Pitt?
- 28 You (do) something for me?
- Yes, of course, what is it?
- 29 You (be) angry if he refuses to help you?
- 30 Why have you brought your typewriter? You (work.) this weekend?
- 31 You (call) me at six? I have to catch an early train.
- 32 You (walk) there in this rain? You'll get awfully wet.
- 33 You (sign) here, please?
- 34 What are all these notes for? You (give) a lecture?
- 35 Why do you want a candle? You (explore) the caves?
- 36 If I catch the fish, you (cook) them for me?
- 28 The future continuous tense

- 2 You (do) the washing—up tonight?
 No, I think it can wait till tomorrow.
- 3 I'm looking for my easel.
 You (paint) someone's portrait?
- 4 You (read) aloud to me while I do the ironing?
 With pleasure. What book would you like?
- 5 You (eat) any more of this, or shall I tell the waiter to take it away?
- 6 You aren't wearing your climbing boots. You (not climb) the mountain?
- 7 I'm going to the football match. You (come) with me?
 Thank you very much. I'd love to.
- 8 You (put) my car away for me, please? Yes, certainly.
- 9 You (have) another cup of coffee? No, thank you.
- 10 Why did you buy all these eggs? You (make) an enormous omelette?
- 11 There's the phone again. Lift the receiver off its rest and put it down again, will you?
 You (not answer) it?
- 12 You (come) and see me after the class? I want to discuss your work with you.
- 13 I see that you have ordered the Guardian. You really (read) it?
- 14 You (buy) stamps?
 Yes, I am.
 Then you (buy) some for me, please?
- 15 You (lend) me your fishing rod?
 Yes, of course. Where you (fish)?

- me.
- 12 We have to do night duty here. I (do) mine next week.
- 13 In a hundred years' time people (go) to Mars for their holidays.
- 14 I (use) the car this afternoon.
- 15 I (see) you again.
- 16 It's a serious injury but he (walk) again in six weeks.
- 17 I'll come at three o'clock.
- Good, I (expect) you.
- 18 They are pulling down all the old houses in this street. I expect they (pull) down mine in a few years' time.
- 19 I'd like to see your new flat.
- Well, come tomorrow, but it (not look) its best, for the painters still (work) on it.
- 20 Stand there, they (change) the guard in a minute and you'll get a good view.
- 21 You'd better go back now, your mother (wonder) where you are.
- 22 In fifty years time we (live) entirely on pills.
- 23 What do you think the children (do) when we get home?
I expect they (have) their supper.
- 24 The garden (look) its best next month.
- 25 It won't be easy to get out of the country. The police (watch) all the ports.
- 26 What the tide (do) at six tomorrow morning?
It (come) in.
- 27 I've just remembered that I left the bathroom taps on. I expect the water (flow) down the stairs by now.

This tense can be used

- 1 with a point in time to indicate that the action will begin before this time and continue after it.
- 2 with or without a time to express a future, without intention. In this way it is very like the present continuous, but it is not, like the present continuous, restricted in time and is a more detached and casual way of expressing the future. It often implies that the action will occur in the ordinary course of events or as a matter of routine. (Except when used as in 1, above, this tense can usually be replaced by one of the other future forms, though the exact shade of meaning may then be lost.)

Put the verbs in brackets into the future continuous tense.

- 1 This time next month I (sit) on a beach.
 - 2 When you arrive I probably (pick) fruit.
 - 3 When we reach England it very likely (rain).
 - 4 In a few days time we (fly) over the Pyrenees.
 - 5 I'll call for her at eight.
 - No, don't; she still (have) breakfast then.
 - 6 I (wait) for you when you come out.
 - 7 When you next see me I (wear) my new dress.
 - 8 My son will be in the sixth form next year.
 - That means that old Dr Adder (teach) him mathematics.
 - 9 I'll give Jack your message. I can do it easily because I (see) him tomorrow.
 - 10 You (do) geometry next term.
 - 11 I'll look out for you at the parade.
- Do, but I (wear) uniform so you may find it hard to recognize

- I'd love to, but I'm afraid I (do) my exam then.
- 6 I (work) for Mr Pitt next week as his own secretary will be away.
- 7 The headmaster said: 'Smith and Brown (report) to me at six o'clock.' Smith and Brown looked horrified.
- 8 Why did you take his razor? He (look) for it everywhere tomorrow.
- 9 I hope you'll do well in the race tomorrow. I (think) of you.
- 10 Notice on board ship: In the event of an emergency all passengers (assemble) on the boat deck.
- 11 I don't feel well enough to go to the station to meet him. I (meet) him for you. Tell me how I'll recognize him. He (wear) a black and white school cap.
- 12 I (leave) these flowers at the hospital for you. I (go) there anyway to visit my cousin.
- 13 You ought to try to get a ticket for the Spectators' Gallery next week; they (debate) international fishing rights.
- 14 You've left the light on.
Oh, so I have. I (go) and turn it off.
- 15 I've just been appointed assistant at the local library. Then you (work) under my sister. She is head librarian there.
- 16 I want to post this letter but I don't want to go out in the rain. I (post) it for you. I (go) out anyway as I have to take the dog for a walk.
- 17 The prima ballerina is ill so I expect her understudy (dance) instead.
- 18 Today is Guy Fawkes' Day; this evening people (let) off fireworks and (make) bonfires in the streets.

28 You (need) your camera tomorrow or can I borrow it?

29 We've just got to the top in time. The sun (rise) in a minute.

30 Air hostess: We (take off) in a few minutes. Please fasten your safety belts.

31 We'd better go out tomorrow because Mary (practise) the piano all day.

32 Don't ring her up now, she (put) the children to bed. Ring later.

33 We are making a house-to-house collection of things for the jumble sale. We (come) to your house next week.

34 That football club has lost some of its players. They (look out) for new men.

35 When I get home my dog (sit) at the door waiting for me.

36 Lets go down to the harbour; the fishing boats all (come) in because of the gale.

29 Will + infinitive and the future continuous

See note for previous exercise.

Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate future form, using will + Infinitive or the future continuous. (Where alternative

forms are possible they will be given in the key.)

1 There is going to be a bus strike. Everyone (walk) to work next week.

2 You've just missed the last train! Never mind, I (walk).

3 I'll ring you tomorrow at six.

No, don't ring at six; I (bath) the baby then. Ring later.

4 Mother: Your face is dirty.

Child: All right, I (wash) it.

5 Will you have lunch with me on the 24th?

33 Loudspeaker announcement: The ship (leave) in a few minutes and all persons not travelling are asked to go ashore.

34 Now that the parking regulations have become stricter, more people (use) public transport and (leave) their cars at home.

35 I've got rats in my basement and I don't know how to get rid of them. I (bring) my dog round whenever you like. He (catch) them for you.

36 I'm afraid I've just broken your goldfish bowl. Never mind, I (put) the goldfish in the bath.

30 won't + infinitive and the future continuous negative

won't + infinitive (except when used as part of the ordinary future tense, shall/will) usually implies that the subject refuses to perform a certain action. The negative future continuous tense merely states that a certain action will not take place.

Put the verbs in brackets into the appropriate future form, using won't + infinitive or the future continuous negative. (Where other future forms are also possible this will be noted in the key.)

1 I don't like that man and I (not help) him.

2 He (not meet) her, because they will be in different places.

3 The gardener (not cut) down the tree. He says that it is perfectly all right as it is.

4 The gardener (not cut) the grass for some time, because I've got a lot of other jobs for him to do first.

5 Tom (not come) to our party, because he will be away on that date.

6 Peter says that he (not come) to our party. He doesn't approve of parties.

- 19 Military order: Sentries (remain) on duty till they are relieved.
- 20 This time next Monday I (sit) in a Paris cafe reading Le Figaro.
- You (not read). You'll be looking at all the pretty girls.
- 21 Wages have gone up, so I suppose prices (go up) too.
- 22 It is nearly autumn; soon the leaves (change) colour.
- 23 Mother (on phone): My son has just burnt his hand very badly.
- Doctor: I (come) at once.
- 24 Customer in restaurant: Waiter, this plate is dirty.
- Waiter: I'm sorry, sir, I (bring) you another.
- 25 In a few years' time we all (live) in houses heated by solar energy.
- 26 It's beginning to get dark; the street lights (go on) in a few minutes.
- 27 We (not play) poker at the party tonight; our hostess doesn't approve of cards.
- 28 Let's wait here; the swing bridge (open) in a minute to let that ship through.
- 29 Guest: May I use your phone to ring for a taxi?
- Hostess: Oh, there's no need for that; my son (drive) you home.
- 30 Come on deck; we (enter) harbour in a few minutes.
- 31 Before you leave the office you (hand) the keys of the safe to Mr Pitt. Do you understand?
- Yes, sir.
- 32 Are you nearly ready? Our guests (arrive) any minute.

home.

23 He says he (not play) for them again, because they aren't giving him enough money.

24 She (not sing) at the next concert, because she has had to go home suddenly.

25 I (not play) cards with you again. You always cheat.

26 She (not take) part in the bridge tournament, because she'll be away then.

27 I (not eat) any more of this; I feel queer already.

28 I (not eat) curry again for a long time, because I am going to stay in a house where no one knows how to cook it.

29 He says that he (not ride) that mare again, because she's dangerous.

30 Tom (not ride) in tomorrow's race, because he is too young. They don't allow riders under sixteen.

31 Whisky is absolutely necessary to me and I (not give) it up.

32 Jack (not drink) whisky this time next week, because he'll be in hospital and they won't give it to him there.

33 I (not open) the window. I dislike fresh air.

34 There is something on his mind, but he (not tell) me what it is.

35 The cat (not eat) fish so I have to buy meat for him.

36 He (not wear) uniform when you see him, because he'll be on leave then, and they don't wear uniform when they are on leave.

31 Will you? and second person interrogative forms

will you? often introduces a request or invitation, and sometimes a command. It is often used also to introduce questions about intentions when the situation requires an unpremeditated decision.

- 7 She says that she (not lend) me the book, because I never give books back.
- 8 Mr Pitt (not speak) at the meeting tonight, because he has unexpectedly had to go to hospital.
- 9 I'll work under anyone except my brother. I (not work) under him.
- 10 We'll be in the same firm, but we (not work) together, because we'll be in different departments.
- 11 I (not have) that pupil in my class. She is far too noisy.
- 12 I (not teach) you next week, as I have to go to Paris.
- 13 He is so angry with his sister that he (not speak) to her.
- 14 I'll give your message to my sister when I write; but I (not write) for some time, as I only write once a month and I posted a letter to her yesterday.
- 15 I (not feed) your dog again. He always tries to bite me when I come near him.
- 16 They were very rude to me. I (not go) there again.
- 17 He said, 'I (not paint) you in that dress. It does not suit you.'
- 18 I (not take) any photographs for some time because my camera is being repaired.
- 19 I (not borrow) his van again. The brakes don't work properly.
- 20 That boy (not wash) his face. He likes being dirty.
- 21 You can have the car tomorrow if you like. I (not use) it as I'll be far too busy to go out.
- 22 She says that she (not send) the child to school, no matter what we say. She thinks it is far better to educate children at

Thank you very much; I'd love to if you have room for me.

16 You (lend) me your typewriter for an hour? I want to type a letter.

17 You (meet) him at the station?

No, we never meet him. He doesn't like being met.

18 You (come) sailing with me this afternoon?

No, thank you, I don't like sailing.

19 You (have) some more wine? Yes, please.

20 I can't understand this letter. You (translate) it for me, Miss Pitt?

21 You (use) your camera this afternoon?

No, you can borrow it if you like.

22 You (go) to the tobacconist's?

Yes I have to go to get some cigars for my father.

Then you (get) me twenty cigarettes?

23 You (come) to the Motor Show with me next Wednesday?

Thank you very much. I'd love to.

24 I'll be going abroad next week. Is there anything I can get you?

You (pass) through Paris?

Yes, I (spend) a few days there.

Then you (get) me some scent?

25 I see that you are putting your old henhouse in order. You (keep) hens?

26 I've just bought my tickets.

You (travel) by sea or air?

27 A lot of slates have just been left at your gate. You (repair) your roof?

e.g. You can have either. Which will you have?

You've missed the last train. What will you do now?

For other types of intention, however, it is usually safer to use one of the other future forms: be going to, the present continuous or the future continuous (which is considered the most polite form).

Put the verbs in brackets into one of the four forms. When more than one answer is possible, this will be noted in the key.

1 Why are you taking all that bread with you? You (feed) the swans?

2 You (let) your flat again next summer?

3 You (light) the fire for me, please? Here are the matches.

4 You (wear) your new hat tomorrow?

5 I'd like to read that book. You (lend) it to me?

Yes, of course.

6 Shop assistant: You (come) this way, please?

7 You (have) something more to eat?

Yes, please, I'd like another sandwich.

8 You (have) anything more to eat?

No, because I haven't any more money.

9 You (study) computer programming at college?

10 You (speak) to Tom at the meeting tomorrow, do you think?

11 You (turn) off the TV, please? No one is watching it.

12 You (take) your exam now or in December?

13 You (listen) in to the concert this evening?

14 You (help) me with this, please? I can't open it.

15 I'm going to Brussels next week in my own plane. You

(come) with me?

- 3 We will unite to resist oppression, and tyrants . . . not triumph over us. (We won't let them triumph.)
- 4 What . . . we do now? Wait.
- 5 You've been a good child, and when we get home you . . . have a sweet . . .
- 6 your father . . . hear of this. (I'll certainly tell him.)
- 7 . . . we go to the cinema? Yes, let's.
- 8 She . . . tell the same story over and over again. (Obstinate insistence.)
- 9 Club rule; Members . . . write the names of their guests in the book Provided.
- 10 The world . . . know how unjustly we have been treated! (We'll tell the world, etc.)
- 11 Where . . . I be in six years' time, I wonder?
- 12 He . . . not come here again. (He refuses.)
- 13 He . . . not come here again. (I won't let him come.)
- 14 . . . you come to tea with me tomorrow?
Thank you very much, I'd love to.
- 15 This kind of snake . . . not bite unless it is startled.
- 16 . . . you have a cigarette? No, thanks, I don't smoke.
- 17 He . . . play his radio very loudly, which annoys me very much. (Obstinate Insistence.)
- 18 By this time next year I . . . be earning my own living.
- 19 Who . . . take this letter to the post for me? I . . .
- 20 What . . . we do with all the food that's left over?
- 21 Do you know the way? No. Then I . . . show you.
- 22 Where . . . I put it? Put it behind the piano.
- 23 You . . . be astonished when you see this.

28 You (hold) my parcels, please, while I put up my umbrella?

29 You (go) to Madeira as usual this summer?

30 You kindly (explain) why you didn't do what I told you?

31 You (recognize) him, do you think?

32 I've chosen a school for my son.

You (send) him to a public school or to a State school?

33 Passenger to bus conductor: You (tell) me where to get off, please?

34 You (go) by car? If so, would you give my brother a lift?

35 You (type) all night again? Because if so I think I'll go to a hotel.

36 Passenger to driver: You (look) where you are going? We nearly ran over that man.

32 shall and will

shall is correct for the first person of the future tense (except when this tense is used to express intention), but in the affirmative and negative

Will is very often used instead, i. e. we can say, 'I/we will' and 'I/we won't' instead of 'I/we shall' and 'I/we shan't.' In the interrogative will should not be used to replace shall.

There are some rather old — fashioned or formal constructions where shall is used with the 2nd or 3rd persons. Here shall cannot be replaced by will. Such constructions are usually avoided but a few examples have been given below.

Use will or shall to fill the spaces in the following sentences. Sometimes either could be used.

1 When you are in bed I . . . be at work.

2 Who'll help me? I . . .

- 7 Stay here till the lights (turn) green.
- 8 When it (get) cold I'll light the fire.
- 9 The lift (not stop) until you press that button.
- 10 She'll have to behave better when she (go) to school.
- 11 When you look at yourself in the glass you (see) what I mean.
- 12 He (be) here before you go.
- 13 I (lend) you my cassette recorder whenever you want it.
- 14 He (wake) up when we turn the lights on.
- 15 He (ring) us up when he arrives in England?
- 16 He will wash up before he (go) to bed.
- 17 I won't come to London till the bus stritce (be) over.
- 18 I (give) the children their dinner before he (come) home.
- 19 They will be astonished when they (see) how slowly he works.
- 20 I'll pay you when I (get) my cheque.
- 21 I (go) on doing it until he tells me to stop.
- 22 I'll buy that house when I (have) enough money.
- 23 You (fall) rapidly through the air till your parachute opens.
- 24 We'll have to stay here till the tide (go) out.
- 25 When the National Anthem (begin) the audience will stand up.
- 26 When the fog (lift) we'll be able to see where we are.
- 27 The refrigerator (continue) to make that noise till we have it repaired.
- 28 As soon as the holidays begin this beach (become) very crowded.
- 29 The car (not move) till you take the brake off.

24 Yachts . . . go round the course, passing the marks in the correct order. (Extract from Yacht Racing Rules.)

25 When . . . you hear the result?

I . . . not hear for another week.

26 'I . . . not apologizes', she said, stamping her foot.

27 Will you be good children while I'm out? We . . .

28 She . . . never do anything you tell her.

29 I . . . not be here next week.

30 I . . . not have to do any cooking for a month. I'm going to an hotel.

31 'You . . . have everything you want, my child', said the foolish woman. (I'll give you everything you want.)

32 . . . you really lend me your car? I . . . be very careful of it.

33 . . . you stand quite still for a moment; please?

34 . . . I put more salt in the stew?

35 A dog . . . obey his owner but a cat . . . not.

36 I . . . know whether you are telling the truth or not.

33 Time clauses

The future tense is not used in time clauses, the simple present tense being used instead.

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (present or future).

1 When he (return) I'll give him the key.

2 He'll be ready as soon as you (be).

3 I'll stay in bed till the clock (strike) seven.

4 She will be delighted when she (hear) this.

5 When the laundry comes I (have) some clean handkerchiefs.

6 I shan't buy tomatoes till the price (come) down.

- 16 By the time that he leaves school his parents (spend) £6,000 on his education .
- 17 By the end of the term I (read) all twelve volumes.
- 18 When you come back I (finish) all the housework.
- 19 The police (hear) of the theft by this time.
- 20 We (drink) all that wine by the end of the year.
- 21 On the fourth of next month he (be) in prison for ten years.
- 22 When we reach Crewe we (do) half of the journey.
- 23 By the end of the month the new waitress (break) all the wine glasses .
- 24 If we don't hurry the sun (rise) before we reach the top.
- 25 I'm going to Hyde Park to hear the people making speeches. You'll be too late. By the time you get there they (finish) their speeches and everybody (go) home.
- 26 By midnight he (be) unconscious for forty-eight hours.
- 27 By the end of the month 5,000 people (see) this exhibition.
- 28 By next April I (pay) £3,000 in income tax.
- 29 I suppose that when I come back in ten years' time all these old houses (be) pulled down.
- 30 On 21 October they (be) married for twenty-five years.
- 31 After this performance I (see) Hamlet twenty-two times.
- 32 The strike leader said, 'By midnight 500 men (come) out on strike.'
- 33 At your present rate you (burn) all that coal by the end of the month .
- 34 The treasurer said, 'By the end of the year all our debts (be paid) off.'
- 35 Tourist: We've only got five hours in Rome; we are leaving

- 30 The alarm bell (go on) ringing till you press this button.
- 31 As soon as she (learn) to type I'll get her a job.
- 32 Look before you (leap). (proverb).
- 33 We (have) to stay on this desert island till we can repair our boat.
- 34 Don't count on a salary increase before you actually (get) it.
- 35 When winter (begin) the swallows will fly away to a warmer country.
- 36 We can't make any decision till he (arrive) here.

34 The future perfect tense

Put the verbs in brackets into the future perfect tense.

- 1 In a fortnight's time we (take) our exam.
- 2 I (finish) this book by tomorrow evening.
- 3 By this time tomorrow we (have) our injections.
- 4 By the end of next year I (be) here twenty—five years.
- 5 I'll still be here next summer but Tom (leave).
- 6 I (finish) this job in twenty minutes.
- 7 By next winter they (build) four houses in that field.
- 8 When we reach Valparaiso we (sail) all round the world.
- 9 At the rate he is going he (spend) all his money by the time he is twenty—one.
- 10 By this time next year I (save) £250.
- 11 By the time we get to the party everything (be) eaten.
- 12 The train (leave) before we reach the station.
- 13 If I continue with my diet I (lose) 10 kilos by the end of the month.
- 14 By the end of my university course I (attend) 1,200 lectures.
- 15 By the end of this week my illness (cost) me £100.

- 14 We'll have to stay up this tree till the bull (go) away.
- 15 He (not let) you out till you have finished your homework.
- 16 As soon as I hear from him I (let) you know.
- 17 My father will be furious when he (see) what you have done.
- 18 You (not hear) the sound of the explosion till after you have seen the flash.
- 19 These gates will remain shut until the train (pass).
- 20 When he (sell) all his newspapers he'll go home.
- 21 We can't have a fire here until we (sweep) the chimney.
- 22 You (get) a shock when you open that box.
- 23 When you are twenty-five your father (give) you a latchkey.
- 24 Don't jump out of the aeroplane until the pilot (say) 'Go!'
- 25 I can't leave the country till the police (return) my passport.
- 26 When a bottle of champagne (be) opened for twenty-four hours the wine is not fit to drink.
- 27 Hotel receptionist: When you (sign) the hotel register the porter will show you your room.
- 28 You (not know) how good oysters are till you have tasted one.
- 29 That road will not be safe till the floods (subside).
- 30 When everybody (leave) the park the park-keeper will lock the gates.
- 31 When we have seen the Chamber of Horrors we (have) a cup of tea.
- 32 When you (have) something to eat you'll feel better.
- 33 I (stay) in court till the jury returns.
- 34 You cannot become a member of this club until you (make) a parachute descent.

at six; but I'm sure that we (see) everything of importance by then.

36 Householder to Zoo: One of your elephants is in my garden eating my tomatoes.

Zoo official: The elephant keeper will be with you in half an hour.

Householder: Your elephant (eat) all my tomatoes by then.

35 Time clauses

The future perfect tense is not used in time clauses, the present perfect being used instead.

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense, using the future, present, or present perfect. Compare Nos. 1 to 5 with Nos. 1 to 5 in Exercise 34.

1 When we (take) our exam we'll have a holiday.

2 When I (finish) the book I'll lend it to you.

3 When we (have) our injections I expect we'll feel awful.

4 When I (be) here for a year I'll ask for a rise.

5 When Tom (go) I'll tell you a secret.

6 By the time he (get) back from his holiday the milkman will have left twenty-one bottles of milk outside his door.

7 Don't drive at more than 50 k. p. h. till your car (do) 4,000 kilometres.

8 When you (do) 4,000 kilometres you can drive it at 70 k. P.h.

9 When you open the safe you (see) a small black box.

10 When we (have) lunch we'll go for a walk.

11 When the bell rings I (take) the meat out of the oven.

12 I'll bolt all the doors before I (go) to bed.

13 When we (see) the cathedral we'll go to the museum.

- 22 If I lend you £10 when you (repay) me?
- 23 We'll have to move upstairs if the river (rise) any higher.
- 24 If he (work) hard today can he have a holiday tomorrow?
- 25 Ice (turn) to water if you heat it.
- 26 If the house (catch) fire we can get out by the fire escape.
- 27 If you (not like) this one I'll bring you another.
- 28 Unless you are more careful you (have) an accident.
- 29 Tell him to ring me up if you (see) him.
- 30 If I tell you a secret, you (promise) not to tell it to anyone else?
- 31 If you (not believe) what I say, ask your mother. 32 You (buy) the house if you like it?
- 33 If you will kindly sit down I (make) enquiries for you.
- 34 Unless I have a quiet room I (not be able) to do any work.
- 35 Unless you pay him regularly he (not work) for you at all.
- 36 Should you require anything else please (ring) the bell for the attendant.

37 Conditional sentences: type 2

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

- 1 If I had a typewriter I (type) it myself.
- 2 If I knew his address I (give) it to you.
- 3 He (look) a lot better if he shaved more often.
- 4 If you played for lower stakes you (not lose) so much.
- 5 If he worked more slowly he (not make) so many mistakes.
- 6 More tourists (come) to this country if it had a better climate.
- 7 I shouldn't drink that wine if I (be) you.
- 8 If I were sent to prison, you (visit) me?
- 9 If someone gave you a helicopter, what you (do) with it?

35 When the boa constrictor (eat) his prey he will become very lethargic.

36 As soon as everybody has gone to bed the mice (come) out of their holes.

36 Conditional sentences: type I

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1 If I see him I (give) him a lift.

2 The table will collapse if you (stand) on it.

3 If you eat all that you (be) ill.

4 If I find your passport I (telephone) you at once.

5 The police (arrest) him if they catch him.

6 If you read in bad light you (ruin) your eyes.

7 Someone (steal) your car if you leave it unlocked.

8 What will happen if my parachute (not open)?

9 If you mow the grass I (give) you 50p.

10 I (lend) you my pearls if you promise to take care of them.

11 If you (not go) away I'll send for the police.

12 I (be) very angry if your dog bites me again.

13 If he (be) late we'll go without him.

14 She will be absolutely furious if she (hear) about this.

15 If you put on the kettle I (make) the tea.

16 If you give my dog a bone he (bury) it at once.

17 If we leave the car here it (not be) in anybody's way.

18 He'll be late for the train if he (not start) at once.

19 If you come late they (not let) you in.

20 If you tell any more lies I (be) very angry indeed.

21 Unless you work very hard you (not be) successful.

wall a different colour.

33 I (not go) there if I were you.

34 If you knew that you had only six weeks more to live, how you (spend) those six weeks?

35 You wouldn't have so much trouble with your car if you (have) it serviced regularly.

36 I'd climb over the wall if there (not be) so much broken glass on top of it.

38 Conditional sentences: type 3

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1 If I had known that you were in hospital I (visit) you.

2 If the captain had been more careful his ship (not be) sunk.

3 If you (arrive) ten minutes earlier you would have got a seat.

4 You would have seen my garden at its best if you (be) here last week.

5 But for his quickness I (be) killed.

6 I shouldn't have believed it if I (not see) it with my own eyes.

7 If he had slipped he (fall) 500 metres.

8 If he had asked you, you (accept)?

9. (The burglars (not do) so much damage if you hadn't locked all the drawers .

10 If I (know) that you were coming I'd have baked a cake.

11 I (offer) to help him if I had realized that he was ill.

12 If you had left that wasp alone it (not sting) you!

13 If I (realize) what a bad driver you were I wouldn't have come with you .

14 If I had realized that the traffic lights were red I (stop).

15 But for the fog we (reach) our destination ages ago.

- 10 I (buy) shares in that company if I had some money.
- 11 If he (clean) his windscreen he'd be able to see where he was going.
- 12 If you drove your car into the river, you (be able) to get out?
- 13 Conversation would become impossible if everyone (say) exactly what he thought.
- 14 If I (win) a big prize in a lottery I'd give up my job.
- 15 What you (do) if a burglar came into your room at night?
- 16 I could tell you what this means if I (know) Greek.
- 17 If everyone gave £1 we (have) enough.
- 18 He might get fat if he (stop) smoking.
- 19 If he knew that it was dangerous he (not come).
- 20 If you saw somebody drowning, what you (do)?
- 21 I (be) ruined if I bought her everything she asked for.
- 22 If you slept under a mosquito net you (not be) stung so often.
- 23 I could get a job easily if I (have) a degree.
- 24 If she (do) her hair differently she might look quite nice.
- 25 If we had more rain our crops (grow) better.
- 26 The whole machine (fall) to pieces if you removed that screw.
- 27 I (keep) a horse if I could afford it.
- 28 I'd ask him to dinner more often if he (be) more amusing.
- 29 If you moved the bed out of your hall it (be) easier to get into the house.
- 30 I (offer) to help if I thought that I'd be any use.
- 31 What would you do if the lift (get) stuck between two floors?
- 32 It (make) a great difference to the room if you painted each

33 I (take) a taxi if I had realized that it was such a long way.

34 You (save) me a lot of trouble if you had told me where you were going.

35 They would have forced their way into the house if I (not call) for help.

36 If he had put out his pipe before putting it in his pocket he (not burn) a hole in his coat.

39 Conditional sentences: mixed types

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1 If you (find) a skeleton in the cellar don't mention it to anyone.

2 If you pass your examination we (have) a celebration.

3 What (happen) if I press this button?

4 I should have voted for her if I (have) a vote then.

5 If you go to Paris where you (stay)?

6 If someone offered to buy you one of those rings, which you (choose) ?

7 The aight may be cancelled if the fog (get) thick.

8 If the milkman (come) tell him to leave two pints.

9 Someone (sit) on your glasses if you leave them there.

10 You would play better bridge if you (not talk) so much.

11 What I (do) if I hear the burglar alarm?

12 If you (read) the instructions carefully you wouldn't have answered the wrong question.

13 I could repair the roof myself if I (have) a long ladder.

14 Unless they turn that radio off I (go) mad.

15 If you saw a Brontosaurus walking down Oxford Street what you (do)?

- 16 If you had told me that he never paid his debts I (not lend) him the money .
- 17 If you (not sneeze) he wouldn't have known that we were there.
- 18 If you (put) some mustard in the sandwiches they would have tasted better .
- 19 The hens (not get) into the house if you had shut the door.
- 20 If he had known that the river was dangerous he (not try) to swim across it.
- 21 If you (speak) more slowly he might have understood you.
- 22 If he had known the whole story he (not be) so angry.
- 23 I shouldn't have eaten it if I (know) that there was ginger in it.
- 24 If I (try) again I think that I would have succeeded.
- 25 You (not get) into trouble if you had obeyed my instructions.
- 26 If you hadn't been in such a hurry you (not put) sugar into the sauce instead of salt.
- 27 If I (be) ready when he called he would have taken me with him.
- 28 I (catch) the train quite easily if I hadn't been wearing tight new shoes.
- 29 If she had listened to my directions she (not turn) down the wrong street.
- 30 If you (look) at the engine for a moment you would have seen what was missing.
- 31 Rome (be captured) by her enemies if the geese hadn't cackled.
- 32 He would have been arrested if he (try) to leave the country.

Finish these sentences, taking care to use the correct tenses.

- 1 If he had taken my advice . . .
- 2 If you ate less . . .
- 3 We'll send for the doctor if . . .
- 4 If she practised more . . .
- 5 If there isn't enough wine in that bottle . . .
- 6 If you had checked the petrol before we started . . .
- 7 This clock wouldn't have run down if . . .
- 8 Try on the blue one if . . .
- 9 If these gates are locked . . .
- 10 If we leave before breakfast . . .
- 11 If the river rises any higher . . .
- 12 Her life might have been saved if . . .
- 13 If the volcano starts erupting . . .
- 14 The grass would look better if . . .
- 15 Unless it is a nice day . . .
- 16 If you don't put enough stamps on a letter, the person who gets it . . .
- 17 He would lend it to you if . . .
- 18 Unless this hotel gets another cook . . .
- 19 If the storm becomes worse . . .
- 20 If your uncle sees you . . .
- 21 If you tried to climb it without a guide . . .
- 22 If you didn't shake the camera so much, your photographs . . .
- 23 I'd have brought my coat . . .
- 24 If he cut his hair more often . . .
- 25 He would have given her diamonds if . . .

- 16 We'll have a long way to walk if we (run) out of petrol here.
- 17 If you shake that bottle of port it (not be) fit to drink.
- 18 I'll probably get lost unless he (come) with me.
- 19 You (not have) so many accidents if you drove more slowly.
- 20 If you (wear) a false beard nobody would have recognized you.
- 21 If she (leave) the fish there the cat will get it.
- 22 Unless they leave a lamp beside that hole in the road somebody (fall) into it.
- 23 You'll get pneumonia if you (not change) your wet clothes.
- 24 If I had known that you couldn't eat octopus I (not buy) it.
- 25 If they (hang) that picture lower people would be able to see it.
- 26 She (be able) to walk faster if her shoes hadn't such high heels.
- 27 I (bring) you some beer if I had known that you were thirsty.
- 28 If you had touched that electric cable you (be) electrocuted.
- 29 If the story hadn't been true the newspaper (not print) it.
- 30 I (not buy) things on the instalment system if I were you.
- 31 Dial 999 if you (want) Police, Ambulance, or Fire Brigade.
- 32 You (not be) any use to me unless you learn to type.
- 33 If anyone attacked me, my dog (jump) at his throat.
- 34 If he were in he (answer) the phone.
- 35 The ship would have run aground if the pilot (make) one mistake.
- 36 I shouldn't have taken your umbrella if I (know) that it was the only one you had.
- 40 Conditional sentences: mixed types

- 12 I couldn't (remember) his address.
- 13 You'll be able (do) it yourself when you are older.
- 14 Would you like (go) now or shall we (wait) till the end?
- 15 They won't let us (leave) the Customs shed till our luggage has been examined.
- 16 How dare you (open) my letters!
- 17 She persuaded him (wait) a little longer.
- 18 I used (smoke) forty cigarettes a day.
- 19 Will you help me (move) the bookcase?
- 20 He wouldn't let my baby (play) with his gold watch.
- 21 They refused (accept) the bribe.
- 22 He is expected (arrive) in a few days.
- 23 Please let me (know) your decision as soon as possible.
- 24 He made us (wait) for hours.
- 25 Could you (tell) me the time, please?
- 26 We must (send) him a telegram.
- 27 I let him (go) early as he wanted (meet) his wife.
- 28 Where would you like (have) lunch?
- 29 You can (leave) your dog with us if you don't (want) (take) him with you.
- 30 I'd like him (go) to a university but I can't (make) him (go).
- 31 We could (go) to a concert, unless you'd prefer (visit) a museum.
- 32 You seem (know) this area very well. yes, I used (live) here.
- 33 The kidnappers told the parents (not inform) the police, and the parents didn't dare (disobey).
- 34 Need I (come)? I'd much rather (stay) at home.

- 26 If you had asked his permission . . .
- 27 If the fire had been noticed earlier . . .
- 28 If you had any sense . . .
- 29 You would have been angry if . . .
- 30 If he had put the Howers into water at once . . .
- 31 I should have ordered more coal if . . .
- 32 If you leave the gate open . . .
- 33 You will have to go to the dentist if . . .
- 34 He would have been drowned if . . .
- 35 If I'd had a car . . .
- 36 If the telephone rings while I'm in my bath . . .

3 Gerund, infinitive and participles

41 Infinitive with or without to

Insert to where necessary before. the infinitives in brackets.

- 1 He made me (do) it all over again.
- 2 She can (sing) quite well.
- 3 He will be able (swim) very soon.
- 4 I used (live) in a caravan.
- 5 You ought (go) today. It may (rain) tomorrow.
- 6 You needn't (say) anything. Just nod your head and he will (understand).
- 7 I want (see) the house where our president was born.
- 8 He made her (repeat) the message.
- 9 May I . (use) your phone?
- 10 You needn't (ask) for permission; you can (use) it whenever you like.
- 11 If you want (get) there before dark you should (stan) at once.

- 6 Have you put the car in the garage? No, but I'm just going to put it there.
- 7 I want you two to apologize to each other. Well, I am willing to apologize if he apologizes first.
- 8 Did you reserve seats on the train? No, I tried to reserve them but they had all been booked already.
- 9 Did you answer the letter? No, I intended to answer it but I'm afraid I forgot.
- 10 Why didn't you hit him? I was afraid to hit him.
- 11 I'd love to spend a night in a haunted room. I'd hate to spend a night in a haunted room.
- 12 Why didn't you ask your father for the money? I didn't like to ask him.
- 13 Did you get a chance to fly the aeroplane yourself? No, I wanted to fly it but the pilot wouldn't let me.
- 14 Why doesn't he punish his boys when they disobey him? He often threatens to punish them but he never actually does so.
- 15 Why didn't he repair the car himself? He wasn't able to repair it.
- 16 I used to drink whisky with my meals. I used to drink whisky with my meals also but I don't now.
- 17 Did you buy sausages? No, I meant to buy them but I forgot.
- 18 Why doesn't he try again? He doesn't want to try again.
- 19 You should visit the Prado when you are in Madrid. Yes, I intend to visit it.
- 20 Why doesn't he play games? His mother doesn't want him to play games.
- 21 You ought to stop work now. Yes, I am just going to stop.

30 I saw the plane (crash) into the hill and (burst) into flames.

31 There is nothing (do) but (wait) till somebody comes (let) us out.

32 He heard a cock (crow) in a neighbouring village.

33 You may as well (tell) us the truth. It will (be) easy (check) your story.

34 The American said he had seen nine presidents (come) and (go). He must (be) a very old man.

35 It is up to you (learn) the laws of your own country.

36 Would you rather (be) more stupid than you look or (look) more stupid than you are? ..

43 Infinitive represented by to

In each of the following pairs of sentences an infinitive used in the first sentence is repeated in the second. Read the sentences, expressing this second infinitive by to only. Note that where the second infinitive has an object, this word/phrase must be omitted. e. g. Why didn't you tell me the truth the first time? I meant to tell you the truth but I was too frightened. I meant to but I was too frightened.

1 Did you visit the Pyramids? No, I wanted to visit them but there wasn't time.

2 Why do you wear dark glasses? I have to wear them; I have weak eyes.

3 Do you smoke? No, I used to smoke but I don't now.

4 Would you like to go to the theatre tonight? Yes, I'd love to go to the theatre.

5 Why didn't you pay the bill for him? I offered to pay it but he refused.

44 Indirect commands expressed by object + infinitive

Indirect commands are normally expressed by tell, order, ask, beg, warn, advise etc., with the person addressed and the infinitive. Change the following direct commands into indirect commands using this construction. Remember that the person addressed is often not mentioned in a direct command,

e. g. He said, 'Go away',
but must be mentioned in an indirect command,
e. g. He told me (Tom/us/them, etc) to go away.

- 1 'Put some coal on the fire,' he said to her.
- 2 'Shut the door, Tom,' she said.
- 3 'Lend me your pen for a moment,' I said to Mary.
- 4 'Don't read in bad light, boys,' I said.
- 5 'Don't believe everything you hear,' he advised me.
- 6 'Please fill up this form,' the secretary said.
- 7 'Don't hurry,' I called to them.
- 8 'Don't touch that switch, Mary,' I said.
- 9 'Put your hands up,' the raiders told the bank clerk.
- 10 'Please do as I say,' he begged me.
- 11 'Help your mother, Peter,' Mr Pitt said.
- 12 'Don't make too much noise, children,' he said.
- 13 'Do whatever you like,' she said to us.
- 14 'Don't miss your train,' she warned them.
- 15 'Read it before you sign it,' he said to his clients.
- 16 'Sing it again,' he asked her.
- 17 'Brush your hair, Roben,' his mother said.
- 18 'Buy a new car,' I advised him.

- 22 Why do some jockeys carry extra weights? They are obliged to carry them by the regulations.
- 23 Did he help you? No, I asked him to help me but he said he hadn't time.
- 24 You should have thanked her before you left. I meant to thank her but when I was going I couldn't find her anywhere.
- 25 Why did she put parsley in the soup? I told her to put it in.
- 26 Why didn't he report it to the police? He was afraid to report it. He didn't think they'd believe him.
- 27 Why did he drive so fast? He had to drive fast; otherwise he'd have missed his train.
- 28 You used to like rice pudding. Yes, I know I used to like it but I don't now.
- 29 Why didn't you buy the car? I was advised not to buy it.
- 30 I hope the children won't go near the water. I warned them not to go near it.
- 31 Why are we trying to get planning permission? We have to get planning permission. It is the law.
- 32 I meant to work hard. I know you meant to work hard but you didn't.
- 33 Do the boys tidy their own rooms? They are supposed to tidy them but they don't always.
- 34 Why didn't he call the police? He wasn't able to call them. His telephone line had been cut.
- 35 Why did you move your car? The policeman told me to move it.
- 36 Why did you bring your mother — in — law? I particularly asked you not to bring her.

- 1 'Come down at once,' my father said.
- 2 'Be patient,' the Prime Minister said.
- 3 'Buy the large tin,' the shopkeeper said.
- 4 'Don't bathe here,' I said.
- 5 'Turn right at the next cross-roads,' the policeman said.
- 6 'Go to the other counter,' the clerk said.
- 7 'Have your passports ready,' a voice said.
- 8 'Stand at ease,' the sergeant said.
- 9 'Translate the first twenty lines,' the teacher said.
- 10 'Listen to the birds,' I said.
- 11 'Don't believe everything she tells you,' he said.
- 12 'Keep moving,' the policeman said.
- 13 'Look everywhere,' he said.
- 14 'Never lend money to people you don't know,' he said to his son.
- 15 'Put your luggage on the scales, please,' the clerk said.
- 16 'Take a deep breath,' the doctor said.
- 17 'Don't spend it all at once,' his employer said.
- 18 'Tell me all about it,' she said.
- 19 'Look around you,' I said.
- 20 'Give me ten pence,' the child said.
- 21 'Open your suitcases,' the Customs officer said.
- 22 'Don't waste time,' my mother always said.
- 23 'Please pass the salt,' he said.
- 24 'Dismount,' the riding instructor said.
- 25 'Put some crumbs on the window-sill for the birds,' she said.

- 19 'Don't drive too fast,' she begged him.
- 20 'Don't forget to listen to the first programme in the new series at eight o'clock,' the announcer said to his listeners.
- 21 'Come to the cinema with me,' he asked her.
- 22 'Cook it in butter,' I advised her.
- 23 'Don't touch the gates, madam,' said the lift operator.
- 24 'Don't argue with me,' the teacher said to the boy.
- 25 'Pull as hard as you can,' he said to him.
- 26 'Send for the Fire Brigade,' the manager said to the porter.
- 27 'Don't lend her anything,' he advised us.
- 28 'Make a list of what you want,' she told us.
- 29 'Look at the paper,' he said to her.
- 30 'Stand clear of the doors,' a voice warned the people on the platform.
- 31 'See if you can find any eggs,' my aunt said to me.
- 32 'Don't go alone,' I warned her.
- 33 'Pay at the cash desk,' the shop assistant said to the customer.
- 34 'Don't point, children,' she said.
- 35 'Put the ladder against the wall,' I said to the man.
- 36 'Think well before you answer,' the detective warned her.

45 Indirect commands expressed by object + infinitive

In the following exercise, the verb said has been used throughout, but the student should use the verbs mentioned in the note to the previous exercise and should also supply a suitable indirect object.

- 11 He is very ill. He can't eat anything.
- 12 Our new car is very wide. It won't get through those gates.
- 13 The door wasn't strong. We couldn't dance on it. (Omit it)
- 14 I was terrified. I couldn't move.
- 15 The bull isn't big. He couldn't harm you.
- 16 The coffee isn't strong. It won't keep us awake.
- 17 The river is deep. We can't wade it. (Omit it)
- 18 I am quite old. I could be your father.
- 19 I am very rich. I could buy your whole hotel.
- 20 Would you be very good and forward my letters while I am away?
- 21 The ice is quite thick. We can't walk on it. (Omit it)
- 22 He was very drunk. He couldn't answer my question.
- 23 It is very cold. We can't have breakfast in the garden.
- 24 He was extremely rash. He set off up the mountain in a thick fog.
- 25 We aren't very high. We can't see the summit.
- 26 You aren't very old. You can't understand these things.
- 27 He was very snobbish. He wouldn't talk to any of us.
- 28 The package is very thick. I can't push it through the letter-box. (Omit it)
- 29 He was very curious. He opened the letter.
- 30 The dog was impatient. He wouldn't remain at the rathole.
- 31 My rats are very clever. They can't be caught in traps.
- 32 It was very dark. We couldn't see the signpost.
- 33 It was very hot. You could fry an egg on the pavement.
- 34 The oranges were very bitter. We couldn't eat them. (Omit them)

- 26 'Come in out of the rain,' I said.
- 27 'Don't put your hands near the bars,' the zoo keeper said.
- 28 'Don't lean your bicycle against my window,' the grocer said.
- 29 'Cross the line by the footbridge,' the porter said.
- 30 'Don't shout into the telephone,' my mother said.
- 31 'Meet me here at the same time tomorrow,' he said.
- 32 'Don't decide in a hurry. Think it over,' I said.
- 33 'Please help me to mend it,' she said.
- 34 'Open a tin of soup,' I said.
- 35 'Please mend the puncture,' the driver said.
- 36 'Don't put the wine near the fire,' I said.
- 46 too/enough/so . . . as with infinitive**

Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using too/enough with infinitive:

- e.g. It is very cold. We can't go out.
It is too cold for us to go out.
- He is strong. He can carry it.
He is strong enough to carry it.
- 1 You are very young. You can't have a front-door key.
 - 2 It is very cold. We can't bathe.
 - 3 Would you be very kind and answer this letter by return?
 - 4 I am rather old. I can't wear that kind of hat.
 - 5 The rope wasn't strong. It couldn't support the two men.
 - 6 He hadn't much money. He couldn't live on it. (Omit it)
 - 7 He was furious. He couldn't speak.
 - 8 The fire isn't very hot. It won't boil a kettle.
 - 9 Tom was very foolish. He told lies to the police.
 - 10 You are quite thin. You could slip between the bars.

- 15 It is expected that he will broadcast a statement tonight. (He is expected . . .)
- 16 I want a kitchen where (= in which) I can cook.
- 17 He reached the station exhausted and was very disappointed when he learnt that the train had just left.
- 18 Haven't you anything with which you could open it?
- 19 It seems that the crime has been committed by a left-handed man. (The crime seems . . . Use perfect infinitive passive)
- 20 Is it likely that he will arrive before six? (Is he . . .)
- 21 I was on the point of leaving the house when the phone rang.
- 22 This is the plan; someone will meet you at the station . . . (You . . . (be met) at the station)
- 23 She is anxious that they should have every possible advantage.
- 24 It is said that he was a brilliant scientist. (He is said . . .)
- 25 The strikers decided that the strike should continue.
- 26 Would you be very kind and translate this for me?
- 27 It is advisable that we should leave the house separately.
- 28 You signed the document without reading it, which is a very stupid thing to do. (It was stupid . . .)
- 29 It is said that she has a frightful temper. (She . . .)
- 30 He was the first man who swam the Channel.
- 31 They believe that he is honest. (He . . .)
- 32 It appears that he was killed with a blunt instrument. (He appears . . . Use passive infinitive)
- 33 He was the only one who realized the danger.
- 34 It is said that the earth was originally part of the sun. (The earth . . .)

35 Would you be very kind and turn down the gas fire a little?

36 It was rather cloudy. We couldn't see the eclipse properly.

47 Various infinitive constructions

Replace the group of words in italics by an infinitive or an infinitive construction.

e.g. It is important that he should understand this.

It is important for him to understand this.

He was the first man who arrived.

He was the first man to arrive.

1 The captain was the last man who left the ship.

2 He got to the top and was very disappointed when he found that someone else had reached it first.

3 The committee have decided to send you to Paris. (You (go) to Paris, omit the committee have decided to send)

4 Would you be very kind and lend me your umbrella?

5 There are a lot of sheets that need mending.

6 I was astonished when I heard that he had left the country.

7 It is better that he should hear it from you.

8 I was rude to him, which was stupid. (It was stupid)

9 If he had another child with whom he could play he would be happier.

10 It is necessary that everyone should know the truth.

11 There was no place where we could sit.

12 He put his hand into his pocket and was astonished when he found that his wallet wasn't there.

13 He rushed into the burning house, which was very brave of him. (It was very brave)

14 I can't go to the party; I have nothing that I can wear.

- 12 The farmer put a scarecrow up in the field. He wanted to frighten the birds.
- 13 I took off my shoes. I didn't want to make any noise.
- 14 Before the carpenter came she covered the floor with polythene sheeting. She wanted to protect the carpet.
- 15 The boys are collecting sticks. They intend to put them on the fire. (Omit them)
- 16 He was playing very softly. He didn't want to disturb anyone.
- 17 I am sending him to the U. S. A. I want him to study electronics there.
- 18 I sent him out of the room. I wanted to discuss his progress with his headmaster.
- 19 He fixed a metal ladder to the wall below his window. He wanted to be able to escape if there was a fire.
- 20 He changed his address constantly. He wanted to elude the police.
- 21 The police have barricaded the main streets. They want to prevent the demonstrators from marching through the town.
- 22 They evacuated everybody from the danger zone. They wanted to reduce the risk.
- 23 I am learning Greek. I wish to read Homer.
- 24 He sent his children to his sister's house. He wanted them to watch the television programme.
- 25 He sent his children to their aunt's house. He wanted some peace.
- 26 The town council has forbidden coal fires. They are trying to

35 He took out his spare wheel and was very disappointed when he discovered that that tyre was also punctured.

36 It is said that the murderer is hiding in the woods near your house.

48 Infinitive used to express purpose

Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using so as/in order where necessary.

e. g. He sent me to Spain. He wanted me to learn Spanish.

He sent me to Spain to learn Spanish.

He turned out the light. He didn't want to waste electricity.

He turned out the light so as not to waste electricity.

1 I am buying paint. I want to paint my hall door.

2 He tied a knot in his handkerchief. He hoped that this would remind him to meet the train.

3 He opened the lions' cage. He intended to feed the lions.

4 He left his rifle outside. He didn't want to frighten his wife.

5 He has a box. He plans to put his savings in it. (Omit it)

6 We had no cups but he gave us coconut shells. He said we could drink out of them. (Omit them)

7 He rushed into the burning house. He wanted to save the child.

8 He read only for short periods each day. He didn't want to strain his eyes.

9 They got up very early. They wanted to get to the top of the hill before sunrise.

10 He rang the bell. He wanted to tell us that dinner was ready.

11 We must keep our gloves on. We don't want to get frost-bitten.

(iii) An in case clause is useful when we mention the possible future action we are taking precautions against; e.g. Don't let him play with scissors; he may cut himself. Don't let him play with scissors in case he cuts himself.

Sometimes an in case clause can be replaced by a negative purpose clause.

1 He killed the men who helped him to bury the treasure. He wanted nobody but himself to know where it was.

2 Put the cork back. Someone may knock the bottle over.

3 The airfield authorities have put arc lights over the damaged run away. They want repair work to continue day and night.

4 The girl packed the vase in polyester foam. She didn't want it to get broken in the post.

5 He wore a false beard. He didn't want anyone to recognize him.

6 She built a high wall round her garden. She didn't want her fruit to be stolen.

7 They talked in whispers. They didn't want me to overhear them.

8 You ought to take some serum with you. You may get bitten by a snake.

9 Aeroplanes carry parachutes. The crew can escape in case of fire.

10 I am insuring my life. I want my children to have something to live on if I am killed.

11 Please shut the gate. I don't want the cows to get out of the field.

keep the air clean.

27 They employed a detective. They wanted to learn what I did in the evenings.

28 I am saving up. I want to buy a helicopter.

29 He coughed. He wanted to warn them that he was coming.

30 You should take your holidays in June. In this way you would avoid the rush.

31 I keep my hens in a field surrounded by wire netting. I want to protect them against the foxes.

32 I am learning skiing at an indoor school. I want to be able to ski when I get to Switzerland.

33 The workmen left red lights near the hole. They wanted to warn motorists.

34 He invented a wife and six children. By this trick he hoped to avoid paying income tax.

35 Some women tint their hair when it goes grey. They want to look younger.

36 He didn't tell her he was going in the rocket. He didn't want to alarm her.

49 Clauses and phrases of purpose

The most useful construction here is (i) a purpose clause introduced by so that. But (ii) this can sometimes be replaced by an infinitive phrase consisting of prevent/avoid + gerund or allow/enable/let/make etc. + infinitive, e.g. The two sentences: He rumpled the bedclothes; he wanted to make me think he had slept in the bed could be combined: He rumpled the bed clothes so that I would/should think he had slept etc. or: He rumpled the bed clothes to make me think he had slept etc.

- 7 Take a torch with you. It may be dark before you get back.
- 8 The manufacturers have made the taps of their new gas cooker very stiff. They don't want young children to be able to turn them on.
- 29 Don't let the baby play with my glasses. He may break them.
- 30 The debate on education has been postponed. The government want to discuss the latest crisis.
- 31 If someone knocks at the door at night don't open it. It may be the escaped convict.
- 32 The policeman stopped the traffic every few minutes. He wanted the pedestrians to be able to cross the road.
- 33 He had a telephone installed in his car. He wanted his secretary to be able to contact him whenever necessary.
- 34 Never let children play with matches. They may set themselves on fire.
- 35 As he went through the forest Bill marked the trees. He wanted the rest of the party to know which way he had gone.
- 36 Turn down the oven. We don't want the meat to burn while we are out.

50 Perfect infinitive used with auxiliary verbs

Use the perfect infinitive of the verb in italics with the appropriate auxiliary verb. Phrases underlined should not be repeated but their meaning should be expressed by the auxiliary + **perfect infinitive**.

infinitive.

while we were out.

12 He
call to
13 I
bird
14

- phoned from a public call — box. I
 traced to his own address. I don't want the
 putting nets over my strawberry plants. I don't want the
 eat all the strawberries. There may be a heavy fall of
 keep a spade in the house. We didn't want anyone to
 the night. We didn't want anyone to
 e put bars on the lower windows. We didn't want anyone to
 bin. You may have a punc-
 You should carry a jack in your car. You may have a punc-
 are. We wanted the snow to
 17 We built the roof with a steep slope. We wanted the snow to
 slide off easily . . . The government
 18 The notices are written in several languages. The government
 want everyone to understand them. I want anyone who finds
 19 I put my address on my dog's collar. I want anyone who finds
 him to know where he comes from.
 20 She tied a bell round her cat's neck. She wanted the birds to
 know when he was approaching.
 21 Bring your gun with you. We may be attacked.
 22 I have put wire over my chimney—pots. I don't want birds to
 build nests in them.
 23 Write your name in the book. He may forget who lent it to
 him.
 24 He chained up the lioness at night. He didn't want her to
 frighten anyone . . . The chimney may catch fire.
 25 Don't put on any more coal. The chimney may catch fire.
 26 The burglar cut the telephone wires. He didn't want me to
 call the police .

- 17 The president (unveil) the statue, but he is ill so his wife is doing it instead.
- 18 The plane is late; I wonder what has happened? Possibly it was delayed by fog.
- 19 I have never met him. You (meet) him; he lives next door to you.
- 20 I (do) it. (It was my duty to do it, but I didn't.)
- 21 He (not catch) the 9. 20 train because he didn't leave home till 9. 25.
- 22 I opened it, which was unnecessary.
- 23 The police were here while we were out. Someone (betray) us.
- 24 I drove at 80 miles an hour, which was wrong.
- 25 When I was your age I (climb) that mountain, (but I didn't).
- 26 If a policeman had seen me climbing through your window he (ask) me what I was doing.
- 27 He said that censorship of news was ridiculous and it (abolish) years ago. (passive verb)
- 28 You boiled so many eggs; but there are only four of us.
- 29 She (play) the chief part in the film, but she quarrelled with the director, so he engaged someone else.
- 30 This poem (be) written by Keats, but I am not certain.
- 31 He (take) off his hat in the theatre, (but he didn't).
- 32 People used to walk twenty miles to do their shopping. They (have) a lot of energy in those days.
- 33 One day he went for a walk up a mountain and never came back. He (fall) over a precipice.
- 34 I just pressed lightly on the pane and my hand went through.

- 1 I realized that my house was on fire.
That (be) a terrible moment.
- 2 I saw a ghost last night.
You (not see) a ghost; there aren't any ghosts. You (dream) it.
- 3 It is possible that a child broke the window.
4 you carried it yourself, which was not necessary.
- 5 I've had a toothache for two days.
You (go) to the dentist when it started.
- 6 There (be) motor-cycle races on the sands but as it is so wet
they have been cancelled.
- 7 As I was standing in the hall your dog bit me. It (not be) my
dog; he was with me all day. It (be) my brother's dog.
- 8 I feel terribly ill today. You (not eat) those mushrooms yester-
day. Mushrooms don't agree with you.
- 9 I wonder why he didn't answer?
Possibly he didn't understand the question.
- 10 I gave him a tip, which was not necessary.
- 11 The prisoner (escape) this way, for here are his footprints.
- 12 You lied to him, which was wrong.
- 13 I didn't recognize the voice at the other end of the line. It
(be) my elder sister; she is often at home at that time. It (not
be) my youngest sister as she is abroad.
- 14 Someone (cook) a meal here lately; the stove is still hot.
- 15 I've brought my own sandwiches.
You (not bring) them. I have enough for two.
- 16 The burglar went straight to the safe although it was hidden
behind a picture.
Someone (tell) him where it was.

- (not be) Tom; he doesn't know it.
- 13 You bought 80wers b—but we have plenty in the garden.
- 14 After two years of his teaching she knew absolutely nothing.
He (not be) a good teacher.
- 15 My sister has just come back from abroad. She (seem)
(enjoy) her trip very much.
- 16 Life (be) very uncomfortable in the Stone Age.
- 17 You (stand) still when you were being photographed, (but
you didn't).
- 18 I (go) to a foreign university but the war prevented it.
- 19 I (like) (photograph) it but I had no more film.
- 20 There (be) a bad accident here. Look at all the broken glass.
- 21 It is possible that prehistoris vave drawings were connected
with religion .
- 22 I have been driving for 20 years. You (not drive) for 20 years.
You are only 30 now.
- 23 It (take) years to dig the Suez Canal.
- 24 He walked past me without speaking. He (not recognlze) you.
He is very short-sighted.
- 25 I (like) (go) to the match but the tickets were all sold.
- 26 He says he saw you at the theatre yesterday. He (not see) me.
I wasn't there.
- 27 This picture may be a fake; on the other hand it (be) painted
by one of the Dutch masters.
- 28 It is possible that the fire in the ship was started by a bomb.
- 29 She walked 300 miles, carrying her child. She (have) great
courage.
- 30 It is possible that he (tead) it in the papers. He (not read) it.

The glass (be) very thin.
35 You translated it into French, which wasn't necessary.
36 You looked at the new moon through glass. It is most unlucky.

51 Perfect infinitive used with auxiliaries and some other verbs

Instructions: as for Exercise 50, but where two verbs in italics are placed side by side, put the second verb into the perfect infinitive and the first into an appropriate tense.

e.g. This palace (say) (build) in three years.

This palace is said to have been built in three years.

1 She (marry) my brother but she was killed in a plane crash a month before the wedding date.

2 You repeated it, which was unnecessary.

3 There (seem) (be) a fight here. Everything is smashed to bits.

4 We (set) out today, but the weather is so bad that we decided to postpone our stay till tomorrow.

5 I thought they were mushrooms. You (not eat) them unless you were sure. They (be) poisonous.

6 He learnt the language in six months. He (work) very hard.

7 I brought my umbrella, which was unnecessary.

8 I (like) (bathe) but there wasn't time.

9 I've forgotten the address. I (write) it down (but I didn't).

10 If I'd known your house was so cold I (not come).

11 Why did you put pepper in it? But I didn't. Then it (be) Mary. She puts pepper in everything.

12 Who gave you my address? I don't remember. It (be) Tom. It

- 14 We are looking forward to (read) your new book.
- 15 They escaped by (slide) down ropes made of blankets.
- 16 They don't allow (smoke) in here.
- 17 He is thinking of (leave) his job and (go) to America.
- 18 After (read) this article you will give up (smoke).
- 19 If you put your money into that business you risk (lose) every penny.
- 20 Imagine (live) with someone who never stops (talk)!
- 21 Is there anything here worth (buy)?
- 22 He was accused of (steal) official documents and (sell) them.
- 23 You'd better consult your lawyer before (decide) to buy the property.
- 24 I don't enjoy (go) to the dentist.
- 25 Would you mind (put) your pet snake somewhere else?
- 26 The hostages were rescued without a shot (be) fired.
- 27 By (work) day and night he succeeded in (finish) the job in time.
- 28 He has a scheme for (make) grass grow in winter.
- 29 I don't feel like (work); what about (go) to a disco instead?
- 30 Would you mind (write) your name and address on the back of the cheque?
- 31 If a thing is worth (do) at all it is worth (do) well. (proverb)
- 32 I hate (borrow) money.
- 33 He was furious at (be) mistaken for an escaped convict.
- 34 After (talk) for ten minutes I succeeded in (convince) him that there was no danger.
- 35 I remember (read) a review of that book and (think) I'd like

He can't read. Someone (tell) him.

31 I told them to meet me under the clock but they didn't turn up. Perhaps they were waiting under the wrong clock. There are two in the station.

32 He told me his name was Johnson. You (mishear) him. His name is Jones.

33 I said that I couldn't find my pen and he said that perhaps somebody had borrowed it.

34 I (like) (ask) a question but I was so far back that I didn't think I'd be heard.

35 There (be) a fort here at one time. You can see where the foundations were.

36 The dinosaur (be said) (be) rather a stupid animal.

52 The gerund

Put the verbs in brackets into the gerund.

1 He gave up (gamble).

2 Try to avoid (make) him angry.

3 Stop (argue) and start (work).

4 The children prefer (watch) TV to (read).

5 I am against (make) any complaints.

6 It's no use (cry) over spilt milk. (proverb)

7 I suggest (hold) another meeting next week.

8 He finished (speak) and sat down.

9 He was fined for (drive) without lights.

10 It is difficult to get used to (eat) with chopsticks.

11 If you can't turn the key try (put) some oil in the lock.

12 He lost no time in (get) down to work.

13 You can't make an omelette without (break) eggs. (proverb)

(persuade) him (agree) with your proposal. 29 Your windows need (clean); would you like me (do) them for you? 30 Would you mind (shut) the window? I hate (sit) in a draught. 31 I can't help (sneeze); I caught a cold yesterday from (sit) in a draught. 32 Do stop (talk); I am trying (finish) a letter. 33 His doctor advised him (give up) (smoke). 34 My watch keeps (stop). That's because you keep (forget) (wind) it. 35 Without (realize) it, he hindered us instead of (help) us. 36 People used (make) fire by (rub) two sticks together.

54 Gerund and infinitive

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

- 1 He hates (answer) the phone, and very often just lets it (ring).
- 2 If you go on (let) your dog (chase) cars he'll end by (be) run over.
- 3 I prefer (drive) to (be driven).
- 4 I advise you (start) (look) for a fiat at once.
- 5 Would you mind (lend) me ten pence? I want (make) a phone call.
- 6 (Lie) on this beach is much more pleasant than (sit) in the office.
- 7 She likes her children (go) to a dentist every six months.
- 8 By (neglect) (take) ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew.
- 9 An instructor is coming (show) us how (use) the aqualung.
- 10 I have no intention of (go) to that film; I couldn't bear (see) my favourite actress in such a dreadful part.
- 11 I suggest (telephone) the hospitals before (ask) the police (look) for him.
- 12 After (hear) the conditions I decided (not enter) for the competition.
- 13 Some people seem (have) a passion for (write) to the newspapers.
- 14 He expects me (answer) by return but I have no intention of (reply) at all.
- 15 I tried (pacify) him but he refused (be pacified)

to get it.

36 As a result of (listen) at keyholes he learnt many facts which he had no hesitation in (use) to his own advantage.

53 Gerund and infinitive

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form (gerund or infinitive).

- 1 I am looking forward to (see) you.
- 2 He dreads (have) to retire.
- 3 I arranged (meet) them here.
- 4 He urged us (work) faster.
- 5 I wish (see) the manager.
- 6 It's no use (wait).
- 7 He warned her (not touch) the wire.
- 8 Don't forget (lock) the door before (go) to bed.
- 9 My mother told me (not speak) to anyone about it.
- 10 I can't understand her (behave) like that.
- 11 He tried (explain) but she refused (listen).
- 12 At dinner she annoyed me by (smoke) between the courses.
- 13 You are expected (know) the safety regulations of the college.
- 14 He decided (disguise) himself by (dress) as a woman.
- 15 I am prepared (wait) here all night if necessary.
- 16 Would you mind (show) me how (work) the lift?
- 17 After (walk) for three hours we stopped to let the others (catch up) with us.
- 18 I am beginning (understand) what you mean.
- 19 He was fined for (exceed) the speed limit.
- 20 The boys like (play) games but hate (do) lessons.
- 21 I regret (inform) you that your application has been refused.
- 22 I couldn't help (overhear) what you said.
- 23 Mrs Jones: I don't allow (smoke) in my drawing-room. Mrs Smith: I don't allow my family (smoke) at all.
- 24 He surprised us all by (go) away without (say) 'Good-bye'.
- 25 Please go on (write); I don't mind (wait).
- 26 He wore dark glasses (avoid) (be) recognized.
- 27 Before (give) evidence you must swear (speak) the truth.
- 28 I tried

daylight by (look) into a cat's eyes. 36 I'd hate (be) beside a volcano when it started (erupt).

55 Gerund and infinitive

After like it is sometimes possible to use either gerund or infinitive, but there tends to be a slight difference in implication. like + gerund a usually means 'enjoy'; b usually implies that the action is/was performed; e. g. I like skating = I enjoy skating (and do skate). like + infinitive a has more the meaning of 'approve of', 'like the idea or habit'; b in the affirmative gives no indication as to whether the action is performed or not and in the negative implies that it is not performed. e. g. I didn't like saying it usually means 'I said it, unwillingly', but I didn't like to say it usually means 'I didn't say it' (because it didn't seem right or sensible).

The distinction, however, is not rigid. The above notes are, therefore, only guides which may safely be followed. Put the verbs in brackets into gerund or infinitive.

- 1 I used (ride) a lot but I haven't had a chance (do) any since (come) here. I ride sometimes. Would you like (come) with me next time?
- 2 Most people prefer (spend) money to (earn) it.
- 3 I resented (be) unjustly accused and asked him (apologize).
- 4 It isn't good for children (eat) too many sweets.
- 5 I didn't feel like (work) so I suggested (spend) the day in the garden.
- 6 Why do you keep (look) back? Are you afraid of (be) followed?
- 7 Do you remember (post) the letter? Yes, I remember quite clearly; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate.
- 8 Did you remember (lock) the door? No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now.
- 9 You still have a lot (learn) if you'll forgive my (say) so.

and went on (grumble). 16 By (offer) enormous wages he is persuading men (leave) their present jobs and (work) for him. 17 He postponed (make) a decision till it was too late (do) anything. 18 Imagine (have) (get up) at five a. m. every day! 19 Try (forget) it; it isn't worth (worry) about. 20 There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything (help) the people who have (stay) there. 21 The horse won't be well enough (run) in tomorrow's race. He doesn't seem (have recovered) from his long journey. 22 At first I enjoyed (listen) to him but after a while I got tired of (hear) the same story again and again. 23 It is usually easier (learn) a subject by (read) books than by (listen) to lectures. 24 It wouldn't be safe (start) down now; we'll have (wait) till the mist clears. 25 After (discuss) the matter for an hour the committee adjourned without (have reached) any decision. 26 It's not much use (have) a bicycle if you don't know how (ride) it. 27 He didn't dare (leave) the house because he was afraid of (meet) someone who might (recognize) him. 28 I distinctly remember (pay) him. I gave him £2. 29 Did you remember (give) him the key of the safe? No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now. 30 Please forgive me for (interrupt) you but would you mind (repeat) that last sentence? 31 I know my hair wants (cut) but I never have time (go) to the hairdresser's. 32 He made a lot of money by (buy) tickets in advance and (sell) them for twice the price on the day of the match. 33 She rushed out of the room without (give) me a chance (explain). 34 He keeps (ask) me the time and I keep (tell) him (buy) himself a watch. 35 He has a theory that it is possible (tell) the time in

but somehow I succeeded in (annoy) them all. 30 She claimed (be able) (tell) the future by (gaze) into her crystal ball. 31 He never thinks of (get) out of your way; he expects you (walk) round him. 32 You don't need (ask) his permission every time you want (leave) the room. 33 The police accused him of (set) fire to the building but he denied (have been) in the area on the night of the fire. 34 I left my door open. Why didn't you walk in? I didn't like (go) in when you weren't there. 35 It's much better (go) to a hairdresser than (try) (save) time by (cut) your own hair. 36 I'd rather (earn) my living by (scrub) floors than (make) money by (blackmail) people.

56 Infinitive, gerund, and present participle

This exercise includes examples of both ing forms, the gerund and the present participle. Either present participle or infinitive without to can be used after verbs of the senses. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form. When more than one form is possible it will be noted in the key.

- 1 When the painter felt the ladder (begin) (slip) he grabbed the gutter (save) himself from (fall).
- 2 The snow kept (fall) and the workmen grew tired of (try) (keep) the roads clear.
- 3 He offered (lend) me the money. I didn't like (take) it but I had no alternative.
- 4 What was in the letter? I don't know. I didn't like (open) it as it wasn't addressed to me.
- 5 Do you remember (hear) the bombs (drop)? No, in the last war I was too young (realize) what was happening.
- 6 Did you remember (book) seats for the theatre tomorrow? Yes, I have the tickets here. Would you like (keep) them? I am inclined (lose) theatre tickets.
- 7 Try (avoid) (be) late. He hates (be) kept (wait).
- 8 I didn't know

10 It's no use (try) (interrupt) him. You'll have (wait) till he stops (talk) . 11 I'm for (do) nothing till the police arrive. They don't like you (move) anything when a crime has been committed. 12 He didn't like (leave) the children alone in the house but he had no alternative as he had (go) out to work. 13 Why didn't you drink it? I didn't like (drink) it as I didn't know what it was. 14 I'm very sorry for (be) late. It was good of you (wait) for me. 15. I keep (try) (make) mayonnaise but I never succeed. Try (add) the yolk of a hard-boiled egg. 16 Do you feel like (go) to a film or would you rather (stay) at home? 17 She told me (look) through her correspondence and (take) out any letters that you had written her. I didn't like (look) through someone else's letters but I had (do) as she said. 18 He took to (get up) early and (walk) noisily about the house. 19 I liked (listen) to folk music much better than (listen) to pop. 20 The car began (make) an extraordinary noise so I stopped (see) what it was. 21 You'll never regret (do) a kind action. 22 He decided (put) broken glass on top of his wall (prevent)' boys (climb) over it. 23 He annoyed me very much by (take) the piece of cake that I was keeping (eat) after my supper. 24 He kept (ring) up and (ask) for an explanation and she didn't know what (do) about him. 25 We got tired of (wait) for the weather (clear) and finally decided (set) out in the rain. 26 He made me (repeat) his instructions (make) sure that I understood what I was (do) after he had gone. 27 I suggest (leave) the car here and (send) a breakdown van (tow) it to the garage. 28 She apologized for (borrow) my sewing — machine without (ask) permission and promised never (do) it again. 29 I didn't mean (offend) anyone

26 The people in the fiat below seem (be having) a party. You can hearthe champagne corks (thud) against their ceiling. 27 I don't like (get) bills but when I do get them I like (pay) thempromptly. 28 Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (stand) at the door. 29 The boys next door used (like) (make) and (fiy) model aeroplanes ,but they seem to have stopped (do) that now. 30 I knew I wasn't the first (arrive), for I saw smoke (rise) from thechimney . 31 We watched the men (saw) the tree and as we were walking awayheard it (fall) with a tremendous crash. 32 I hate (see) a child (cry). 33 We watched the children (jump) from a window and (fall) into ablanket held by the people below. 34 It is very unpleasant (wake) up and (hear) the rain (beat) on thewindows. 35 He saw the lorry (begin) (roll) forwards but he was too far away (do)anything (stop) it. 36 There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone(slip) on a banana skin.

57 Using participles to join sentences

Join each of the following pairs of sentences, using either a presentparticiple e. g. knowing, a past participle e. g. knokwn, or a perfectparticiple e. g. having known. Numbers 17, 28, 33, and 36 contain threesentences each. Combine these in the same way. These participle constructions are more common in written English.

e. g. He got off his horse. He began searching for something on theground. Getting off his horse, he began searching . . . I had seen photographs of the place, I had no desire to go there. Having seen photographs of the place, I had no desire . . . The speaker re-

how (get) to your house so I stopped (ask) the way. 9 I wish my refrigerator would stop (make) that horrible noise. You can't hear anyone (speak). 10 This book tells you how (win) at games without actually (cheat). 11 The enemy began (fire). He felt bullets (strike) the wall behind him. 12 He heard the clock (strike) six and knew that it was time for him (get) up. 13 I can hear the bell (ring) but nobody seems (be coming) (open) the door. 14 Did you advise him (go) to the police? No, I didn't like (give) any advice on such a difficult matter. 15 He wanted (put) my chameleon on a tartan rug and (watch) it (change) colour. 16 It is easy (see) animals on the road in daylight but sometimes at night it is very difficult (avoid) (hit) them. 17 The fire seems (be) out. It can't be quite out. I can hear the wood (crackle). 18 I caught him (climb) over my wall. I asked him (explain) but he refused (say) anything, so in the end I had (let) him (go). 19 When at last I succeeded in (convince) him that I wanted (get) home quickly he put his foot on the accelerator and I felt the car (leap) forward. 20 I'm not used to (drive) on the left. When you see everyone else (do) it you'll find it quite easy (do) yourself. 21 It is pleasant (sit) by the fire at night and (hear) the wind (howl) outside. 22 There was no way of (get) out of the building except by (climb) down a rope and Ann was too terrified (do) this. 23 We heard the engines (roar) as the plane began (move) and we saw the people on the ground (wave) good-bye. 24 It's no good (write) to him; he never answers letters. The only thing (do) is (go) and (see) him. 25 Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) across it? I didn't like (cross) it because of the bull. I never see a bull without (think) that it wants (chase) me.

ing in the next room. They were wakened by the sound of breaking glass. 25 I knew that the murderer was still at large. I was extremely reluctant to open the door. 26 He stole the silver. He looked for a place to hide it. 27 We were soaked to the skin. We eventually reached the station. 28 I sat in the front row. I used a pair of binoculars. I saw everything beautifully. 29 One day you will be sitting by the fire. You will take down this book. 30 I didn't like to sit down. I knew that there were ants in the grass. 31 She believed that she could trust him absolutely. She gave him a blank cheque. 32 Slates were ripped off by the gale. They fell on people passing below. 33 The lion found his cage door open. He saw no sign of his keeper. He left the cage and walked slowly towards the zoo entrance. 34 The government once tried to tax people according to the size of their houses. They put a tax on windows. 35 I had heard that the caves were dangerous. I didn't like to go any further without a light. 36 She wore extremely fashionable clothes. She was surrounded by photographers and pressmen. She swept up to the microphone.

58 Misrelated participles

A participle is considered to belong to the noun or pronoun that immediately precedes it (which usually, but not necessarily, is the subject of the main verb).

e. g. The boy, climbing the tree to get birds' eggs, had a bad fall.

If there is no noun/pronoun in this position the participle is considered to belong to the subject of the following main verb:

Climbing the tree to get birds' eggs, the boy had a bad fall.

Sometimes this principle is disregarded and confusion results:

fused to continue. He was infuriated by the inter-ruptions . In-
furiated by the interruptions , the speaker refused
1 I knew that he was poor. I offered to pay his fare. 2 We barri-
caded the windows. We assembled in the hall. 3 She became tired
of my complaints about the programme. Sheturned it off. 4 He
found no one at home. He left the house in a bad temper. 5 She
hoped to find the will. She searched everywhere. 6 The criminal
removed all traces of his crime. He left the building. 7 He real-
ized that he had missed the last train. He began to walk. 8 He
was exhausted by his work. He threw himself on his bed. 9 He
had spent all his money. He decided to go home and ask hisfa-
ther for a job. 10 He escaped from prison. He looked for a place
where he could getfood . 11 She didn't want to hear the story a-
gain. She had heard it all before. 12 They found the treasure.
They began quarrelling about how todivide it. 13 She entered the
room suddenly. She found them smoking. 14 I turned on the
light. I was astonished at what I saw. 15 We visited the muse-
um. We decided to have lunch in the park. 16 He offered to show
us the way home. He thought we were lost. 17 He found his re-
volver. He loaded it. He sat down facing the door. 18 She asked
me to help her. She realized that she couldn't move italone. 19
He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner. 20 He addressed
the congregation. He said he was sorry to see how fewof them
had been able to come. 21 He thought he must have made a mis-
take somewhere. He wentthrough his calculations again. 22 I
have looked through the fashion magazines. I realize that my-
clothes are hopelessly out of date. 23 The tree had fallen across
the road. It had been uprooted by thegale . 24 People were sleep-

21 When driving carelessly it is easy to have an accident. 22 Pinned to the door by a knife, the men saw a notice. 23 Written in large letters they read the words 'No Entry'. 24 While cleaning his gun it went off unexpectedly. 25 Wondering where to go, an advertisement caught her eye. 26 Rushing out of the house, a lorry knocked me over. 27 Sitting by the fire, it all comes back to me. 28 Falling from such a height, we thought he would never survive. 29 When changing a fuse the electricity should first be switched off. 30 Towed behind the car, I saw a trailer with a boat on it. 31 While sitting at the foot of a cliff a stone fell on him. 32 Uprooted by the gale, the road was blocked by a huge tree. 33 Dropped by parachute, the country seemed entirely unfamiliar. 34 Sitting in the dentist's chair, an idea suddenly occurred to me. 35 Weakened by his last illness, I felt sure that another winter in this country would kill him. 36 Getting out of bed, a scorpion bit him.

4 Auxiliary verbs

59 Auxiliary verbs, negative and interrogative

Make these sentences (a) negative and (b) interrogative, following the usual rule for auxiliary verbs. (Auxiliaries are used here both by themselves and as part of various tenses of ordinary verbs.)

- 1 They can read French.
- 2 He is ten years old.
- 3 He may use this one.
- 4 They have two cars.
- 5 She was furious.
- 6 He should try again.
- 7 It could be done.
- 8 You were right.
- 9 You must tell him.

e. g. Climbing down the tree, one of the eggs broke. This word order makes it appear that the egg was climbing, which is nonsense. A participle linked in this way to the wrong noun/pro-noun is said to be 'misrelated'. The sentence should be rewritten: Climb-ing down the tree he broke one of the eggs. As he was climbing down the tree one of the eggs broke. Other examples of this type of error are given below. Correct these sentences.

1 When leaving a car in this car park the brakes must be left off.

2 Wading across the river, the current swept me off my feet.

3 When filling a tank with petrol naked lights should be extin-guished.

4 Running into the room, a rug caught her foot and she fell.

5 Reading the letter a second time, the meaning becomes clearer.

6 When carrying a gun it should never be pointed at any-one.

7 When planting these flowers care must be taken not to damage the roots.

8 Riding in his first race, his horse fell at the last jump.

9 When paying by cheque, the cheque should be crossed 'and Co.'.

10 Knowing me to be the fool of the family, the news that I had won a scholarship astonished him.

11 Believ-ing that his last hour had come, his hands began to tremble.

12 Pass-ing under a ladder, a pot of paint fell on my head.

13 Read-ing in bed, my hands often get very cold.

14 Leaving the cine-ma, it seemed to him that the film had been exceptionally bad.

15 Bark-ing furiously, I led the dog out of the room.

16 Having paid my taxes, the amount left in the bank is hardly worth mentioning.

17 Writing my name in the hotel register, a familiar voice attracted my attention.

18 Tied to a post, the sea was tossing the boat up and down.

19 Misunderstanding the question, the wrong answer was sent in.

20 Shining in the sky, we saw the first star.

lot of noise. 20 She had to make a speech. 21 He does his best. 22 He has to get up at six every day. 23 You have lunch at one. 24 He uses an axe. 25 She dared him to climb it. 26 You did it on purpose. 27 He has his house painted every year. 28 He dared to say that! 29 They had a good time. 30 The drink did him good. 31 My watch wants cleaning. 32 She came again. 33 He had to wait for you. 34 You had your house painted. 35 They went by bus. 36 They buy ices.

61 have, possessive

In British English, have meaning possess is not normally conjugated with do except when there is an idea of habit.

e.g. I haven't (got) a watch. (present possession)

How many corners has a (a characteristic rather than a habit) cube?

He doesn't usually have time (habit) to study.

In the past, did is used for habit; otherwise either form is possible:

e.g. Did you have/had you an umbrella when you left the house?

In other English-speaking countries, however, the do forms are used almost exclusively. It would therefore be possible to use do/did forms throughout the following exercises (except in No. 27), but students are asked to use have not/have you forms where they could be used. Where both are equally usual this will be noted in the key.

Fill the spaces with the correct forms of have, adding got where possible. Only one space will be left in each clause, but note that got may be separated from have by another word. When a negative form is required '(negative)' will be placed at the end of the

10 He can leave it here. 11 It will fit in his pocket. 12 She has a headache. 13 I shall be here. 14 She is afraid of mice. 15 She may borrow the car. 16 He is sorry for her. 17 There will be a lot to do. 18 He'll recognize her. 19 I have seen you before. 20 He'll be able to carry it. 21 It's very hot. 22 They used to live here. 23 The river was four metres deep. 24 We must hurry. (Use needn't in the negative.) 25 He ought to wait. 26 He would enjoy it. 27 They are having lunch. 28 We have finished. 29 You are hungry. 30 He can do without cigarettes. 31 She'll wait for you. 32 He used to eat them raw. 33 There'll be plenty for everyone. 34 He was very bad — tempered. 35 She is leaving tonight. 36 You are very good at this.

60 Auxiliaries and ordinary verbs, negative and interrogative

Some auxiliaries when used in certain ways make their negative and interrogative according to the rule for ordinary verbs, i. e. with do. The verbs in the following examples are either auxiliaries used in these ways, or ordinary verbs.

Make the sentences (a) negative and (b) interrogative, using do.

1 They have eggs for breakfast. 2 He needs a new coat. 3 Your cat catches mice. 4 They have to work hard. 5 She does the housework. 6 We know the place. 7 You like mushrooms. 8 He understood me. 9 He needs more money. 10 You drink coffee. 11 He had to borrow one. 12 The journey takes two hours. 13 He made a lot of mistakes. 14 She had a look at it. 15 Her hair needed cutting. 16 It matters very much. 17 He does his homework after supper. 18 She has a cold bath every morning. 19 They like a

28 You . . . a motor cycle? No, I only . . . an ordinary bicycle, but I . . . a motor cycle next year. 29 Why do you suddenly want to back out? you . . . cold feet? 30 Customer: You . . . any mushrooms today? Shopkeeper: We usually . . . them but I'm afraid we . . . any at the moment. (last verb negative) 31 I think I know the man you mean. He . . . one blue eye and one brown one? (negative) 32 Children nowadays . . . far too much pocket money. I . . . any when I was at school. (2nd verb negative) 33 We were always getting lost in the desert. You . . . compasses? (negative) 34 Red-haired people always . . . bad tempers? 35 Do you think we should eat this meat? It . . . a very nice smell. (negative) 36 The stairs are on fire! You . . . a long rope?

62 have, various uses

have can mean take (a meal/lesson/bath, etc.), entertain (guests), encounter (difficulty, etc.), enjoy (a time/journey, etc.). When used in these ways

1 have usually forms its negative and interrogative with do. 2 have can be used in the continuous tenses. Put the correct form of have into the following sentences. Use am having, is having, etc., as a future form. 1 We . . . some friends in for dinner tomorrow night. 2 You . . . a good journey yesterday? 3 Don't disturb him; he . . . a rest. 4 We . . . lunch early tomorrow. 5 How many lessons he . . . a week? He usually . . . four. 6 You . . . earthquakes in your country? 7 What time 'you . . . breakfast? We usually . . . it at 8.00. 8 What you . . . for breakfast? We . . . toast and coffee. 9 Why you . . . a cooked breakfast? (negative) It's too much trouble. 10 Why were they making such a noise? They . . . an argument. 11 You . . . a thunderstorm

example.

- 1 He is standing there in the rain and . . . even the sense to put up his umbrella. (negative)
- 2 He . . . a cold in the head. That's nothing new; he always . . . a cold.
- 3 I . . . brainwaves very often, but I . . . one now. (1st verb negative)
- 4 It is no good arguing with someone who . . . a bee in his bonnet.
- 5 Why don't you say something? You . . . an excuse? (negative)
- 6 You . . . this toothache yesterday?
- 7 How many letters . . . the alphabet?
- 8 The houses in your country . . . fiat roofs?
- 9 You . . . the time? (= do you know the time) No, I . . . a watch. (negative)
- 10 You ever . . . an impulse to smash something?
- 11 He . . . fl,000 a year when his father dies.
- 12 Air passengers usually . . . much luggage. (negative)
- 13 You . . . any objection to sitting with your back to the engine?
- 14 Oysters . . . always pearls in them. (negative)
- 15 Your door . . . a little hole through which you can peep at callers? (negative)
- 16 You . . . a match on you? No, I don't smoke so I never . . . matches.
- 17 What is your opinion? I . . . an opinion. (negative)
- 18 That cup . . . a crack in it.
- 19 You . . . any suspicion who did it?
- 20 This desk . . . a secret drawer? No, modern desks ever . . . secret drawers. (negative)
- 21 When you go to a place for the first time, you ever . . . a feeling that you've been there before?
- 22 Babies . . . teeth when they're born?
- 23 How many sides . . . a pentagon?
- 24 Our cat . . . kittens every year. How many she . . . each time?
- 25 They say that if children . . . complete freedom when they are young, they . . . inhibitions when they grow up. (2nd verb negative)
- 26 You . . . mosquitoes in your country in summer?
- 27 You . . . children? Yes, I . . . two, a boy and a girl.

know my hair looks dreadful but I . . . it set tomorrow. 3 The hall was dark so last year we . . . another window put in. 4 That dead tree is dangerous. I . . . it cut down tomorrow. 5 The house was damp so last winter we . . . central heating installed. 6 I can't read Greek so I . . . the documents translated. My nephew is helping with the translation. 7 Our swimming pool is too small so we . . . a new one made. They are starting work on it next week. 8 Why he . . . all his shoes specially made? He says that he has to because his feet are different sizes. 9 You . . . your milk delivered or do you go to the shop for it? 10 If you hate cleaning fish why you . . . them cleaned at the fish-monger's? (negative) 11 How often you . . . your dog clipped? 12 I'm afraid it's rather draughty here but I . . . that broken pane replaced tomorrow. Part 2 Fill in the spaces by inserting the correct form of have, the past participle of the verb in brackets and, where necessary, a pronoun. 13 We must . . . the grass . . . It is far too long. (cut) 14 Your roof is leaking, you should . . . it . . . (repair) 15 My skirt is too long, I must . . . (shorten) 16 No one will be able to read your notes. I know; I . . . them . . . (type) 17 That's a good piano but you should . . . it . . . (tune) 18 I've got paint on my coat; now I'll have to . . . (clean) 19 He didn't like the colour of the curtains so he . . . (dye) 20 He went to a garage to . . . the puncture . . . (mend) 21 His arm was broken so he went to hospital to . . . (set) 22 That tooth is giving you a lot of trouble; you should . . . (take out) 23 The room is very shabby; but I . . . next month. (redecorate) 24 They couldn't find a house to suit them so they . . . one . . . (build)

yesterday? 12 Come in, we . . . a debate. 13 You . . . a cup of coffee? Yes, please. 14 You're wanted on the phone. I can't come, I . . . a bath. 15 The tree just missed the roof, we . . . a very lucky escape. 16 How did you damage your car? You . . . an accident? 17 I . . . a look at that house tomorrow. If I like it I'll buy it. 18 We . . . very bad weather just now. 19 I . . . a very interesting conversation with the milkman when my neighbour interrupted me. 20 English people always . . . roast beef for lunch on Sundays? 21 It is difficult to learn a foreign language when you . . . an opportunity of speaking it. (negative) 22 The farmers . . . a lot of trouble with foxes at present. 23 On the whole women drivers . . . so many accidents as men drivers. (negative) 24 You . . . anything to eat before you left home? Oh yes, I . . . bacon and eggs. 25 You . . . any difficulty getting into your fiat last night? 26 Are you enjoying yourself? Yes, I . . . a wonderful time. 27 How often he . . . a bath? 28 You . . . a good night? No, I slept very badly. 29 Why were they late? They . . . a puncture. 30 We . . . a party here next week. Would you like to come? 31 Why didn't you speak to her? I . . . a chance. (negative) 32 We . . . a lecture next Monday. 33 I . . . tea with her tomorrow. 34 He . . . an operation next week. 35 He ever . . . nightmares? 36 When he got tired of it I . . . a try. You . . . any luck? Yes, I caught a great big fish.

63 The have + object + past participle construction

Part 1 Fill in the spaces by inserting the correct form of have.

Use am/is/are having as a future form. (get can be used instead of have, but is more colloquial.)

1 I . . . my house painted. That is why there is all this mess. 2 I

tenses.

1 They are cutting down all the trees. The countryside . . . (ruin) 2 The Prime Minister . . . a speech tonight. I think we should listen to it. (make) 3 If I . . . you I'd go on to the next exercise. 4 . . . late once is excusable but . . . late every day is not. 5 He ordered that all lights . . . (extinguish) 6 How long you . . . waiting? 7 My Hat was full of dust because the old house just opposite . . . (pull down) 8 He asked where he . . . it. (put) I told him to put it on the mantelpiece. 9 It . . . difficult to read a newspaper upside down? (use neg.) 10 You . . . here till I return. That is an order. (stay) 11 He suggests that prominent people . . . to contribute. (ask) 12 Even if you . . . to go on your knees to him I don't think it would make him change his mind. 13 I . . . on a catering course when I leave school. My parents have arranged it. (go) 14 What is happening now? The injured man . . . out of the arena. (carry) 15 It's better . . . too early than too late. 16 I wish you . . . here. I miss you very much. 17 Why did you leave him behind? You . . . him with you. (Those were your instructions.) (take) 18 She is learning Italian. She . . . by a professor from Milan. (teach) 19 I know I . . . half an hour late yesterday but I . . . half an hour early tomorrow. I'd rather you . . . punctual every day. 20 It is impossible . . . right every time. 21 He . . . here by seven but now it's nine and there's no sign of him. (be) 22 They decided that voting papers . . . to all members. (send) 23 There . . . eggs for breakfast tomorrow? 24 If only I . . . there! (but I wasn't.) 25 The Queen . . . the new hospital next week. (open) 26 I couldn't see the man who was leading us and I didn't know

Part 3 Rewrite the sentences using a **have + object + past participle** construction and omitting the words underlined. e. g. I employed a plumber to examine my boiler would be rewritten: I had my boiler examined. 25 I pay a garage to grease my car. 26 The tap kept dripping so I sent for a plumber to see to it. 27 I paid a watchmaker to clean my watch. 28 The shoe—mender is repairing my shoes for me. 29 They arranged for the police to arrest the msn. 30 He paid a lorry driver to tow the car to a garage. 31 They employed builders to put a new roof on the house. 32 I pay a window cleaner to clean my windows every month. 33 I went to an oculist and he tested my eyes for me. 34 I can't buy clothes to fit me so I employ a tailor to make them for me. 35 I asked the fishmonger to open the oysters for me. 36 I went to a jeweller and he pierced my ears for me.

64 be

This is a general exercise which includes infinitives, subjunctives, conditionals, and some examples of the **be + infinitive** construction.

When this last construction or a passive construction is required the second verb is given in brackets at the end of the sentence.

- e. g. Why are all those dogs wearing harness?
- They . . . as guide dogs for the blind. (train)
- They are being trained as guide dogs for the blind.
- They are being trained as guide dogs for the blind.

Fill the spaces in the following sentences by inserting the correct form of **be** with, where necessary, the past participle or present or perfect infinitive of the verb in brackets.

Remember that, in the passive, **be** can be used in the continuous

understand children. (neg., neg.) 8 When you have taken your degree **you** . . . put B. A. after your name? 9 Don't try to look at all the **pictures** in the gallery. Otherwise when you get home you . . . **remember** any of them. (neg.) 10 When I first went to Spain I . . . read Spanish but I . . . speak it. (second verb neg.) 11 . . . you type? Yes, I . . . type but I . . . do short-hand. (second verb neg.) 12 I'm locked in. I . . . get out! (neg.) . . . you squeeze between the bars? (neg.) **No!** I . . . I'm too fat. (neg.)

Part 2 could and was able

In some of **the** following sentences either **could** or **was able** could be used. In **others** only **was/were able** is possible. Fill the spaces and put **to where** necessary before the infinitives. 13 He was very strong; he . . . ski all day and dance all night. 14 The car plunged into **the** river. The driver . . . get out but the passengers were **drowned**, 15 I was a long way from the stage. I . . . see all right **but** I . . . hear very well. (second verb neg.) 16 We . . . borrow **umbrellas**; so we didn't get wet. 17 . . . you walk or did they **have** to carry you? 18 I had no key so I . . . lock the door. (neg.) 19 I knew the town so I . . . advise him where to go. 20 When the **garage** had repaired our car we . . . continue our journey. 21 **At** five years old he . . . read quite well. 22 When I arrived **everyone** was asleep. Fortunately I . . . wake my sister and she **let** me in. 23 The swimmer was very tired but he . . . reach **the** shore before he collapsed. 24 The police were suspicious at first **but** I . . . convince them that we were innocent.

Part 3

6
P
Fi
anc
abl
finit
I . .
I . .
test I
month
which
(neg.)
fog lifts
your ru
child I .

wherewe . . . (take)27 It . . . a trilogy but in the end the au-
 thor found that he had onlyenough material for two volumes.
 (be)28 You . . . very angry if I refused?29 The matter . . . dis-
 cussed in tomorrow's debate. 30 His mare . . . in tomorrow's
 race but he said this morning that shewas sick and wouldn't be
 running after all. (run)31 The house wasn't ready; it still . . .
 and there were pots of paint andladders everywhere . (paint)32
 They decided that an expurgated edition . . . for use inschools .
 (Print)33 His works are immensely popular; they . . . into all
 he majorEuropean languages. (translate)34 It is high time you
 . . . in bed. 35 I had my instructions and I knew exactly what I .
 . (do)36 If this report . . . believed, we are going to have a
 ry severedrought.

can and be able

I can, used to express ability with could, shall/will be able-
 the following spaces, using can for present, cnuld for past
 shall/will be able for future. There is no need to use other
 forms inthis section. Put to where necessary before the in-
 es.

you stand on your head? I . . . when I was at school but
 now. (second verb neg.)2 When I've passed my driving
 . . . hire a car from our localgarage . 3 At the end of the
 the Post Office will send him an enormoustelephone bill
 e . . . pay. (neg.)4 I . . . remember the address.
 . . . you even remember the street? (neg.)5 When the
 we . . . see where we are. 6 You've put too much in
 sack; you never . . . carry all that. 7 When I was a
 . . . understand adults, and now that I am anadult I . . .

understand children. (neg., neg.) 8 When you have taken your degree you . . . put B. A. after your name? 9 Don't try to look at all the pictures in the gallery. Otherwise when you get home you . . . remember any of them. (neg.) 10 When I first went to Spain I . . . read Spanish but I . . . speak it. (second verb neg.) 11 . . . you type? Yes, I . . . type but I . . . do shorthand. (second verb neg.) 12 I'm locked in. I . . . get out! (neg.) . . . you squeeze between the bars? (neg.) No! I . . . ; I'm too fat. (neg.)

Part 2 could and was able

In some of the following sentences either could or was able could be used. In others only was/were able is possible. Fill the spaces and put to where necessary before the infinitives. 13 He was very strong; he . . . ski all day and dance all night. 14 The car plunged into the river. The driver . . . get out but the passengers were drowned. 15 I was a long way from the stage. I . . . see all right but I . . . hear very well. (second verb neg.) 16 We . . . borrow umbrellas; so we didn't get wet. 17 . . . you walk or did they have to carry you? 18 I had no key so I . . . lock the door. (neg.) 19 I knew the town so I . . . advise him where to go. 20 When the garage had repaired our car we . . . continue our journey. 21 At five years old he . . . read quite well. 22 When I arrived everyone was asleep. Fortunately, I . . . wake my sister and she let me in. 23 The swimmer was very tired but he . . . reach the shore before he collapsed. 24 The police were suspicious at first but I . . . convince them that we were innocent.

Part 3

wherever . . . (take) 27 It . . . a trilogy but in the end the author found that he had only enough material for two volumes. (be) 28 You . . . very angry if I refused? 29 The matter . . . discussed in tomorrow's debate. 30 His mare . . . in tomorrow's race but he said this morning that she was sick and wouldn't be running after all. (run) 31 The house wasn't ready; it still . . . and there were pots of paint and ladders everywhere. (paint) 32 They decided that an expurgated edition . . . for use in schools. (Print) 33 His works are immensely popular; they . . . into all the major European languages. (translate) 34 It is high time you . . . in bed. 35 I had my instructions and I knew exactly what I . . . (do) 36 If this report . . . believed, we are going to have a very severe drought.

65 can and be able

Part 1 can, used to express ability with could, shall/will be able. Fill the following spaces, using can for present, could for past and shall/will be able for future. There is no need to use other able forms in this section. Put to where necessary before the infinitives.

1 . . . you stand on your head? I . . . when I was at school but I . . . now. (second verb neg.) 2 When I've passed my driving test I . . . hire a car from our local garage. 3 At the end of the month the Post Office will send him an enormous telephone bill which he . . . pay. (neg.) 4 I . . . remember the address. (neg.). . . you even remember the street? (neg.) 5 When the fog lifts we . . . see where we are. 6 You've put too much in your rucksack; you never . . . carry all that. 7 When I was a child I . . . understand adults, and now that I am an adult I . . .

es come true! 13 I . . . never see you again. 14 He . . . be on the
 next train. We . . . as well wait. 15 If we got there early we . .
 . get a good seat. 16 . . . I give you some advice? If you must. 17
 You ought to buy now; prices . . . go up. 18 I'll wait a week so
 that he . . . have time to think it over. 19 He isn't going to eat
 it; I . . . as well give it to the dog. 20 They sacrificed their lives
 so that we . . . live. 21 You . . . have written. (I am annoyed/
 disappointed that you didn't.) 22 We'd better be early; there . .
 . be a crowd. 23 Nobody knows how people first came to these
 islands. They . . . have sailed from South America on rafts. 24 I
 can't think what to do. . . . I make a suggestion? 25 He said that
 we . . . use his fiat whenever we liked. 26 I don't think I'll suc-
 ceed but I . . . as well try. 27 You ought to go to his lectures,
 you . . . learn something. 28 If we can give him a blood transfu-
 sion we . . . be able to save his life. 29 Two parallel white lines
 in the middle of the road mean that you . . . not overtake. 30 If I
 bought a lottery ticket I . . . win fl,000. 31 If you said that, he
 . . . be very offended. 32 I wonder why they didn't go. The
 weather . . . have been too bad. 33 They used to hang criminals
 in public so that everyone . . . see thereward for crime. 34 He
 has refused, but he . . . change his mind if you asked him a-
 gain. 35 . . . I see your passport, please? 36 You . . . be right
 but I don't think you are.

67 Short answers using auxiliary verbs

Answer these questions using yes/no + pronoun + an auxili-
 ary.

e. g Did you go? Yes, I did or; No, I didn't.

Can you swim? Yes, I can or; No, I can't.

This section includes examples of could used for polite requests and as a conditional . 25 . . . I speak to Mr Pitt, please? I'm afraid he's out at the moment. . . . you ring back later? 26 If you stood on my shoulders . . . you reach the top of the wall? No, I'm afraid I . . . (neg.) 27 If I sang . . . you accompany me on the piano? No, I . . . ; I . . . play the piano! (neg. , neg.) 28 If a letter comes for me . . . you please forward it to this address? 29 She made the wall very high so that boys . . . climb over it. (neg.) 30 They took his passport so that he . . . leave the country. (neg.) 31 . . . you tell me the time, please? I'm afraid I . . . I haven't got a watch. (neg.) 32 If you had to, . . . you go without food for a week? I suppose I . . . if I had plenty of water. 33 . . . you lend me £5? No, I . . . (neg.) 34 They used to chain valuable books to library desks so that people . . . take them away. (neg.) 35 He says that he saw Clementine drowning but . . . help her as he . . . swim. (neg. , neg.) 36 If you had had the right tools . . . you have repaired the engine?

66 may

Fill the spaces by inserting the correct form of may.

- 1 It . . . rain, you'd better take a coat.
- 2 He said that it . . . rain.
- 3 We . . . as well stay here till the weather improves.
- 4 . . . I borrow your umbrella?
- 5 You . . . tell me! (I think I have a right to know.)
- 6 Candidates . . . not bring textbooks into the examination room.
- 7 If we wave to him he . . . give us a lift.
- 8 If he knew our address he . . . come and see us.
- 9 . . . I come in? Please do.
- 10 We must all work hard so that our country . . . be prosperous.
- 11 I think I left my glasses in your office. You . . . ask your secretary to look for them for me.
- 12 . . . all your wish-

food wasn't bad. 25 You ought to be there. 26 You heard me. 27 It was struck by lightning. 28 You wouldn't think it. 29 There's a good bus service. 30 He is used to it. 31 You aren't angry? 32 He hasn't been long. 33 He'd rather stay here. 34 We'd better go. 35 You can do without it. 36 He died last year.

69 Additions to remarks, using auxiliary verbs

Part 1 Add to the following remarks using (and) so + the noun-pronoun in brackets + the auxiliary. If there is an auxiliary in the first remark repeat this; if not use do/does/did.

e.g. He lives in London. (I) He lives in London and so do I.
He had to wait. (you) He had to wait and so had you.

1 I have read it. (John) 2 He is a writer. (she) 3 Tom can speak Welsh. (his wife) 4 She ought to get up. (you) 5 He wants to help us. (she) 6 The pork was bad. (the beef) 7 The first bus was full. (the second) 8 I bought a ticket. (my brother) 9 You must come. (your son) 10 This bus goes to Piccadilly. (that) 11 I'm getting out at the next stop. (my friend) 12 He used to work in a restaurant. (I)

Part 2 Add to the following remarks using (and) neither/nor + the auxiliary + the noun/pronoun in brackets.

e.g. He isn't back. (she) He isn't back and neither is she.
13 I haven't seen it. (Tom) 14 you don't know the way. (your aunt) 15 They didn't use it. (we) 16 He can't come. (his sister) 17 I don't believe it. (Ann) 18 Alice couldn't understand. (Andrew) 19 I'm not going. (you) 20 This telephone doesn't work. (that) 21 Tom's car won't start. (mine) 22 I hadn't any change. (the taxi driver) 23 He didn't know the way. (anyone else) 24 My father wouldn't mind. (my mother)

1 Are you afraid of mice? 2 Is she at home? 3 Do you know French? 4 Did you see him? 5 Is the lift working? 6 Was Mary angry? 7 Have you had breakfast? 8 Can he cook? 9 Should you say anything? 10 Will you come? 11 Did I tread on your toe? 12 May I go now? 13 Used he to live here? 14 Has she paid the bill? 15 Could you lend it to me? 16 Must you go? (use needn't in the negative) 17 Was there a lot to do? 18 Need I say anything? (use must in the affirmative) 19 Does he drink whisky? 20 Did you do it on purpose? 21 May I take one? 22 Will you have to pay for it? 23 Has he been there? 24 Would you like to go? 25 Does Ann play cards? 26 Are you doing anything tonight? 27 Was it very difficult? 28 Had he realized this? 29 Were they surprised? 30 Would you like another cup? 31 Do you have to wear glasses? 32 Did your mother say anything? 33 Could he have prevented it? 34 Must he report to the police? (use needn't in the negative) 35 Were there mosquitoes? 36 Have you had enough of this?

68 Question tags

Add question tags to the following sentences.

e.g. He was asleep, wasn't he? You can't swim, can you?
Ann knew it, didn't she? He didn't see it, did he?
1 It's cold. 2 Tom has a car. 3 I may take it. 4 You can come. 5 He should drive slowly. 6 You eat oysters. 7 They'll have time. 8 You knew that. 9 He plays well. 10 She used to live here. 11 I was right. 12 He likes it. 13 You won't be long. 14 She didn't find it. 15 They needn't pay. 16 They aren't allowed to play cards. 17 She doesn't know you. 18 I needn't say anything. 19 You won't tell anyone. 20 It isn't expensive. 21 He didn't win. 22 He shouldn't put so much salt in it. 23 We shan't be here. 24 The

food wasn't bad. 25 You ought to be there. 26 You heard me. 27 It was struck by lightning. 28 You wouldn't think it. 29 There's a good bus service. 30 He is used to it. 31 You aren't angry? 32 He hasn't been long. 33 He'd rather stay here. 34 We'd better go. 35 You can do without it. 36 He died last year.

69 Additions to remarks, using auxiliary verbs

Part 1 Add to the following remarks using (and) so + the noun-pronoun in brackets + the auxiliary. If there is an auxiliary in the first remark repeat this; if not use do/does/did.

e.g. He lives in London. (I) He lives in London and so do I.
He had to wait. (you) He had to wait and so had you.

1 I have read it. (John) 2 He is a writer. (she) 3 Tom can speak Welsh. (his wife) 4 She ought to get up. (you) 5 He wants to help us. (she) 6 The pork was bad. (the beef) 7 The first bus was full. (the second) 8 I bought a ticket. (my brother) 9 You must come. (your son) 10 This bus goes to Piccadilly. (that) 11 I'm getting out at the next stop. (my friend) 12 He used to work in a restaurant. (I)

Part 2 Add to the following remarks using (and) neither/nor + the auxiliary + the noun/pronoun in brackets.

e.g. He isn't back. (she) He isn't back and neither is she.
13 I haven't seen it. (Tom) 14 you don't know the way. (your aunt) 15 They didn't use it. (we) 16 He can't come. (his sister) 17 I don't believe it. (Ann) 18 Alice couldn't understand. (Andrew) 19 I'm not going. (you) 20 This telephone doesn't work. (that) 21 Tom's car won't start. (mine) 22 I hadn't any change. (the taxi driver) 23 He didn't know the way. (anyone else) 24 My father wouldn't mind. (my mother)

1 Are you afraid of mice? 2 Is she at home? 3 Do you know French? 4 Did you see him? 5 Is the lift working? 6 Was Mary angry? 7 Have you had breakfast? 8 Can he cook? 9 Should you say anything? 10 Will you come? 11 Did I tread on your toe? 12 May I go now? 13 Used he to live here? 14 Has she paid the bill? 15 Could you lend it to me? 16 Must you go? (use needn't in the negative) 17 Was there a lot to do? 18 Need I say anything? (use must in the affirmative) 19 Does he drink whisky? 20 Did you do it on purpose? 21 May I take one? 22 Will you have to pay for it? 23 Has he been there? 24 Would you like to go? 25 Does Ann play cards? 26 Are you doing anything tonight? 27 Was it very difficult? 28 Had he realized this? 29 Were they surprised? 30 Would you like another cup? 31 Do you have to wear glasses? 32 Did your mother say anything? 33 Could he have prevented it? 34 Must he report to the police? (use needn't in the negative) 35 Were there mosquitoes? 36 Have you had enough of this?

68 Question tags

Add question tags to the following sentences.

e.g. He was asleep, wasn't he? You can't swim, can you?
Ann knew it, didn't she? He didn't see it, did he?
1 It's cold. 2 Tom has a car. 3 I may take it. 4 You can come. 5 He should drive slowly. 6 You eat oysters. 7 They'll have time. 8 You knew that. 9 He plays well. 10 She used to live here. 11 I was right. 12 He likes it. 13 You won't be long. 14 She didn't find it. 15 They needn't pay. 16 They aren't allowed to play cards. 17 She doesn't know you. 18 I needn't say anything. 19 You won't tell anyone. 20 It isn't expensive. 21 He didn't win. 22 He shouldn't put so much salt in it. 23 We shan't be here. 24 The

Part 2 Agreements with negative remarks.

Agree with the following remarks, using **no + pronoun + the auxiliary.**

e. g. Elephants never forget. No, they don't.

13 Cuckoos don't build nests. 14 He didn't complain. 15 It isn't worth keeping. 16 He can't help coughing. 17 The ice wasn't thick enough. 18 The lift wouldn't come down. 19 This flat hasn't got very thick walls. 20 They don't have earthquakes there. 21 The oranges didn't look very good. 22 It hasn't been a bad summer. 23 I don't look my age. 24 He mightn't like that colour.

Part 3 Disagreements with affirmative or negative remarks.

Disagree with the following remarks, using **oh nn/but + pronoun + auxiliary.** Use a negative auxiliary if the first verb is affirmative and an affirmative auxiliary if the first verb is negative.

e. g. He won't be any use. (Oh) yes, he will.

She worked her'e for a year. (Oh) no, she didn't.

25 You're drunk. 26 I didn't do it on purpose. 27 They weren't in your way. 28 I wasn't born then. 29 She'd rather live alone. 30 You gave him my address. 31 I can use your bicycle. 32 That five pound note belongs to me. 33 He didn't mean to be rude. 34 Children should be seen and not heard. 35 I know where you went. 36 She promised to obey him.

71 Auxiliaries followed by infinitive with or without to

Put **to** where necessary before the infinitives in brackets.

1 You needn't (come) tomorrow. 2 People used (travel) on horseback. 3 I'll have (hurry). 4 You ought (take) a holiday. 5 I'll (lend) him some money. 6 You are (go) at once. 7 We didn't

Part 3 Contrary additions.

Add to the following remarks using **but + noun/pronoun + the auxiliary or do/does/did**. Make a negative addition to an affirmative remark:

e. g. She thanked me. (he) She thanked me but he didn't.

Make an affirmative addition to a negative remark:

e. g. She can't eat oysters. (I) She can't eat oysters but I can.

Use **needn't** as the negative of **must**, and **must** as the affirmative of **needn't**.

25 John was seasick. (Mary) 26 He wasn't there. (she) 27 You

must go. (your brother) 28 My sister can speak German. (I) 29

Alexander didn't want to wait. (James) 30 Bill needn't stay.

(Stanley) 31 A cat wouldn't eat it. (a dog) 32 He will enjoy it.

(his wife) 33 The teacher hadn't got a television set. (his pupils)

34 This beach is safe for bathing. (that beach) 35 I must be there

early. (you) 36 Swallows leave England in autumn. (robins)

70 Agreements and disagreements with remarks,

using auxiliary verbs

Part 1 Agreements with affirmative remarks.

Agree with the following remarks, using **yes/so + pronoun + the auxiliary or do/does/did**.

e. g. He has a good influence on her. Yes, he has.

1 We must have a large room. 2 I was very rude. 3 She always

wears dark glasses. 4 She may be a spy. 5 He does his work well.

6 There's a snake in that basket. 7 He needs six bottles. 8 The

rain is coming through the roof. 9 His revolver was loaded. 10 He

looks dishonest. 11 They used to have a parrot. 12 The fog is get-

ting thicker.

7 I . . . leave early. 8 Mr Pitt . . . cook his own meals. His wife is away. 9 I hadn't enough money and I . . . pay by cheque. 10 I never remember his address; I always . . . look it up. 11 Employer: You . . . come to work in time. 12 If you go to a dentist with a private practice you . . . pay him quite a lot of money. 13 Father to small son: You . . . do what Mummy says. 14 My neighbour's child . . . practise the piano for three hours a day. 15 Doctor: I can't come now. Caller: You . . . come; he's terribly ill. 16 English children . . . stay at school till the age of 16. 17 In my district there is no gas laid on. People . . . use electricity for everything. 18 Notice above petrol pump: All engines . . . be switched off. 19 Mother to daughter: You . . . come in earlier at night. 20 The shops here don't deliver. We . . . carry everything home ourselves. 21 The buses were all full; I . . . get a taxi. 22 Notice beside escalators: Dogs and push chairs . . . be carried. 23 'Au pair' girls usually . . . do quite a lot of housework. 24 Tell her that she . . . be here by six. I insist on it. 25 When a tyre is punctured the driver . . . change the wheel. 26 Park notice: All dogs . . . be kept on leads. 27 She . . . learn how to drive when her local railway station is closed. 28 Railway notice: Passengers . . . cross the line by the footbridge. 29 I got lost and . . . ask a policeman the way. 30 Farmers . . . get up early. 31 If you buy that television set you . . . buy a licence for it. 32 When I changed my job I . . . move to another flat. 33 Waiters . . . pay tax on the tips that they receive. 34 Father to son: I can't support you any longer; you . . . earn your own living from now on. 35 Railway notice: Passengers . . . be in possession of a ticket. 36 Whenever the dog wants to go out I . . .

have (pay) anything. 8 There won't (be) enough room for everyone. 9 You can (see) the windmill from here. 10 He was able (explain). 11 We may have (stay) here all night. 12 He used (spend) a lot of time in his library. 13 He didn't dare (say) anything. 14 Don't (move). 15 We'll (look) for a hotel. 16 You needn't (look) for a hotel; I'll be able (put) you up. 17 The doctor said that I ought (give up) smoking. 18 He used (drink) quite a lot. 19 He should (be) ready by now. 20 May I (ask) you a question? 21 I shan't be able (do) it till after the holidays. 22 I didn't need (say) anything. 23 How dare you (open) my letters! 24 They ought (warn) people about the dangerous currents. 25 I should (say) nothing about it if I were you. 26 You are not (mention) this to anyone. 27 Why do they (obey) him? They don't dare (refuse). 28 You must (look) both ways before crossing the road. 29 Your map may (have been) out of date. 30 You ought (have finished) it last night. 31 I must (say) I think you behaved very badly. 32 I shouldn't have (carry) my own luggage. 33 We've got (get out). 34 It might (kill) somebody. 35 I was able (rescue) him. 36 He had (share) a cabin.

72 must and have to

Fill the spaces in the following sentences by inserting **must** or the present, future, or past form of **have to**.

- 1 She . . . leave home at eight every morning at present.
- 2 Notice in a picture gallery: Cameras, sticks and umbrellas . . . be left at the desk.
- 3 He sees very badly; he . . . wear glasses all the time.
- 4 I . . . do all the typing at my office.
- 5 You . . . read this book. It's really excellent.
- 6 The children . . . play in the streets till their mothers get home from work.
- 7 She felt ill and . . .

typed but you . . . do it today. Tomorrow will do. 29 I'll lend you the money and you . . . pay me back till next month. 30 We . . . climb any higher; we can see very well from here. 31 You . . . look under the bed. There isn't anybody there. 32 You . . . ask a woman her age. It's not polite. 33 You've given me too much. You . . . eat it all. 34 We . . . forget to shut the lift gates. 35 Mother to child; You . . . interrupt when I am speaking. 36 If you want the time, pick up the receiver and dial 123; you . . . say anything . . .

74 need not and don't have to etc.

Replace the words underlined by need not/need I? etc. , or a negative orinterrogative have to form.

e. g. I've been invited to a wedding; but I can't go. Will it be necessary for me to send a present? or Shall I have to send a present?

- 1 It isn't necessary for him to go on wording. He has already reached retiring age. (He . . .)
- 2 Was it necessary for you to wait a long time for your bus?
- 3 It isn't necessary for me to water my tomato plants every day.
- 4 It will be necessary for them to get up early when they go out to workevery day.
- 5 We had to stop at the frontier but we were not required to open ourcases .
- 6 It wasn't necessary to walk. He took us in his car. (We . . .)
- 7 My employer said, 'I shan't require you tomorrow.' (you . . . come.)
- 8 It is never necessary for me to work on Saturdays.
- 9 When I am eightem I'll be of age. Then it won't be necessary to liveat home if I don't want to.
- 10 Father to son; It isn't necessary for you to call me 'Father'; call me 'AHred'.
- 11 Will it be necessary for us to report this accident to the police?
- 12 When

get up and open the door.

73 must not and need not

Use must not or need not to fill the spaces in the following sentences.

- 1 You . . . ring the bell; I have a key.
- 2 Notice in cinema; Exit doors . . . be locked during performances.
- 3 You . . . drink this; it is poison.
- 4 We . . . drive fast; we have plenty of time.
- 5 You . . . drive fast; there is a speed limit here.
- 6 Candidates . . . bring books into the examination room.
- 7 You . . . write to him for he will be here tomorrow.
- 8 We . . . make any noise or we'll wake the baby.
- 9 You . . . bring an umbrella. It isn't going to rain.
- 10 You . . . do all the exercise. Ten sentences will be enough.
- 11 We . . . reheat the pie. We can eat it cold.
- 12 Mother to child; You . . . tell lies.
- 13 You . . . turn on the light; I can see quite well.
- 14 You . . . strike a match; the room is full of gas.
- 15 You . . . talk to other candidates during the exam.
- 16 We . . . make any more sandwiches; we have plenty now.
- 17 You . . . put salt in any of his dishes. Salt is very bad for him.
- 18 You . . . take anything out of a shop without paying for it.
- 19 You . . . carry that parcel home yourself; the shop will send it.
- 20 You . . . clean the windows. The window-cleaner is coming tomorrow.
- 21 Mother to child; You . . . play with matches.
- 22 Church notice; Visitors . . . walk about the church during a service.
- 23 I . . . go to the shops today. There is plenty of food in the house.
- 24 You . . . smoke in a non-smoking compartment.
- 25 Police notice; Cars . . . be parked here.
- 26 We . . . open the lion's cage. It is contrary to Zoo regulations.
- 27 You . . . make your bed. The maid will do it.
- 28 I want this letter.

necessary for you to wait till the end of the first act before finding your seat? 35 He repaired my old watch so it wasn't necessary for me to buy a new one after all. 36 Were you required to make a speech?

75 must, can't and needn't with the perfect infinitive

must + perfect infinitive is used for affirmative deductions.
can't/couldn't + infinitive is used for negative deductions.
needn't + perfect infinitive is used for a past action which was unnecessary but was performed. (See also Exercise 78.)

Fill the spaces in the following sentences by using one of these forms + the perfect infinitive of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Did you hear me come in last night? No, I . . . (be) asleep.
- 2 I wonder who broke the wineglass; it . . . (be) the cat for she was out all day.
- 3 You . . . (help) him. (you helped him but he didn't need help)
- 4 I had my umbrella when I came out but I haven't got it now. You . . . (leave) it on the bus.
- 5 He . . . (escape) by this window because it is barred.
- 6 I . . . (give) 10p. 5p would have been enough.
- 7 I saw a rattlesnake near the river yesterday. You . . . (see) a rattlesnake. There aren't any rattlesnakes in this country.
- 8 He is back already. He . . . (start) very early.
- 9 He returned home with a tiger cub. His wife . . . (be) very pleased about that.
- 10 I bought two bottles of milk. You . . . (buy) milk; we have heaps in the house.
- 11 I phoned you at nine this morning but got no answer. I'm sorry. I . . . (be) in the garden.
- 12 I left my bicycle here and now it's gone. Someone . . . (borrow) it.
- 13 She went to sleep in the park and when she woke up her watch had vanished. Someone . . . (steal) it while she slept.
- 14 I've opened another bottle. You . . .

you buy something on the instalment system you are not required to pay the whole price at once. 13 Did you know enough English to ask for your ticket? It wasn't necessary to say anything. I bought my ticket at a machine. 14 It isn't necessary to buy a licence for a bicycle in England. (we . . .) 15 Is it essential for you to finish tonight? 16 Is it necessary for people to go everywhere by boat in Venice? 17 Will it be necessary for me to sleep under a mosquito net? 18 Most people think that civil servants are not required to work very hard. 19 It wasn't necessary to swim. We were able to wade across. 20 When a stranger enters a room the men in the room have to stand up but it isn't necessary for the women to do this. 21 Our plane was delayed so we had lunch at the airport. But it wasn't necessary to pay for the lunch. The airline gave it to us. 22 Is it obligatory for us to vote? 23 When you were a child were you required to practice the piano? 24 I saw the accident but fortunately it wasn't necessary for me to give evidence as there were plenty of other witnesses. 25 Small boy to friend; It won't be necessary for you to work hard when you come to my school. The teachers aren't very strict. 26 They had plenty of time. It wasn't necessary for them to hurry. 27 Is it necessary for you to take your dog with you everywhere? 28 What time was it necessary for you to leave home? 29 I brought my passpon but I wasn't required to show it to anyone. 30 I missed one day of the exam. Will it be necessary for me to take the whole exam again. ? 31 Is it really necessary for you to practise the violin at 3 a. m. ? 32 Everything was done for me. It wasn't necessary for me to do anything . 33 Are French school children obliged to work on Saturdays? 34 I was late for the opera. Was it

lish, very slowly. You . . . (speak) slowly. He speaks English very fluently. 36 He was found unconscious at the foot of the cliff. He . . . (fall) 200metres .

76 will and shall

Put shall or will in the spaces in the following sentences.

- 1 Where . . . we go now? 2 . . . you be here when we get back?
- 3 Next time I go, you . . . come with me. (a promise) 4 . . . you have a cigarette? 5 Where . . . we meet? 6 I . . . have to think it over. 7 'If you want it you . . . have it,' said his father. (a promise) 8 . . . customers please count their change as mistakes cannot be rectified afterwards. (notice in a shop) 9 Who will go to the shops for me? I . . . 10 . . . we have a picnic on the beach? 11 We . . . know the result in a week's time. 12 If you press that button the engine . . . start. 13 I've got a hole in my shoe. I . . . have to have it repaired. 14 School notice: All new boys . . . report to the headmaster. 15 We'll leave the light on so that he . . . not have any difficulty in finding his room. 16 'If there is any cake left you . . . have it,' promised his aunt. 17 Notice above a box-office: . . . patrons please examine their tickets as tickets cannot be exchanged afterwards. 18 I am determined that my boy . . . have a better start than I had. 19 Some people . . . try to cross a busy road against the traffic lights. 20 Police notice: . . . anyone who saw this accident please telephone the nearest police station? 21 Clause in a lease: The tenant . . . be responsible for all repairs. 22 . . . I write my address on the back? 23 They have put lights on the barricade so that motorists . . . not bump into it. 24 It's very dark in here. So it is; I . . . turn on the light. 25 What . . . I say? 26 You forgot to post

. (do) that. We've only just started this one. 15 The machine said, 'You weigh 65 kilos,' and I said, 'Thank you.' You . . . (say) anything. 16 I told him to turn left and he immediately turned right! He . . . (understand) you. 17 Perhaps he swam across. No, he . . . (do) that; he can't swim. 18 Do you remember reading about it in the newspapers? No, I . . . (be) abroad at the time. 19 He . . . (walk) from here to London in two hours. It isn't possible. 20 He was very sick last night. The meat we had for supper . . . (be) good. 21 There was a dock strike and the liner couldn't leave port. The passengers . . . (be) furious. 22 We went to a restaurant and had a very good dinner for 75p. You . . . (have) a very good dinner if you only paid 75p. 23 I have just watered the roses. You . . . (water) them. Look, it's raining now! 24 That carpet was made entirely by hand. It . . . (take) a long time. 25 The door was open. It . . . (be) open. I had locked it myself and the key was in my pocket. 26 He said that he watered the plants every day. He . . . (water) them. If he had they wouldn't have died. 27 He came out of the water with little red spots all over his back. He . . . (be) stung by a jelly—fish. 28 We've sent for a doctor. You . . . (send) for him. I am perfectly well. 29 I've made two copies. You . . . (make) two. One would have been enough. 30 There was a terrible crash at 3 a. m. That . . . (be) Tom coming in from his party. 31 I had to get down the mountain in a thick fog. That . . . (be) very difficult. 32 I saw Ann in the library yesterday. You . . . (see) her; she is still abroad. 33 How did he get out of the house? He . . . (come) down the stairs for they were blazing. 34 You . . . (lend) him your map. He has one of his own. 35 I spoke in Eng-

phone . . . ring please say that I'll be back at six. 18 . . . you
 like to come or . . . you rather stay here? 19 There are too many
 accidents. Everyone . . . be much more careful. 20 Their
 method was always the same; they . . . wait till their victim had
 left the bank and then go up to him and ask for a light. 21 What
 are you doing here? You . . . be in bed. 22 It is essential that
 this matter . . . be kept out of the newspapers. 23 He suggested
 that the money . . . be raised by public subscription. 24 If you .
 . . change your mind, this address will always find me. 25 If this
 machine . . . at any time fail to give complete satisfaction please
 post us the enclosed card. 26 He changed his name so that nobody
 . . . know what he had been before. 27 If he offered me money I
 . . . refuse. 28 I wish you . . . not ask so many questions. 29 He
 ordered that Tom . . . leave the house at once. 30 Shall I help
 you? If you . . . I . . . be most grateful. 31 He is anxious that
 everyone . . . understand why he acted as he did. 32 You . . .
 not argue with your father; you . . . obey him. 33 He was a very
 patient cat; he . . . sit for hours beside a mousehole. 34 . . .
 the pain return take one of these pills. 35 It is most important
 that I . . . see him at once. 36 They didn't dare leave the train in
 case they . . . be left behind.

78 would and should

Put should or would in the spaces in the following sentences:

- 1 It is only fair that you . . . know the truth about your own father and it is better that you . . . hear it from me than from some stranger.
- 2 If you . . . kindly wait here a moment I'll ring the director's office.
- 3 . . . these measures fail to restore order harsher restrictions will have to be imposed.
- 4 The rocks were icy

your letter. So I did. I . . . go back and post it now. 27 Clause in a lease: Tenants . . . not play any musical instrument aftermidnight . 28 I . . . not be able to carry it by myself. I . . . help you. 29 Committee regulations: Ten members . . . constitute a quorum at any meeting. 30 She said, 'I . . . not fill up this form. The questions are impertinent.' 31 He said, 'If you don't do it you . . . be fined.' 32 If you . . . kindly wait a moment I'll see what can be done. 33 You . . . not be late, . . . you? 34 You've helped me tremendously and you . . . not regret it. (i. e. I'll reward you) 35 I . . . be leaving Victoria tomorrow at 8.00 a. m. I . . . come and see you off. 36 Who . . . I say called? You needn't mention any name. He . . . know who I am.

77 would and should

Put should or would in the spaces in the following sentences.

- 1 . . . you mind opening the door?
- 2 . . . you like another cup of coffee?
- 3 He insisted that the newspaper . . . print an apology.
- 4 The old admiral . . . sit for hours watching the ships.
- 5 . . . you be so good as to keep an eye on my house while I am away?
- 6 I . . . say nothing about it if I were you.
- 7 That hat doesn't suit you; you . . . buy another.
- 8 If you pulled the communication cord the train . . . stop and you . . . be fined £25.
- 9 They went to the cinema at 2.30, so they . . . be back here by 6.00.
- 10 . . . you please help me with this?
- 11 It is very strange that he . . . think that.
- 12 I wish he . . . not play his radio so loudly.
- 13 . . . you be very kind and lend me your typewriter?
- 14 I . . . like to know where you have been.
- 15 It was decided that the matter . . . be referred to a special committee.
- 16 Perhaps you . . . be kind enough to let us know about this.
- 17 If the tele-

is no driver; but a mechanic is always available in case anything . . . go wrong. 22 She had one rather boring habit; she . . . insist on telling people about her dreams. 23 He recommended that the trouble makers in the factory . . . be dismissed. 24 It is absurd that women . . . be paid less than men for doing the same work. 25 I . . . rather you asked him. Last time I tried to speak to him he . . . not listen. 26 When he went out he left the radio on so that his parents . . . think that he was still in his room. 27 He was determined that his children . . . go to the best school-savailable. 28 Tom says you are foolish to take such a risk. He . . . ! (That is typical of him.) 29 When four hours had passed and there was still no sign of him she began to be worried lest he . . . have met with some accident. 30 People are very fond of saying, 'This . . . be stopped', or, 'Some—thing . . . be done about this', but if they were the government they . . . not know how to stop it or what to do about it. 31 It is amazing that the Leaning Tower of Pisa . . . have stood for so long. 32 He resigned from the government in order that everyone . . . know that he disapproved of the new policy. 33 If I had had his education and he had had mine perhaps I . . . be sitting at his desk and he . . . be out here sweeping the streets. 34 He was a terribly obstinate child, who . . . never obey the simplest order, but . . . argue every point till she nearly went mad. 35 Robinson said, 'Why . . . Smith get all the credit when someone else has done all the work?' 36 All day he . . . sit in his office immaculately dressed, but at night he . . . put on dirty ragged clothing and roam about the streets with disreputable companions.

79 Auxiliary verbs used with the perfect infinitive

and he was terrified lest he . . . slip. 5 If Pierre liked any dish he . . . send for the chef and congratulate him, and if anything was wrong he . . . send for the manager and complain. An Englishman . . . never dare to do that; he . . . be too shy. 6 I was just burying the bones in the garden when who . . . look over the hedge but the village policeman. 7 When he found out that the man had smallpox he urged that every one . . . be made to contact his fellow passengers. 8 I wish you . . . go out or sit down. How . . . you like it if I kept tramping round when you were trying to work? 9 I've just received an anonymous threatening letter. What . . . I do about it? I . . . take it to the police if I were you. 10 The committee thinks that you have been guilty of disloyalty. I don't know why the committee . . . think that. 11 I can't repair it now but if you . . . like to leave it with me I'll see what can be done. 12 You complained to the manager, of course? No, I asked to speak to him but he . . . not come to the phone. You . . . have insisted. 13 Where will he be now? Oh, he . . . be there by now; the flight only takes an hour. 14 If your main parachute . . . fail to open your second one will open automatically. 15 I suggested that Tom . . . walk on and try to get help while I stayed with the injured man but he . . . not hear of this. 16 I am amazed that you . . . even suggest offering bribes. 17 This passage doesn't lead anywhere. It is odd that no one . . . haven't noticed this before. 18 . . . you mind not smoking; this is the petrol store. Then there . . . be a 'No Smoking' notice. 19 Can't I trust you not to read my letters? It is ridiculous that I . . . have to lock things up in my own house. 20 He said he wished I . . . not come so often. 21 This train is entirely automatic; there

don park. I think it was the Round Pond . It (not be) the Round Pond. There are only toy boats there. It (be) the Serpentine. 17 Look, there's a tree right across the road! So there is. It (be) blown down by the gale last night. 18 This building (be) finished by the end of last year, (this was the plan) but there have been so many strikes that it isn't finished yet. 19 If the tempest hadn't struck them they (reach) the top next day. 20 You (cross) the road by the subway. (but you didn't) 21 It is a pity you (not bring) your kite. It is just the day for kites. 22 It is possible that I (be) mistaken. 23 I sat on a seat in the park and now my coat is covered in greenstripes . The paint (be) wet. 24 I suppose it was Charles who left the kitchen in such a mess. No, it (not be) Charles. He never has a meal in. It (be) Bill. 25 I know she was in because I heard her radio, but she didn't open the door. Possibly she (not hear) the bell. 26 If you had told me that you were in London I (put) you up. (this would have been possible) 27 If they had gone any further they (fall) over a precipice. 28 He (check) that his brakes were working properly. (but he didn't) 29 You (apologize), which was not necessary. 30 I can't think why they didn't try to help him. It is possible that they (not realize) that he was drowning. 31 He (thank) us. (we are offended that he didn't) 32 I (go) on Tuesday (this was the plan). But on Tuesday I had a terrible cold so I decided to wait till Wednesday. 33 You (warn) him that the ice was dangerous. (but you didn't) 34 If you had kept quiet nobody (know) anything about it. 35 You bought a new one, which wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine. 36 As soon as I switched on my new electric cooker there was an explosion . There (be) something wrong with it.

Use the perfect infinitive of the verb in italics with the appropriate auxiliary. Phrases underlined should not be repeated but their meanings should be expressed by auxiliary + perfect infinitive.

e.g. You (bought) bread, which not necessary.

You needn't have bought bread.

- 1 To someone who was not at the party: 'We had a wonderful time; you (be) there.'
- 2 He thinks that it is possible that Shakespeare (write) it. Shakespeare (not write) it because events are mentioned that didn't occur till after Shakespeare's time.
- 3 I found this baby bird at the foot of a tree. It (fall) from a nest.
- 4 I used to visit her and I always wondered why she had those dreadful pictures on the walls. It is possible that she (like) them.
- 5 During the gale, the captain was on the bridge the whole time. He (be) exhausted afterwards.
- 6 You (send) a telegram, which was quite unnecessary; a letter would have done.
- 7 You (leave) a note. (It was very inconsiderate of you not to do so.)
- 8 Somebody phoned at lunchtime but I couldn't catch the name. It (be) my brother. He sometimes rings me up then.
- 9 The lecturer was a tall thin man with white hair. Then it (not be) Dr Fell because he is short and fat. It (be) Dr Jones; I think he is thin.
- 10 You (not go) out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught cold.
- 11 I saw them in the street but they didn't stop to speak to me. It is possible that they (be) in a hurry.
- 12 They (be) married next week but now they have quarrelled and the wedding has been cancelled.
- 13 If we hadn't had this puncture we (be) home by now.
- 14 You (carry) the dog, which was unnecessary. He can walk very well.
- 15 People were waiting but the bus didn't stop. It is possible that it (be) full.
- 16 We went sailing on a lake in a Lon-

afternoon and I haven't done my homework yet,' said the small boy. 14 'If you let the iron get too hot you will scorch your clothes,' I warned her. 15 'You haven't given me quite enough. The bill is for fl4 and you've paid me only fl3,' he pointed out. 16 Ann said, 'Englishmen make good husbands because they are nearly always willing to help in the house.' 17 Mary answered, 'I like men to be useful but I don't like them to be too domesticated. I prefer them to keep out of the kitchen altogether. Men look silly in aprons anyway.' 18 Motoring report: The new Rolls Royce runs so quietly that all you can hear is the ticking of the clock. Managing director of the Rolls Royce company: In that case we'll have to do something about the clock. 19 'I don't know what to do with all my plums. I suppose I'll have to make jam. The trouble is that no one in my family eats jam,' she said. 20 'We like working on Sundays because we get double pay,' explained the builders. 21 He said, 'I am quite a good cook and I do all my own washing and mending too.' 22 'You can keep that one if you like, Joan,' she said. 'I've got plenty of others.' 23 'I'm going fishing with mother this afternoon,' said the small boy, 'and we are going into the garden now to dig for worms.' 24 'You've got my umbrella,' I said crossly. 'Yours is in your bedroom.' 25 'I know exactly what they said,' the private detective explained to his client, 'because I put a tape-recorder under the table.' 26 'I'll sit up till she comes in, but I hope she won't be late,' said Mrs Pitt. 27 'If you give me some wire, I'll hang that picture for you,' said my cousin. 28 'I have a Turkish bath occasionally, but it doesn't seem to make any difference to my weight,' she said.

5 Indirect speech and passive voice

80 Indirect speech: statements

1 Students are asked to assume that these sentences are spoken and reported on different days. This will mean that a sentence such as: He said, 'I am coming tomorrow,' will become: He said that he was coming the next day. and so on. This applies to all the exercises on indirect speech in this book. 2 With indirect speech, when the person addressed is mentioned, tell is more usual than say to as an introductory verb. e. g. He told me that he was going away the next day, is more usual than He said to me that he was going away the next day. Put the following into indirect speech. 1 'I have something to show you,' I said to her. 2 'Nothing grows in my garden. It never gets any sun,' she said. 3 'I'm going away tomorrow, mother,' he said. 4 'I've been in London for a month but so far I haven't had time to visit the Tower,' said Rupert. 5 'It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday,' he remarked. 6 'The new underpass is being officially opened the day after tomorrow,' said the BBC announcer. 7 'We have moved into our new flat. We don't like it nearly so much as our last one,' said my aunt. 8 'We have a lift but very often it doesn't work,' they said. 9 'From one of the windows of my flat I can see the Eiffel Tower,' said my friend. 10 'I've no idea what the time is but I'll dial 123 and find out,' said his daughter. 11 He said. 'My wife has just been made a judge. '12 'I'll come with you as soon as I am ready,' she replied. 13 'I have a German lesson this

Put the following into indirect speech, being careful to avoid ambiguity:

- 1 'I couldn't get into the house because I had lost my key, so I had to break a window,' he said.
- 2 'The mirror is there so that you can see yourself when you are dancing,' explained the instructress to the pupil.
- 3 'I wrote to him the day before yesterday. I wonder why he hasn't rung up,' she said.
- 4 'This is quite a good model, madam. I use one of them myself,' said the shop assistant.
- 5 'If I had spoken to my father as you speak to me he'd have beaten me,' he said to me.
- 6 'If you want seats you'd better apply early. I once tried a week before the performance and the theatre was all booked up,' she said to him.
- 7 'We walked 50 miles last night to see the Minister and protest about our rents being raised. He was very polite and promised to do what he could for us,' said one of the tenants.
- 8 'One day I'll drop dead and then you'll be sorry,' she said.
- 9 'My new house is supposed to be haunted but so far I haven't seen any ghosts,' said the woman.
- 10 In Shakespeare's Othello Iago says, 'I will wear my heart upon my sleeve.'
- 11 'If it rains this afternoon it will be too wet to play the match tomorrow,' the captain said.
- 12 'I meant to plug in the electric blanket but I plugged in the electric kettle by mistake. I'm always doing silly things like that,' she told her guest.
- 13 'I was intending to do it tomorrow,' he said, 'but now I don't think I'll be able to.'
- 14 'I'm sure your son will do very well at the university, Mrs Smith,' said the headmaster. 'He's done very well here.'
- 15 'Nothing I can do pleases your father. I don't think he likes me,' said the young wife. 'You mustn't think that,' said her husband; 'it is just that he is old and finds it hard

81 Indirect speech: statements

Tenses which do not change when direct speech becomes indirect;

- 1 If the introductory verb is in the present, present perfect or future tense all verb tenses remain unchanged (see PEG 276). 2 Even when the introductory verb is in the past tense, certain tenses sometimes remain unchanged; a The past continuous tense normally remains unchanged except when it is the only verb in the sentence or when it refers to a completed action (see no. 13). b The past tense remains unchanged in the following cases; i In time clauses. When a sentence contains a time clause whose verb is in the past (or past continuous) tense, both the verb in the time clause and the main verb of the sentence normally remain unchanged; e. g. He said, 'I dropped it while he was running' becomes; He said that he dropped it while he was running, though it is possible sometimes, especially when the time clause verb is in the past continuous, to put the main verb into the past perfect tense; e. g. He said that he had dropped it while he was running. ii A past tense used to describe a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported, normally remains unchanged (see example no. 24 below). iii would, should, used, might, and could (except when it means was able) normally remain unchanged in statements (for must see Exercise 88). iv Past subjunctives remains unchanged. Therefore; conditional sentences type 2 remain unchanged would rather + past tense remains unchanged you had better + infinitive remains unchanged, or is reported by advise + object + verb past tenses after wish and it is time remain unchanged.

1 'Why are you looking through the keyhole?' I said. 2 'Who put salt in my coffee?' he asked. 3 'Which of you knows how to make Irish stew?' said the chief cook. 4 'Why did you travel first class?' I asked him. 5 'How can I possibly run in these high-heeled shoes?' she enquired. 6 'What is your new house like?' I asked them. 7 He said, 'Where am I supposed to go now?' 8 'Whose car did you borrow last night?' I said to him. 9 'What was she wearing when you saw her last?' the policeman asked me. 10 'Who owns this revolver?' said the detective. 11 'Where were you last night, Mr Jones?' he said. 12 'What else did you see?' I asked the boy. 13 'Have you done this sort of work before?' said his new employer. 14 'Can you read the last line on the chart?' the oculist asked her. 15 'Did they understand what you said to them?' he inquired. 16 'Are you being attended to, sir?' said the shop assistant. 17 'Will you go on strike when the others do?' the shop steward asked him. 18 'Do you see what I see, Mary?' said the young man. 19 'Who left the banana skin 'on the front doorstep?' said my mother. 20 'Have you gone completely mad?' I asked. 'Do you want to blow us all up?' 21 'Why is his house so full of large leather couches?' she asked. 'Was his father a psychiatrist?' 22 'Are you leaving today or tomorrow morning?' said his secretary. 23 'How far is it?' I said, 'and how long will it take me to get there?' 24 'Could I speak to Mrs Pitt?' said the caller. 'I'm afraid she's out,' said the au pair girl. 'Could I take a message?' 25 'Are you sorry for what you did?' the mother asked the little boy. 26 'Are you going to see him off at the station?' I asked her. 27 'Would you mind if I looked inside your bag, Madam?' said the policeman. 28 'If someone fell at your feet foaming at the

to get used to new people. ' (leave mustn't unchanged) 16 'The steak is overdone again. I'm not complaining; I'm just pointing it out,' said her husband. 17 'They couldn't open the safe on the spot so they carried it away with them,' the night watchman reported. 18 'If you saw my father, you'd recognize him at once. He is the most extraordinary-looking man,' she said to me. 19 'I found an old Roman coin in the garden yesterday,' he said, 'and I'm going to take it to the museum this afternoon.' 20 He said, 'I got out of my boat, leaving the engine running, but while I was standing on the quay the gears suddenly engaged themselves and the boat went straight out of the harbour with no one on board.' 21 Then Macbeth enters and says, 'I have done the deed.' 22 The advertisement said, 'If you arrange these slogans in the correct order you may win twenty pounds a week for life.' 23 My brother said, 'You may take my car if you like. I shan't be needing it tomorrow or the day after.' 24 'Yesterday Tom and I went to look at a house that he was thinking of buying. It was rather a nice house and had a lovely garden but Tom decided against it because it was opposite a cemetery,' said Celia. 25 He said, 'My wife wants to take a job but I'd rather she concentrated on our home.' 26 'I don't know what your father will say when he sees what a mess your puppies have made of this five-pound note,' said my mother. 27 'It's high time you passed your test; I am tired of driving round with an L-plate on the front of the car,' my sister said. 28 He said, 'If I press my ear against the wall I can hear what the people in the next flat are saying.'

82 Indirect speech: questions

Put the following into indirect speech.

previous landlady?' he asked me. 15 'Have you ever been convicted of driving while under the influence of drink?' she asked him. 'No,' he said. 16 'Do you have many suicides in your country? Do you think suicide is a crime?' the students were asked. 17 'Do you think the fog's going to get thicker and what shall we do if it does?' said Tom. 'If it gets worse we'll have to leave the car and walk home,' said his uncle. 18 'Would you like to see over the house or are you more interested in the garden?' she asked me. 19 'Would you like to wait or would you rather come back tomorrow?' said the official. 20 'Shall I be in time?' he asked himself, looking at his watch. 21 'I've just received my son's school report. Would you like to see it?' he asked. 'No,' I said. 22 'Will you be able to guide me or shall I bring a map?' he said. 23 'Shall we ever see each other again?' he said. 24 'When you don't like a film do you stay to the end or walk out in the middle?' she asked. 25 'What makes you think Smith is going to resign? Has he told you so or are you only guessing? Would you like to take over his job?' asked my colleague. 26 'Do you find it stuffy in here, sir? Shall I open the window?' said the waiter. 27 'Did you hear a terrible crash about 3 a. m. this morning?' said my host. 'Yes,' I said. 'What was it?' 28 'If you had to be an animal,' I asked her, 'what animal would you choose to be?'

84 Indirect speech: commands

Put the following into indirect speech.

- 1 He said, 'Get out of my way.'
- 2 'Climb in through the window,' he ordered.
- 3 'Please pay at the desk,' said the assistant.
- 4 'Open your bag, please,' said the store detective.
- 5 'Don't worry about anything, Mrs Pitt,' said her solicitor. 'Leave it all to me.'

mouth would you know what to do?' said the instructor in First Aid.

83 Indirect speech: questions

1 Be careful of questions beginning shall I. 2 'Yes' and 'No' answers are usually expressed in indirect speech by the subject + the appropriate auxiliary verb. e. g. He said, 'Do you like it?' She said, 'Yes.' He asked her if she liked it and she said that she did. Put the following into indirect speech: 1 'Are you going to let me in or aren't you?' said the young man. 2 'Did you go to France for your holidays after all or did you stay at home?' He asked her. 3 'What shall I do with your mail when you are away?' asked his landlady. 'Shall I forward it?' 4 'What would you wish for if a wizard suddenly appeared and offered you three wishes?' said the small boy. 5 'Shall I ever understand women?' He asked himself. 6 'Will you be here for the next ten minutes?' she said. 'Yes,' I answered. 7 'Could I lose five kilos in one week?' the fat woman asked. 'No,' said the doctor. 8 'Shall I ask her to wait?' said his secretary. 9 'Aren't you tired of living in an ice-box?' said the television advertiser. 'Why don't you install our central heating?' 10 'Haven't you got a television set?' he asked. 'No', I said. 'Nobody in our village has got one.' 'How can you bear to live in such a backward place?' he said. 11 'Wouldn't you like to look ten years younger?' said my hairdresser. 'No,' I replied. 12 'Shall I tell him what happened?' she said, 'or shall I say nothing?' 'Why do you ask me?' I said. 'Why don't you ask your solicitor?' 13 'Have you good hearing and sight?' the form asked, 'and do you suffer from dizziness or black-outs?' 14 'Do you know anybody in this area or could you get a reference from your

'Go and get me a paper, and come straight back,' he said to me. 6 'Someone's coming. Get into the cupboard,' she said. 7 'Give way to traffic approaching from your right,' the road sign warned us. 8 'Please send whatever you can spare. All contributions will beacknowledged immediately,' said the secretary of the disaster fund. 9 'Wear a wig and no one will know who you are,' I advised him. 10 'Don't bathe when the red flag is flying,' said the lifeguard. 11 'Don't forget to thank Mrs Jones when you are saying goodbye toher,' said his mother. 12 'Watch the milk and don't let it boil over,' he said. 13 'Don't shelter under a tree in a thunderstorm,' he said. 'The treemight be struck by lightning. '14 'Put the message into a bottle and throw it into the sea,' said mycompanion on the raft. 15 'Read it for yourself if you don't believe what I say,' he told me. 16 'Stop that dog, he's got my slipper!' shouted my mother. 17 'Don't drive too fast or the baby'll be sick,' she said to her husband. 18 'Do make the coffee a bit stronger,' I begged. 'It was terribly weaklast night. '19 'Do something, don't just stand about,' she said to me. 20 'Smell this. Do you think it has gone bad?' she said. 21 'Don't take your coat off. We are going out again in a moment,' shetold him. 22 'Stand by the window and tell me if anyone goes into the house-opposite,' he said. 23 'Don't move till the policeman waves you on,' said the drivinginstructor . 24 'Don't touch it. You will make it worse,' he told me. 25 'Be careful; the steps are very slippery,' I warned him. 26 'Ask him to ring me back,' said the caller. 'Wait a moment,' said the girl, rummaging for a pencil. 'Now couldyou repeat that, please? '27 'Tell them not to work too fast,' said the workman. 'If we finishbefore six we shan't

'6 'Don't use bent coins in a slot machine,' I advised him. 7 'Follow that car,' the detective said to the taxi-driver. 8 'Wash it in lukewarm water,' recommended the assistant. 9 'Have confidence in me,' urged the doctor. 10 'Take me up to the 33rd floor,' he said to the liftman. 11 'Read the notice about life-saving equipment,' advised the air-hostess. 12 'Always cook with butter,' said her mother, 'never use margarine.' 13 'Don't argue with your father,' I said. 14 'Don't make a sound,' he said in a whisper. 15 'Wait for me at the bridge,' said the young man. 16 'Don't eat too much starch,' I advised her, 'and avoid fried food.' 17 'Don't say anything to make her angry,' said my father. 18 Notice: Please do not ask at the desk for change for telephone calls. 19 'Don't forget to feed the goldfish,' Mary said to her brother. 20 'Get your dog a bigger basket,' he said. 21 'Write to me as often as you can,' said his wife. 22 'Put your pistol on the table,' said the crook. 23 'Please book me a seat in a non-smoker,' said the traveller. 24 'Don't forget your sandwiches,' said his mother. 25 'Don't go near the water, children,' she said. 26 'Search the house,' said the police sergeant. 27 'Don't make mountains out of molehills,' he said. 28 'Put down that eun. It's loaded.' he said.

85 Indirect speech: commands

Put the following into indirect speech.

1 'Make good use of your time. You won't get such an opportunity again,' he said to us. 2 'Don't wait till tomorrow,' said the advertisement, 'post the coupon today.' 3 'Be very careful crossing roads,' she said, 'and remember that they drive on the left in England.' 4 'I can't open it. You have a try, Peter,' he said. 5

'he said to me. 11 'Get the car off the road on to the verge if you have a puncture. Don't leave it on the road,' said my father. 12 'If I am not back by this time tomorrow take this letter to the police,' he said. 13 'When you see Mrs Pitt don't forget to thank her,' she said to her husband. 14 'When the bell rings take the meat out of the oven,' my sister said. 15 'If you are taken prisoner,' said the officer, 'give your name, rank and number but refuse to answer any other questions. 16 'When you hear the fire alarm, shut all windows and go downstairs as quickly as possible,' said the schoolmaster. 17 'If the lift should stop between two floors press the emergency button,' he said. 18 'Before you allow anyone to use the Turkish bath remember to ask him if he has a weak heart,' said the senior attendant.

87 Indirect speech: sentences with suggestions

and commands with let

1 First person imperative He said, 'Let's go' usually becomes: a He suggested going though possible in certain cases are: b He suggested that they should go c He urged/advised them to go. He said, 'Let's not go' can be expressed by any of these constructions in the negative; but suggest + negative gerund is slightly less usual than the others and is often replaced by the (b) type of construction or by: He was against going/against the idea/against it. He was opposed to the idea/He opposed the idea, etc. 2 Third person imperative He said, 'let them go,' can become: a He suggested that they should go/suggested their going but usually it expresses an obligation and becomes: b He said that they should go/ought to go. Very occasionally it expresses a command and becomes: c He said that they were to go. 3 Second person

get any overtime. '28 'Prepare to meet your doom. The end of the world is at hand,' said the placard.

86 Indirect speech: commands with if — clauses and time clauses

Commands with if — clauses or time clauses, e.g. 'If it gets cold give him another blanket.' 'When it gets dark light the lantern and hang it out,' can be expressed in indirect speech: I by tell + infinitive + if/time clause (usually in that order). e.g. He told me to give her another blanket if it got cold.

I told him to light the lantern, etc., when it got dark. Sometimes however (as in nos. 5 and 10 below) the tell construction would produce rather a clumsy sentence. It is then advisable to use the say construction below. 2 by say + was to + if/time clause should. e.g. He said that if it got cold I was to/should give her, etc. I said that when it got dark he was to/should light, etc. was to expresses a definite command; should implies advice. Put the following into indirect speech: 1 He said, 'When you are at the butcher's remember to get a bone for the dog.' 2 She said, 'If you feel faint sit down and put your head between your knees.' 3 'If I find your purse what shall I do with it?' he said. 'Keep it till you see me again,' I replied. 4 She said, 'If he arrives before I get back give him something to drink.' 5 'If anyone rings up,' she said, 'say that I'll be back shortly.' 6 'When you are driving always look in your driving mirror before returning right,' said my instructor. 7 'Leave the key under the mat if you go out,' she said. 8 'If you think the room is cold shut the windows,' said my aunt. 9 'If you feel lonely any time ring me up,' he said. 10 'If she doesn't want cabbage ask her if she'd like some cauliflower,

storm has passed,' I said. 18 'It's the government's fault. Let them do something about it,' grumbled my father.

88 Indirect speech: sentences with must, needn't and have to

must, 1st person 'I must' can remain unchanged but usually becomes 'had to' though 'would have to' is better for an obligation which has only just arisen or is likely to arise in the future. e.g. Reading the letter he said, 'Good heavens! I must go at once!' He said, 'If she gets worse I must stay with her.' These would become respectively: He said that he'd have to go, and; He said that he'd have to stay. 'Must I?' usually becomes 'had to'. 'I must not' usually remains unchanged. must, 2nd and 3rd person 'You/he must' usually remains unchanged. 'Must you/he?' usually becomes 'had to'. 'You/he must not' remains unchanged or becomes 'weren't to/wasn't to'. must used for permanent commands or prohibitions or to express advice always remains unchanged. must used to express deduction never changes. needn't 'I needn't' can change to 'didn't have to/wouldn't have to' in the same way that 'I must' changes to 'had to/would have to', but it very often remains unchanged. 'You/he needn't' usually remains unchanged. 'Need you/he?' remains unchanged or becomes 'had to'. have to - Forms with 'have to' follow the usual rules. Remember that 'had to' indirect speech will become 'had had to' in indirect speech. e.g. He said, 'After the lecture I had to rush home.' He said that after the lecture he had had to rush home. Put the following into indirect speech. 1 He said, 'If what you say is true I must go to the police.' 2 He said, 'I must be at the docks at six a.m. tomorrow.' 3 'Must you make such a noise?' he asked. 4 'You mustn't come

suggestions. These are usually made with suggest or with such phrases as: 'suppose you go,' 'why don't you go?' 'what about you going?', etc. In indirect speech these become: He suggested that I should go/suggested my going/advked me to go. let is also an ordinary verb meaning allow. e. g. 'let Hle go!' the boy said to the policeman. The boy asked the policeman to let him go. Put the following into indirect speech: 1 'Let's go to the cinema,' said Ann. 2 The Prime Minister said, 'Let us show the nation that we are worthy of their confidence.' (urged) 3 'Let me stay up a little longer tonight, mother,' begged the child. 4 'I've worked for you for ten years,' said the man. 'What about giving me a rise?' 5 The police officer said, 'Let's leave the wrecked car here for a bit. It may remind other drivers to be more careful.' 6 'I've helped you every time up to now,' said his teacher. 'Why don't you try to do the next one by yourself?' 7 'Let no one speak to that man,' said the strike leader. 'He is a blackleg.' 8 'Tom made this mess. Let him clear it up,' said his father. 9 'Get yourself some new clothes,' I suggested. 10 'I can't go with you today,' said the guide, 'but suppose you go by yourselves? It's quite a safe route.' 11 'Let's give a party,' said Ann. 'Let's not,' said her husband. 12 I said, 'Let's not jump to conclusions. Let's wait till we hear confirmation of this rumour.' 13 'Suppose you stop working now and go to bed?' he said. 'You'll be much fresher in the morning.' 14 'Let the nations forget their differences and work together for peace,' said the preacher. 15 'Let me explain,' she said. 'Don't be in such a hurry.' 16 'Let the children play in the garden if they want to,' she told the gardener. 'I'm sure they won't do any harm.' 17 'Let's stay here till the

needn't tell you how grateful I am,' he said.

89 Indirect speech: sentences with will and shall, would and should

Put the following into indirect speech.

- 1 He said, 'Will you come to tea on Monday?' 'Thanks very much,' I said. 'I'd love to.' (I thanked him and . . .)
- 2 'Will you have another cup of coffee?' said Ann. 'No, thanks,' I said.
- 3 Notice: In the event of an emergency an alarm bell will be rung and all passengers will assemble at their respective assembly points.
- 4 'It's seven,' he said. 'She'll be at home now. What about ringing her up?'
- 5 'Take these letters to the post, will you,' he said, 'and shut the doors as you go out.'
- 6 'Will you help me or shall I ask someone else?' he said.
- 7 'Will you help me, please?' she said. 'I can't lift it by myself.'
- 8 'If he asks me where you are what shall I say?' said the secretary. 'Tell him I've gone away on business,' said her employer.
- 9 'Where shall we all be in ten years' time?' he said.
- 10 'The milkman is at the door. Shall I pay him?' she said.
- 11 'I've broken the teapot. Ann gave me for Christmas. What shall I do?' she asked. 'I should try to get it mended,' I said. (I advised . . .)
- 12 'Would you mind moving your car?' he said.
- 13 'What shall I do if he refuses to let me in?' he said. 'Write a note and push it under the door,' I replied.
- 14 'Will you be quiet for a moment,' said his exasperated mother.
- 15 'Would you mind cooking your own supper tonight?' said my landlady.
- 16 'Look at this dreadful letter. How shall I answer it?' she said. 'I shouldn't answer it at all,' I said.
- 17 Police announcement: Will anyone who saw this accident please ring 741-6300.
- 18 'If you will kindly sit down the fortune-teller

in 'without knocking,' he told us. 5 'Your ticket will cost f5,' I said. 'In that case,' said my nephew, 'I must go to the bank tomorrow.' 6 Park notice: Dogs must be kept on a lead. 7 His father said, 'He must work harder next term.' 8 'You needn't come in tomorrow,' said my employer. 'Take the dayoff.' 9 'I must go to the dentist tomorrow,' he said. 'I have an appoint—ment.' 10 Notice: Passengers must not lean out of the window. 11 He said, 'There must be someone in the house; there's smoke coming from the chimney.' 12 She said, 'When you are a big boy you'll have to tie your own shoes.' 13 'Port wine must never be shaken,' my wine — merchant said. 14 'He hasn't had anything to eat since breakfast; he must be starving,' she said. 15 The official said, 'This passport photo isn't like you at all. You must have another one taken.' 16 'You mustn't play with knives, children,' said their mother. 17 'I needn't get up till nine tomorrow,' I said. 18 Railway regulations: Passengers must be in possession of a valid ticket before travelling. 19 'How did you get your bulldog up the escalator?' I said. 'I carried him,' said Tom. 'You must be very strong,' I said admiringly. 20 'You mustn't tell anyone what I've just told you,' she said to me. 21 'Need I eat it all, mummy?' said the child. 'Yes, dear, you must,' she said. 22 'I had to drive your pigs out of my garden,' she said. 23 'Sticks and umbrellas must be left at the desk,' said the notice in the museum. 24 'Must you do it all tonight? Couldn't you leave some for tomorrow?' I asked her. 25 'When you go through Bayeux you must see the tapestry,' he told me. 26 He said, 'You must walk faster, you are far too slow.' 27 'You mustn't forget to put the stamp on or your friend will have to pay double postage,' he told me. 28 'I

how to work it? I'm not used to electric typewriters,' she said. 12 'You pressed the wrong button,' said the mechanic, 'Don't do it again. You might have a nasty accident.' 13 'What a nuisance! Now I'll have to do it all over again,' he exclaimed. 14 'Suppose you children go out for a nice long walk,' she said. 15 'Hurray, I've passed my exam!' he cried. 'Congratulations!' I said. 16 'Always be polite to people you pass on the way up,' the old politician advised the young diplomat, 'in case you meet them again on your way down.' 17 'Many happy returns of your birthday,' we said. 'Thank you,' said the boy. 18 'You never listen to your mother,' she said in a complaining tone, 'and it's a bit hard after all the trouble I've had bringing you up.' 19 'Welcome home, my dear,' said his wife. 20 'Eat up your nice rice pudding,' she urged. 'You'll never grow big and strong if you don't eat properly.' 21 She said, 'I'll give you £500 to keep your mouth shut.' 22 'Let's wait here till the rain stops,' she said. 23 'Curse this zip-fastener! It's stuck again,' she exclaimed. 24 'If the boys do anything clever you call them your sons,' said Mrs Smith complainingly, 'and if they do anything stupid you call them mine.' 25 'Do you know that the shoes you are wearing aren't a pair?' I said. 'Yes, but I was in a hurry this morning and these were the only ones I could find,' he said. 26 'What about going for a swim?' he said. 'It's quite fine now.' 27 'Ugh! There's a slug in my lettuce. Waiter!' he cried. 28 'Naughty boy!' said his mother, 'you've been fighting again.' 'But I didn't start it, mother,' said the boy protestingly. 'He hit me first.'

91 Indirect speech to direct speech

Put the following into direct speech with the appropriate punctu-

will be with you in a moment,' the girl said.

90 Indirect speech: mixed types

Exclamations, etc. Some exclamations can be changed into indirect speech by merely adding a verb; e.g. He said, 'What a pity!' He said that it was a pity. He said, 'How marvellous!' He said that it was marvellous. Others can best be expressed by: e.g. He exclaimed with delight/horror/surprise, etc. He gave an exclamation of delight/horror, etc. Note: He said, 'Thank you.' He thanked me. He said, 'Curse the fog!' He cursed the fog. He said, 'Good morning!' He greeted me/wished me a good morning. He said, 'Happy Christmas.' He wished me a happy Christmas. He said, 'Congratulations!' He congratulated me. He said, 'Liar.' He called me a liar. Put the following into indirect speech, avoiding as far as possible the verb say and using instead such verbs as: hope, explain, protest, beg, ask, congratulate, interrupt, warn, get, give, introduce, remark, invite, threaten, point out, insist, offer, refuse, accept, curse, advise, assure, answer, agree, admit, etc. 1 He said, 'Don't walk on the ice, it isn't safe.' 2 'Miss Brown, this is Miss White. Miss White, Miss Brown,' he said. 3 'Here's twenty pence. Go and get yourself an ice-cream,' I said. 4 'Please, please, do as I say,' I said. 5 'If I were you I'd pretend to be ill for a fortnight,' I said. 6 Tom: 'I'll pay.' Ann: 'Oh no, you mustn't.' Tom: 'I insist on paying.' 7 'Come in and look round. There is no obligation to buy,' said the shopkeeper. 8 'Have a cigarette,' he said. 'No, thanks,' I replied. 9 'Curse this map! It's led me wrong again,' he said. 10 'Could you come to dinner tomorrow night?' he asked. 'Thanks very much; I'd love to.' 11 'Could you show me

asked her if she'd like to borrow the book but she thanked me and said that she had already read it and hadn't liked it very much. 21 He wanted to know if I was going to the dance and suggested that we should make up a party and go together. 22 I told her to stop making a fuss about nothing and said that she was lucky to have got a seat at all. 23 The clerk in the booking office inquired if I wanted a single or return ticket. I asked if a return was any cheaper. He said it made no difference. 24 My employer hoped I would not be offended if he told me that, in his opinion, I would do better in some other kind of job. 25 The A. A. man told the woman that if her wheels had gone a couple of inches nearer the edge, the car would have plunged into the ravine. 26 He said I mustn't mind if the first one wasn't any good. 27 He asked the crowd if they thought that he was a liar and the crowd shouted that they did. 28 I stopped a man in the street and asked him to help me with my car. The man asked if it would take long, explaining that he was on his way to catch a train. 92 **Passive voice: active to passive**

Put the following into the passive voice. The agent should not be mentioned except in numbers 11 and 28.

- 1 You should open the wine about three hours before you use it.
- 2 Previous climbers had cut steps in the ice and fixed a rope.
- 3 Somebody had cleaned my shoes and brushed my suit.
- 4 We use this room only on special occasions.
- 5 You must not hammer nails into the walls without permission.
- 6 In some districts farmers use pigs to find truffles.
- 7 Someone switched on a light and opened the door.
- 8 Somebody had slashed the picture with a knife.
- 9 They are pulling down the old theatre.
- 10 Why didn't

ation.

1 She asked if he'd like to go to the concert and I said that I was sure he would. 2 She told me to look where I was going as the road was full of holes and very badly lit. 3 They said that while they were bathing they saw someone examining their clothes. 4 I asked if she had looked everywhere and she said that she had. 5 He suggested giving her a bottle of wine. 6 He said that the new carpet had arrived and asked where he was to put it. 7 He said that two days previously an enormous load of firewood had been dumped at his front gate and that since then he hadn't been able to get his car out. 8 They offered me some more wine and I accepted. 9 He said that if I found the front door locked I was to go round to the back. 10 She asked the burglars who they were and who had let them in. They told her to sit down and keep quiet unless she wanted to get hurt. 11 He asked what the weather had been like during my holidays and I said that it had been awful. 12 He suggested going down to the harbour and seeing if they could hire a boat. 13 He said that if I didn't like escalators I could go up the emergency staircase. I thanked him and said that I would do that. 14 He suggested that Tom and I should go ahead and get the tickets. 15 He said that he thought my electric iron was unsafe and advised me to have it seen to. 16 He said that if war broke out he would have to leave the country at once. 17 I asked him if he had enjoyed house-hunting and he said that he hadn't. 18 She said that she was surprised to see that the grandfather clock had stopped and asked if anyone had been fiddling with it. 19 She said that she had tried to ring up her mother several times on the previous day but had not succeeded in getting through. 20 I

1 They feed the seals at the zoo twice a day. 2 Who wrote it? 3 Compare clothes which we have washed with clothes which anyother laundry has washed. 4 He expected us to offer him the job. 5 They showed her the easiest way to do it. 6 Lightning struck the old oak. 7 Tifian couldn't have painted it as people didn't wear that style of dress till after his death. 8 A jellyfish stung her. 9 The author has written a special edition for children. 10 Judges used to carry sweet herbs as a protection against jail—fever. 11 What did he write it with? He wrote it with a matchstick dipped in blood. 12 An uneasy silence succeeded the shot. 13 Did the idea interest you? 14 The lawyer gave him the details of his uncle's will. 15 Beavers make these dams. 16 They used to start these engines by hand. Now they start them by electricity. 17 Most people opposed this. 18 Students are doing a lot of the work. 19 The Prime Minister was to have opened the dry dock. 20 They are to court—martial him. 21 The closure of the workshops will make a lot of men redundant. 22 Anyone with the smallest intelligence could understand these instructions. 23 We will not admit children under sixteen. 24 Boys of sixteen to eighteen are to man this training ship. 25 A rainstorm flooded the gypsies' camp. 26 The howling of wolves kept him awake all night. 27 They think that a scientist should teach science but that any idiot can teach history. 28 Children couldn't have done all this damage.

94 Active to passive with verb + preposition/adverb combinations

In this exercise most of the sentences contain a verb + preposition/adverb combination. The preposition or adverb must be re-

they mend the roof before it fell in? 11 The mob broke all the shop windows in recent riots. 12 The librarian said that they were starting a new system because people were not returning books. 13 The police asked each of us about his movements on the night of the crime. 14 Someone will serve refreshments. 15 People must not leave bicycles in the hall. 16 Members may keep books for three weeks. After that they must return them. 17 The burglars had cut an enormous hole in the steel door. 18 I've bought a harp. They are delivering it this afternoon. (Do not change the first sentence) 19 Someone has already told him to report for duty at six. 20 They rang the church bells as a flood warning. 21 No one can do anything unless someone gives us more information. 22 People are spending far more money on food now than they spent ten years ago. 23 The organizers will exhibit the paintings till the end of the month. 24 They will say nothing more about the matter if someone returns the stolen gun. 25 It is high time someone told him to stop behaving like a child. 26 A thief stole my dog and brought him back only when I offered £20 reward for him. 27 The judge gave him two weeks in which to pay the fine. 28 They make these artificial flowers of silk.

93 Passive voice: active to passive

Put the following into the passive, mentioning the agent where necessary.

Where there is an indirect and a direct object, make the indirect object the subject of the passive verb.

e. g. They gave her a clock.

She was given a clock.

planning regulations.

95 Active to passive with changes of construction

Some of the following sentences when put into the passive require, or can have, a change of construction.

1 a think, know, consider, believe, acknowledge, understand, find, say, claim, report, when used in the passive are often followed by the infinitive. e. g. People say that he is a spy. It is said that he is a spy. or: He is said to be a spy. People say that the war is a spy. It is said that he was a spy. or: He is said to have been a spy. There is normally no difference in meaning between the two forms and the infinitive construction, being neater, is often preferred. b suppose in the passive can similarly be followed by either of these constructions, but there is a difference in meaning here, because the present infinitive used after passive tenses of suppose usually conveys a sense of duty. e. g. It is supposed that you know. People believe that you know. but: You are supposed to know; It is your duty to know. The perfect infinitive, however, does not necessarily convey this sense of duty. i. e. He is supposed to have written it normally means: People believe that he wrote it. It is supposed that he wrote is much less usual and conveys a faint hint of doubt. 2 Note that an infinitive placed after a passive verb is normally a full infinitive, i. e. an infinitive with to. Therefore: He made me work becomes: I was made to work. and: We saw them enter becomes: They were seen to enter. 3 Sentences of the type: I got the garage to mend the puncture are most neatly expressed in the passive by the have + object + past participle construction (see PEG 118). e. g. I had the puncture mended. Put the following sentences into the passive, using an

tained when the combination is put into the passive.

In most of the sentences it is not necessary to mention the agent.

1 The government has called out troops. 2 Fog held up the trains.

(agent required) 3 You are to leave this here. Someone will call

for it later on. 4 We called in the police. 5 They didn't look after

the children properly. 6 They are flying in reinforcements. 7 Then

they called up men of 28. 8 Everyone looked up to him. (agent

required) 9 All the ministers will see him off at the airport. (a-

gent required) 10 He hasn't slept in his bed. 11 We can build on

more rooms. 12 They threw him out. 13 They will have to adopt

a different attitude. 14 He's a dangerous maniac. They ought to

lock him up. 15 Her story didn't take them in. (agent required)

16 Burglars broke into the house. 17 The manufacturers are giving

away small plastic toys with each packet of cereal. 18 They

took down the notice. 19 They frown on smoking here. 20 After

the government had spent a million pounds on the scheme they

decided that it was impracticable and gave it up. (make only the-

first and last verbs passive) 21 When I returned I found that they

had towed my car away. I asked why they had done this and they

told me that it was because I had parked it under a No—Parking

sign. (four passives) 22 People must hand in their weapons. 23

The crowd shouted him down. 24 People often take him for his

brother. 25 No one has taken out the cork. 26 The film company

were to have used the pool for aquatic displays, but now they

have changed their minds about it and are filling it in. (make the

first and last verbs passive) 27 This college is already full. We

are turning away students the whole time. 28 You will have to

pull down this skyscraper as you have not complied with the town

e. g. School notice: This door must be kept shut. Students must keep this door shut.

1 Why don't you have your eyes tested? (see note 3 opposite) 2 This speed limit is to be introduced gradually. 3 The runways are being lengthened at all the main airports. 4 It is now 6 a. m. and at most of the hospitals in the country patients are being wakened with cups of tea. 5 Byron is said to have lived on vinegar and potatoes. 6 Any sturgeon that are caught by British ships must be offered to the Queen. 7 This signpost has been tampered with. 8 The owners went away last March and since then their house-boat has been used continuously by squatters. (use a continuous tense and omit continuously) 9 The damaged ship was being towed into harbour when the towline broke. 10 Have a lift put in and then you won't have to climb up all these stairs. 11 Last year a profit of two million pounds was made in the first six months but this was cancelled by a loss of seventeen million pounds which was made in the second six months. 12 Evening dress will be worn. 13 The ship was put into quarantine and passengers and crew were forbidden to land. 14 Someone will have to be found to take her place. 15 He was made to walk along a chalked line and repeat complicated tongue-twisters. 16 This rumour must have been started by our opponents. 17 My paintings are to be exhibited for the first time by the New Arts Gallery. 18 This scientific theory has now been proved to be false. 19 The car which was blown over the cliff yesterday is to be salvaged today. 20 The house where the dead man was found is being guarded by the police to prevent it from being entered and the evidence interfered with. 21 Why wasn't the car either locked or put into the garage?

infinitive construction where possible. 1 We added up the money and found that it was correct. 2 They claim that this engine is twice as powerful as the previous one. 3 Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake. 4 It is your duty to make tea at eleven o'clock. (use suppose) 5 People know that he is armed. 6 Someone saw him pick up the gun. 7 We know that you were in town on the night of the crime. 8 We believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police. (one passive) 9 You needn't have done this. 10 It's a little too loose; you had better ask your tailor to take it in. (one passive) 11 He likes people to call him 'sir'. 12 Don't touch this switch. 13 You will have to get someone to see to it. 14 It is impossible to do this. (use can't) 15 Someone is following us. 16 They used to make little boys climb the chimneys to clean them. (one passive) 17 You have to see it to believe it. (two passives) 18 You order me about and I am tired of it. (I am tired of . . .) 19 He doesn't like people laughing at him. 20 You don't need to wind this watch. 21 They shouldn't have told him. 22 They say that the rocket travelled six thousand miles and landed in the target area. 23 People believe that he was killed by tribesmen. 24 They are to send letters to the leaders of charitable organizations. 25 We consider that she was the best singer that Australia has ever produced. (one passive) 26 We don't allow smoking. 27 We know that the expedition reached the South Pole in May. 28 Before they invented printing people had to write everything by hand.

96 Passive to active

Turn the following sentences into the active voice. Where no agent is mentioned one must be supplied.

Key نونچی باب

1 Present and past tenses Exercise 7 1 don't build, use 2 is having 3 drinks, is drinking 4 does she do, plays, watches 5 is raining, haven't 6 leaves 7 speaks, don't understand 8 is making, makes 9 wears 10 don't like 11 am wearing 12 is reading 13 am papering 14 is boiling 15 are you enjoying, am enjoying, want 16 do you get, go, am going 17 are you putting, am going, are you coming, do you mind 18 do you owe, I owe, do you intend 19 do you belong, do you read, do you change, I change 20 learns, doesn't seem 21 always buy/am always buying, win 22 do you like, am giving 23 promise, promise 24 do you always write 25 do you love, like, don't love 26 do you dream, dream, eat, have 27 is whistling, is feeling 28 are always complain — ing/always complain 29 are using 30 is always saying/always says, does 31 do you know, falls 32 are you writing, write, do you want 33 are having, wonder, are talking 34 do you believe, don't believe, do you read 35 is making, do you think, doesn't matter, makes 36 is smoking, expect, are building, are always doing/always do, don't you put, remove

Exercise 8 1 does Tom think, thinks, agree 2 does this one cost, it costs 3 do you hear, is blowing 4 do you see, am looking, don't see 5 listens, is always thinking 6 deserts, goes 7 do you under — stand, don't understand 8 do you have, eat, drink 9 rises, see, are picketing 10 are you walking, walk, am hurrying, am meeting, doesn't like 11 wish, keeps, think, wants 12 do you recognize, think, don't remember 13 isn't coming, gets 14 is

went, opened, didn't recognize, wasn't wearing 31 were sitting, was doing, was knitting, were reading, smiled, said 32 Were dancing, broke, stole 33 knew, were looking, hid, went 34 was always buying 35 told, was spending/spent, listened 36 saw, was planting, was

Exercise 13 1 woke, was always getting/always got, went, bought 2 had to, usually grazed/was usually grazing 3 didn't normally chase, made, was crossing, went 4 annoyed, began 5 was carrying, was raining, threw, ran 6 stopped, began, was doing 7 awoke, was sitting, was looking, called, turned, smiled 8 did you interrupt, was having 9 was carrying, heard 10 was taking, noticed 11 were walking/walked, heard, turned, held, stopped 12 arrived, was waiting, was wearing, (was) looking/looked, saw, waved, shouted, was saying/ said, was making 13 escaped, was working, was wearing 14 was travelling, began 15 didn't like, was trying 16 was making, felt, brought, was able 17 saw, was painting, did you like, was only just starting, saw 18 took, was being, were still listening, left/were leaving 19 was, had to, was enjoying 20 were coming, stopped, said, was looking asked 21 saw, were you using, was using, were you riding 22 was knitting 23 was, said, hoped, was enjoying 24 was watering, began, put, went 25 was just writing, remembered, had 26 found, was digging, belonged 27 saw, was hurrying, asked, was going, said, was speaking, wasn't 28 called, was still working 29 came, was smoking, had, threw, hoped 30 noticed, was rising, were you smoking, came, asked 31 was swimming, stole, had to 32 said, were working, wanted 33 said, was building, thought 34 woke, said, thought, was trying 35 did you

waiting, want 15 don't you see, see, am not wearing, does it say, says 16 is always borrowing/ always borrows, remembers 17 do you need, do you feel 18 does it save, take, doesn't matter 19 am saving, am going 20 think, are getting 21 are looking, is just taking 22 does, is always working 23 is he doing, think, is polishing 24 is coming, do you want 25 is Peter getting on, seems 26 is Mrs Pitt looking/does Mrs Pitt look, is smoking 3 (is) dropping 27 leave, arrive, spend, set, sounds, get 28 makes, finds, goes, does not forget, returns, looks 29 finds, recog— nizes, coils, kills 30 does the snake feel, don't know, ends 31 do you end, begins, put, prefers 32 does the word 'catastrophe' mean means 33 are you waiting, am waiting, doesn't open, know, want, starts/is starting 34 are you smoking, don't smoke, am smoking, want, removes 35 owns, don't know, uses, knows, owns 36 do you mind, ask, depends, concerns, refuse

Exercise 12 1 was burning 2 was writing 3 was making 4 left 5 was just leaving 6 was having, got, went 7 stood 8 was playing, insisted 9 was walking 10 was having, lunched 11 wore, carried 12 did you think, liked 13 shared, was always complaining/always com— plained 14 realized, was travelling 15 was playing, threw 16 was just opening, blew 17 was opening, heard, put, crawled 18 was looking, found 19 were you doing 20 were playing, heard, hid, took 21 was cleaning, went, killed 22 didn't allow, was blowing 23 was crossing/crossed, stepped, fell 24 was still lying, saw 25 saw, stopped 26 did you damage, ran, were driving, were going 27 was getting/got, started, fell 28 called, was already getting up 29 was mending/mended, got 30 heard,

was, lost 9 did you like, liked, quarrelled, dismissed, were,
was 10 didn't know, knew 9 have you known, have known 11
hasn't had, have been 12 did you hear, did, did you think 13
didn't know, were, have you been, have been, have you been,
went 14 have you tried, tried, found, started 15 have you seen,
has anything happened, have escaped 16 has Mary fed, fed, did
she give, gave 17 have you known, have known, did he do,
came, was 18 haven't seen, hasn't been, bought 19 has the
plumber been, stayed, did he do, turned, emptied 20 have you
been, have been, did you enjoy, took, did you win, came 21 has
that been, has been, have written, has been 22 have just been,
have you seen, haven't, haven't read, read, was, did Tolstoy
write, wrote, did he write 23 brought, did he do, wanted 24
have you been, have been, did he take, did, did it hurt 25 said,
hasn't phoned 26 have just received, haven't paid, didn't I give,
did, spent/have spent 27 have you been, have just started, did
you find, answered 28 have you finished, have done 29 have cut,
did it happen, slipped 30 did you get, got 31 did you meet, did,
had 32 lost, has been, did he lose, was 33 has been, did you
see, happened, ran 34 phoned, got 35 did not wear, have worn

Exercise 19 1 have walked 2 have been walking/have walked 3
have been walking/have walked 4 have been making 5 have you
made, have made 6 has eaten 7 hasn't stopped 8 has been drink-
ing 9 have pulled 10 have been pulling 11 have you been doing,
have been picking 12 have you picked, have picked 13 have slept
14 has been sleeping/has slept 15 has been riding 16 have ridden
17 has been making 18 have been working/have worked 19 have
heard 20 have been hearing/have heard 21 have been greasing 22

lend, was still reading, didn't know, were still reading 36 came, woke, started, woke, came, said, said, didn't hear, was barking, went, telephoned

Exercise 15 1 have, wound 2 haven't, ate 3 has, fed 4 haven't, have only repaired 5 have done, did 6 haven't, haven't found 7 haveF made 8 haven't, have been 9 haven't, haven't seen 10 have, went 11 have driven, drove 12 hasn't, has, went 13 have, was 14 has, spoke 15 have only spent, have 16 haven't saved, have saved 17 hasn't, went 18 haven't seen, saw, didn't see 19 have, paid 20 haven't, flew 21 bit, has bitten 22 planted, haven't 23 has, wrote 24 haven't, drank, killed

Exercise 16 1 have you lived/have you been living, have lived/have been living 2 lived, went 3 did you wear, insisted 4 left, cut, have worn 5 wrote 6 has written, has just finished 7 Hew, did you see 8 haven't seen 9 hasn't smoked 10 composed 11 did he arrive, arrived 12 did you lock 13 read, enjoyed 14 haven't finished 15 have never drunk 16 have written 17 has stopped 18 have just cleaned 19 left, got 20 did, was 21 has just gone 22 went 23 have you had, had 24 met 25 did you see 26 began, lasted, enjoyed 27 has just begun 28 has the newspaper come 29 arrived, started 30 has been 31 wrote 32 have missed 33 broke 34 has been 35 worked, retired, went 36 have you been, spent, did you have, stopped

Exercise 17 1 haven't seen, told 2 bought, did you pay, paid 3 did you find, found, didn't you leave 4 have lost, have you seen, haven't, did you last wear, wore, left 5 has just left, has been, has never bought 6 left, did he go, didn't see, went 7 served, did that war begin, began, lasted 8 did you vote, voted, wasn't,

playing 30 are launching , are you coming 31 are you going to do
32 am picking 33 are you going, am going, is calling 34 am compet-
ing 35 isn't coming 36 am going to read
Exercise 25 (shall can be replaced by will in these answers .
Contractions may be used.) 1 shall recognize 2 will see/am see-
ing ('tam seeing' implies a definite arrangement) 3 is playing 4 is
coming 5 am going 6 shall know 7 shall owe 8 shall believe 9 am
having 10 will have 11 is being/will be 12 is coming 13 is catch-
ing 14 are you meeting, am meeting 15 are you riding/will you
ride 16 will Mrs Pitt say, won't mind 17 will it matter 18 won't
forget 19 is leaving 20 shall remember 21 Will break 22 will never
forgive 23 will like 24 are laying 25 will see 26 will grow 27
will understand 28 will scratch 29 shall be 30 won't pass 31 is
going 32 am moving 33 will soon forget 34 shall wait 35 won't
write 36 will be

Exercise 26 (shall can be replaced by will. Contractions may be
used.) 1 will go 2 will telephone 3 will send 4 am going to learn
5 are you going to do 6 will call, will translate 7 are you going to
buy, am not going to eat, am going to eat 8 are you going to re-
decorate 9 am going to change, will help 10 are you going to put
11 am going to put 12 are going to do, am going to be 13 am go-
ing to shorten 14 won't lend 15 will cut 16 am going to attend 17
will ask 18 am going to open 19 won't read/am not going to read
20 will ask 21 am going to get 22 are you starting/are you going
to start, am starting/am going to start 23 will make 24 are going
to tow 25 am going to give up/am giving up 26 will say 27 will
lend 28 are going to raffie 29 am going to put 30 will mend 31
will give 32 am going to make 33 am going to shorten 34 am go-

have been polishing 23 have been working/have worked, has never said 24 has been teaching/has taught 25 have taught, have never met 26 have you been, have been pumping/have pumped 27 have pumped 28 have been looking/have looked, haven't found 29 has been coughing/ has coughed 30 have you heard, have known 31 have been trying, have said 32 has been sounding 33 has been raining/has rained, has been postponed 34 has been hoping, hasn't dared 35 have been whispering, have you been helping, has he been helping 36 have you been making, have lost, have been trying, have been throwing

Exercise 20 1 for 2 for 3 since 4 for 5 to 6 since 7 since 8 since 9 for 10 since 11 for 12 for 13 for 14 for 15 since 16 since 17 for 18 since 19 for 20 since 21 since 22 since 23 for 24 since 25 since 26 since 27 for 28 since 29 since 30 for 31 for 32 since 33 for 34 for 35 for 36 since

2 Future and conditional tenses

Exercise 23 be going to is possible in all these sentences, but where the present continuous tense is given in the key, that is the better one to use. 1 am playing 2 is having 3 am going to light 4 are having 5 is being, are you putting, am putting 6 are you going, am going, am not buying/am not going to buy 7 am not going to do 8 am having 9 is coming, are you putting, am putting 10 is starting 11 am spending 12 is going to build 13 are you going to tell, am going to tell 14 is starting 15 is opening 16 is speaking 17 is closing 18 are you having, am having 19 am collecting 20 are taking 21 am giving 22 is singing 23 is going, is flying, is going 24 is seeing 25 is he going to wash 26 is ringing 27 is going to ask 28 are giving, are inviting 29 is playing, is

will be arriving/will arrive 33 will be leaving/is leaving 34 will be using ... and leaving/will use ... and leave 35 will bring, will catch 36 will put

Exercise 30 (In these answers *We won't* can be replaced by *I am not going to/we are not going to* without any change in meaning. It is also grammatically possible to replace *you/he/they won't* by the *going to* form, but this would make the negative much less emphatic. *shan't* is replaceable by *won't*) 1 won't help 2 won't be meeting 3 won't cut 4 won't be cutting 5 won't be coming/isn't coming 6 won't come 7 won't lend 8 won't be speaking/isn't speaking 9 won't work 10 shan't be working 11 won't have 12 shan't be teaching/am not teaching 13 won't speak 14 shan't be writing 15 won't feed 16 won't go 17 won't paint 18 shan't be taking 19 won't borrow 20 won't wash 21 shan't be using 22 won't send 23 won't play 24 won't be singing/isn't singing 25 won't play 26 won't be taking part/isn't taking part 27 won't eat 28 shan't be eating 29 won't ride 30 won't be riding/isn't riding 31 won't give 32 won't be drinking 33 won't open 34 won't tell 35 won't eat 36 won't be wearing

Exercise 31 1 are you going to feed 2 are you letting/are you going to let/will you be letting 3 will you light 4 are you wearing/are you going to wear/will you be wearing 5 will you lend 6 will you come 7 will you have 8 are you having/are you going to have 9 are you going to study/will you be studying 10 will you be speaking 11 will you turn 12 Any one of the four forms is possible here: 'Will you take' implies that the matter has not yet been decided and that the speaker is offering a choice of dates. The other forms would imply that the matter has already been ar-

ing to buy 35 are you going to do 36 am going to give

Exercise 27 1 will you open 2 are you going to do/will you 3 are you going to paint 4 will you read 5 are you going to eat 6 aren't you going to climb 7 will you come 8 will you put 9 will you have 10 are you going to make 11 aren't you going to answer 12 will you come 13 are you really going to read 14 are you going to buy, will you buy 15 will you lend, are you going to fish 16 are you going to finish 17 will you give, are you going to make 18 are you going to leave 19 are you going to bath, will you help 20 will you drive 21 are you going to ride 22 are you going to eat 23 will you have 24 are you really going to call 25 are you going to paint 26 will you be ready 27 will you sit 28 will you do 29 will you be angry 30 are you going to work 31 will you call 32 are you going to walk 33 will you sign 34 are you going to give 35 are you going to explore 36 will you cook

Exercise 29 (shall can be replaced by will in these answers. Contractions may be used.) 1 will be walking 2 will walk 3 shall be bathing 4 will wash 5 shall be doing 6 shall be working/am working 7 will report 8 will be looking 9 shall be thinking/shall think 10 will assemble 11 will meet, will be wearing 12 will leave, shall be going/am going 13 will be debating/are debating 14 will go 15 will be working 16 will post, shall be going/am going 17 will be dancing/will dance 18 will be letting off, and making/will let off, and make 19 will remain 20 shall be sitting, won't be reading 21 will be going/will go 22 will be changing/will change 23 will come 24 will bring 25 shall all be living 26 will be going/will go 27 shall not be playing 28 will be opening/will open 29 will drive 30 shall be entering 31 will hand 32

ished/finish 3 have had 4 have been 5 goes/has gone 6 gets/has got 7 has done 8 have done 9 will see 10 have had 11 shall/will take 12 go 13 have seen 14 goes/has gone 15 won't let 16 shall/will let 17 sees 18 won't hear 19 has passed/passes 20 has sold 21 have swept/sweep 22 will get 23 will give 24 says 25 have returned/return * 26 has been 27 have signed 28 won't know 29 have subsided/subside 30 has left 31 vshall/will have 32 have had 33 shaU/will stay 34 have made 35 has eaten 36 will come/come

Exercise 36 (shall can be replaced by will; both can be contracted.) 1 shall give 2 stand 3 will be 4 shall telephone 5 will arrest 6 will ruin 7 will steal 8 doesn't open 9 shall give 10 shall lend 11 don't go 12 shall be 13 is 14 hears 15 shall make 16 will bury 17 won't be 18 doesn't start 19 won't let 20 shall be 21 won't be 22 will you repay 23 rises 24 works 25 turns/will turn 26 catches 27 don't like 28 will have 29 see 30 will you promise 31 don't believe 32 will you buy 33 shall make 34 shan't be able 35 won't work 36 ring

Exercise 37 (should can be replaced by would in the following answers; both can be contracted.) 1 should type 2 should give 3 would look 4 wouldn't lose 5 wouldn't make 6 would come 7 were 8 would you visit 9 would you do 10 should buy 11 cleaned 12 woulp you be able/could 13 said 14 won 15 would you do 16 knew 17 should have 18 stop— ped 19 would not come 20 would you do 21 should be 22 wouldn't be 23 had 24 did 25 would grow 26 would fall 27 should keep 28 were/was 29 would be 30 should offer 31 got 32 would make 33 shouldn't go 34 would you spend 35 had 36 wasn't/weren't

ranged and that the speaker is merely asking for information. 13 will you be listening/are you going to listen 14 will you help 15 will you come 16 will you lend 17 are you meeting/are you going to meet/will you be meeting 18 will you come 19 will you have 20 will you translate 21 will you be using/are you using/are you going to use 22 will you be going/are you going, will you get 23 will you come 24 will you be passing/are you going to pass/are you passing, shall be spending/am going to spend/am spending, will you get 25 are you going to keep 26 are you travelling/are you going to travel 27 are you going to repair 28 will you hold 29 are you going/will you be going 30 will you kindly explain 31 will you recognize 32 are you sending/are you going to send 33 will you tell 34 are you going/will you be going 35 are you going to type/will you be typing 36 will you look

Exercise 32 (Contractions may be used.) 1 shall 2 will 3 shall 4 shall 5 shall 6 shall 7 shall 8 will 9 shall 10 shall 11 shall 12 will 13 shall 14 will 15 will 16 will 17 will 18 shall/will 19 will, will 20 shall 21 will 22 shall 23 will 24 shall 25 will, shall/will 26 will 27 will 28 will 29 shall/will 30 shall/will 31 shall 32 will, will 33 will 34 shall 35 will, will 36 shall/will

Exercise 33 (will and shall may be contracted.) 1 returns 2 are 3 strikes 4 hears 5 shall/will have 6 comes 7 turn 8 gets 9 won't stop 10 goes 11 will see 12 will be 13 shall/will lend 14 will wake 15 will he ring 16 goes 17 is 18 shall/will give, comes 19 see 20 get 21 shall/will go 22 have 23 will fall 24 goes 25 begins 26 lifts 27 will continue 28 will become 29 won't move 30 will go on 31 learns 32 leap 33 shall/will have 34 get 35 begins 36 arrives

Exercise 35 (Contractions may be used.) 1 have taken 2 have fin-

say, understand 7 to see 8 repeat 9 use 10 ask , use 11 to get , start 12 remember 13 to do 14 to go, wait 15 leave 16 open 17 to wait 18 to smoke 19 (to) move 20 play 21 to accept 22 to arrive 23 know 24 wait 25 tell 26 send 27 go, to meet 28 to have 29 leave, want, to take 30 to go, make, go 31 go, to visit 32 to know, to live 33 not to inform, (to) disobey 34 come, stay 35 take, make, drink 36 to disappoint, let, have

Exercise 42 1 to be 2 wish to make 3 want, to know 4 remember. took 5 to learn, to know 6 to be 7 not to feed 8 see, to speak 9 to travel, to arrive 10 know, to use, show 11 to be 12 open/ opening, move/moving 13 to make, believe 14 to have missed, go 15 shake/shaking 16 to try, to come 17 go, promise, not to tell 18 like to come, walk 19 to ask, to tell, to get 20 to put, (to) keep 21 to pay 22 show, to open 23 say, to say 24 to be 25 want, to tell, to call, to discuss 26 to give, see/be seeing, not to forget 27 open/opening , throw/throwing 28 to carry , help 29 to pick, to handle 30 crash/crashing, burst/bursting 31 to do, wait, to let 32 crow/crowing 33 tell, be, to check 34 come, go, be/have been 35 to learn 36 be, look

Exercise 44 (The following are possible answers. Other introductory verbs are often possible.) 1 He told her to put some coal 2 She told Tom to shut 3 I asked Mary to lend me her pen 4 I advised the boys not to read 5 He advised me not to believe everything I heard 6 asked me to fill up the 7 I told them not to hurry 8 warned Mary not to touch the switch 9 told the bank clerk to put his hands up 10 begged me to do as he said 11 told Peter to help his mother 12 told the children not to make 13 told us to do whatever we liked 14 warned them not to miss their train 15 ad-

Exercise 38 (should in the following answers may be replaced by would; contractions may be used in the affirmative and negative.) 1 should have visited 2 would not have been 3 had arrived 4 had been 5 should have been 6 had not seen 7 would have fallen 8 would you have accepted 9 would not have done 10 had known 11 should have offered 12 would not have stung 13 had realized 14 should have stopped 15 should have reached 16 should not have lent 17 had not sneezed 18 had put 19 would not have got 20 would not have tried 21 had spoken 22 would not have been 23 had known 24 had tried 25 would not have got 26 would not have put 27 had been 28 should have caught 29 would not have turned 30 had looked 31 would have been captured 32 had tried 33 should have taken 34 would have saved 35 had not called 36 would not have burnt

Exercise 39 (In the affirmative and negative shall and should can be replaced by will and would respectively; and contractions may be used. should in sentences 1, 7, 11 however does not change.)
 " 1 find/should find 2 shall have 3 will happen 4 had had 5 will you stay 6 would you choose 7 gets/should get 8 comes 9 will sit 10 didn't talk 11 shall/should I do 12 had read 13 had 14 shall go 15 would you do 16 run 17 will not be 18 comes 19 would not have 20 had worn 21 leaves 22 will fall 23 don't chance 24 should not have bought 25 hung 26 would be able to/could 27 should have brought 28 would have been 29 would not have printed 30 should not buy 31 want 32 won't be 33 would jump 34 would answer 35 had made 36 had known

3 Gerund, infinitive and participles

Exercise 41 1 do 2 sing 3 to swim 4 to live 5 to go, rain 6

the boy not to lean his bicycle against his window 29 told the passengers to cross 30 asked me not to shout 31 asked her to meet him there . . . the following day 32 asked her not to decide . . . but to think 33 asked me to help her 34 told him to open 35 asked the mechanic to mend 36 warned her not to put

Exercise 46 1 too young to have 2 too cold to bathe 3 so kind as to answer/kind enough to answer 4 too old to wear 5 strong enough to support 6 enough money to live on 7 too furious to speak 8 hot enough to boil 9 foolish enough to tell/so foolish as to tell 10 thin

enough to slip between 11 too ill to eat 12 too wide to get through 13 strong enough to dance on 14 too terrified to move 15 big enough to harm 16 strong enough to keep 17 too deep to wade 18 old enough to be 19 rich enough to buy 20 so good as to forward/good enough to forward 21 thick enough to walk on 22 too drunk to answer 23 too cold to have 24 rash enough to set off/so rash as to set off 25 high enough to see 26 old enough to understand 27 too snobbish to talk 28 too thick to push through 29 curious enough to open/so curious as to open 30 too impatient to remain 31 too clever to be caught 32 too dark to see 33 hot enough to fry 34 too bitter to eat 35 so kind as to turn down/kind enough to turn down 36 too cloudy to see

Exercise 47 1 to leave 2 only to find 3 You are to go 4 so kind as to lend/kind enough to lend 5 to mend/to be mended 6 to hear 7 for him to hear 8 It was stupid of me to be rude 9 to play with 10 for everyone to know 11 to sit 12 only to find 13 It was very brave of him to rush 14 to wear 15 He is expected to broadcast 16 to cook in 17 only to learn 18 to open it with 19 seems to have been committed 20 Is he like-

vised his client to read it before he signed it 16 asked her to sing it again 17 Robert's mother told him to brush his hair 18 advised him to buy 19 begged him not to drive 20 reminded his listeners to listen 21 asked her to come with him 22 advised her to cook it 23 warned the lady not to touch 24 told the boys not to argue with him 25 told him to pull as hard as he could 26 ordered the porter to send 27 advised us not to lend 28 told us to make a list of what we wanted 29 told her to look 30 warned the people on the platform to stand clear 31 asked me to see if I could find 32 warned her not to go 33 asked the customer to pay 34 told the children not to point 35 told the man to put the ladder 36 warned her to think well before she answered

Exercise 45 (Other introductory verbs and other indirect objects are usually possible .) 1 My father ordered me to come down at once 2 urged the country/ the people to be patient 3 advised the customer to buy the large tin 4 warned them not to bathe there 5 told the man to turn right 6 asked the customer to go 7 told the travellers to have their passports 8 ordered his men to stand 9 told the boy to translate 10 told her to listen 11 warned me not to believe everything she told me 12 ordered the crowd to keep moving 13 urged me to look 14 warned his son never to lend money to people he didn't know 15 asked the traveller to put his luggage 16 asked his patient to take 17 told him not to spend 18 invited me to tell her 19 told him to look around him 20 asked his mother to give him 10p. 21 asked the man to open his suitcases 22 always told us not to waste 23 asked me to pass 24 told his pupils/the class to dismount 25 asked Mary to put 26 advised her to come in 27 warned the children not to put their hands 28 told

given for any one example. Sometimes the in case construction would also be possible. in case can be followed by should + infinitive, though an ordinary present or past tense is more usual.)

1 so that nobody should/would know or to prevent anyone knowing
2 in case somebody knocks
3 so that repair work may/can continue or to allow repair work to continue
4 so that it wouldn't get broken or to prevent it getting broken
5 so that he wouldn't be recognized or to avoid being recognized
6 so that her fruit wouldn't be stolen or to prevent her fruit being stolen
7 so that I wouldn't overhear or to prevent my overhearing
8 in case you get bitten
9 so that the crew may/can escape or to enable the crew to escape
10 so that my children may/will have
11 so that the cows won't get or to prevent the cows getting
12 so that the call wouldn't be or to prevent the call being
13 so that the birds won't eat or to prevent the birds eating
14 in case there is
15 so that nobody will/can climb or to prevent anyone climbing
16 in case you have
17 so that the snow would/could slide
18 so that everyone may/will understand or to enable everyone to understand
19 so that anyone who finds him will/may know
20 so that the birds would know or to let the birds know
21 in case we are
22 so that the birds won't build or to prevent the birds building
23 in case he forgets
24 so that she wouldn't frighten or to prevent her frightening
25 in case the chimney catches
26 so that I couldn't/wouldn't be able to call or to prevent me calling
27 in case it is
28 so that young children won't be able to turn or to prevent young children turning
29 in case he breaks
30 so that the government may/can discuss or to let the government discuss
31 in case it is
32 so that pedestrians might/could cross or to let

ly to arrive 21 just about to leave 22 You are to be met 23 for
them to have 24 He is said to have been 25 to continue the strike
26 kind enough to translate/so kind as to trans— late 27 for us
to leave 28 It was stupid of you to sign 29 She is said to have 30
to swim 31 He is believed to be 32 He appears to have been killed
33 to realize 34 The earth is said to have been 35 only to discover
36 The murderer is said to be hiding

Exercise 48 (Brackets placed round so as or in order indicate that
though it would be more usual to include these words it would be
possible to omit them (see 308 B). Similarly in some of the other
examples so as or in order could be inserted. This must not,
however, be done in Nos. 5, 6, 17, or 24, nor in 15 unless the
'them' is retained (see 308 B). so as is interchangeable with in
order.) 1 to paint 2 to remind 3 to feed 4 so as not to frighten 5
to put his savings in 6 to drink out of 7 to save 8 so as not to
strain 9 in order to get 10 to tell 11 so as not to get 12 to frighten
13 so as not to make 14 to protect 15 to put on the fire 16 so as
not to disturb 17 to study 18 in order to discuss 19 so as to be
able 20 to elude 21 to prevent 22 to reduce 23 in order to read 24
to watch 25 in order to have 26 in order to keep 27 in order to
learn 28 to buy 29 to warn 30 to avoid 31 to protect 32 so as to be
able 33 to warn 34 to avoid 35 in order to look 36 so as not to
alarm

Exercise 49 (I/we would is replaceable by I/we should. would/
wouldn't in negative purpose clauses is usually replaceable by
should/shouldn't. Where an infinitive phrase is possible the in-
finitive given in the key is not necessarily the only one that could
be used. To save space not more than two possible answers are

should have written 10 wouldn't have come 11 must have been 12 may/might have been, can't/couldn't have been 13 needn't/shouldn't have bought 14 can't/couldn't have been 15 seems to have en—joyed 16 must have been 17 should have stood 18 was to have gone 19 I'd like to have photographed/I'd have liked to photograph/I'd have liked to have photographed 20 must have been 21 may/might have been 22 canst/couldn't have been driving 23 must have taken 24 may/might not have 25 I'd like to have gone/I'd have liked to go/I'd have liked to have gone 26 can't/couldntt have seen 27 may have been 28 may/might have been started 29 must have had 30 may/might have read, can't/couldn't have read, must have told 31 may/might have been waiting 32 must have misheard 33 might have borrowed. 34 I'd like to have asked/I'd have liked to ask/I'd have liked to have asked 35 must have been 36 is said to have been

Exercise 53 1 seeing 2 having 3 to meet 4 to work 5 to see 6 waiting 7 not to touch 8 to lock, going 9 not to speak 10 behav—ing 11 to explain, to listen 12 smoking 13 to know 14 to disguise, dressing 15 to wait 16 showing, to work 17 walking, catch up 18 to understand 19 exceeding 20 playing, doing 21 to inform 22

overhearing 23 smoking, to smoke 24 going, saying 25 writing, waiting 26 to avoid being 27 giving, to speak 28 to persuade, to agree 29 cleaning, to do 30 shutting, sitting 31 sneezing, sitting 32 talking 33 to finish 33 to give up smoking 34 stopping, forgetting to wind 35 realizing, helping 36 to make, rubbing

Exercise 54 1 answering, ring 2 letting, chase, being 3 driving, being driven 4 to start looking 5 lending, to make 6 Lying, sit—

pedestrians cross 33 so that his secretary could/would be able to
34 in case they set 35 so that the rest of the party would know or
to let the rest of the party know 36 so that the meat won't burn
or to prevent the meat burning or in case the meat burns

Exercise 50 (should is replaceable by ought to.) 1 must have
been 2 canst/couldn't have seen, must have dreamt 3 may/might
have broken 4 needn't have carried 5 should have gone 6 were to
have been 7 can't/couldn't have been, must have

been 8 shouldn't have eaten 9 may/might not have under-
stood 10 needn't have given 11 must have escaped 12 shouldn't
have lied 13 may/might have been, can't/couldn't have been 14
must have cooked 15 needn't have brought 16 must have told 17
was to have unveiled 18 may/might have been 19 must have met
20 should have done 21 can't/couldn't have caught 22 needn't
have opened 23 must have betrayed 24 shouldn't have driven 25
could have climbed 26 would have asked 27 should have been
abolished 28 shouldn't/needn't have boiled 29 was to have played
30 may/might have been 31 should have taken 32 must have had
33 may/might/ could have fallen 34 must have been 35 needn't
have translated 36 shouldn't have looked

Exercise 51 (I'd is replaceable by I should. should (obligation)
is replaceable by ought to in numbers 5, 9, 13, 17. may/might
in the affirmative is normally replaceable by could. I was to have
married 2 needn't have repeated 3 seems to have been 4 were to
have set out 5 shouldn't have eaten, may/might have been (may
indicates that the danger is still present; might that it is over). 6
must have worked 7 needn't have brought 8 I'd like to have
bathed/I'd have liked to bathe/I'd have liked to have bathed 9

5 hearing, dropping, to realize 6 to book, to keep, to lose 7 to avoid being, being/to be, waiting 8 to get, to ask 9 making, speak/ speaking 10 to win, cheating 11 firing/to fire, strilcing/ strilce 12 strilce/strilcing, to get 13 ringing/ring, to be coming to open 14 to go, to give 15 to put, (to) watch, change/changing 16 to see, to avoid hitting 17 to be, crackling 18 climbing, to explain, to say, to let, go 19 convincing, to get, leap 20 driving, doing, to do 21 to sit, (to) hear, howling 22 getting, climbing, to do 23 roar/roaring, to move/ moving , waving 24 writing , to do , to go , see 25 walking , to cross, thinking, to chase 26 to be having, thudding 27 getting, to pay 28 to come, standing 29 to like making and fying . . . doing 30 to arrive , rising 31 sawing, fall/falling 32 to see/seeing , crying/ cry 33 jump/jumping, fall/falling 34 to wake, (to) hear, beating 35 beginning to roIUbegin to roll/begin rolling, to do, to stop 36 laughing, slipping/slip

Exercise 57 1 Knowing that he was poor, I offered 2 Having barred the windows, we assembled 3 Becoming tired of my complaints, she turned it off 4 Finding/having found no one at home, he left 5 Hoping to find the will, she searched 6 Having removed all traces of his crime, he left 7 Realizing that he had missed the train, he began 8 Exhausted by his work, he threw 9 Having spent all his money, he decided 10 Having escaped from prison, he looked 11 Having heard the story before, she didnt want 12 Having found the treasure, they began 13 Entering the room suddenly, she found 14 Turning on the light, I was 15 Having visited the museum, we decided 16 Thinking we were lost, he offered 17 Having found his revolver and loaded it, he

ting 7 to go 8 neglecting to take 9 to show, to use 10 going, to see/seeing 11 telephoning, asking, to look 12 hearing, not to en — 'ter 13 to have, writing 14 to answer, replying 15 to pacify, to be pacified, grumbling 16 offering, to leave, (to) work 17 making, to do 18 having to get up 19 to forget, worrying 20 remaining, to help, to stay 21 to run, to have recovered 22 listening, hearing 23 to learn, reading, listening 24 to start, to wait 25 discussing, having reached 26 having, to ride 27 (to) leave, meeting, recognize 28 paying 29 to give 30 interrupting, repeating 31 cutting, to go 32 buying, selling 33 giving, to explain 34 asking, telling, to buy 35 to tell, looking 36 to be, to erupt/erupting

Exercise 55 1 to ride, to do, coming, to come 2 spending, earning 3 being, to apologize 4 to eat 5 working, spending 6 looking, being 7 posting 8 to lock, go, do 9 to learn, saying 10 trying to interrupt, to wait, talking 11 doing, to move/moving 12 leaving, to go 13 to drink 14 being, to wait 15 trying to make, adding 16 going, stay 17 to look, (to) take, looking, to do 18 getting up, walking 19 listening, listening 20 to make/making, to see 21 doing 22 to put, to prevent, climbing 23 taking, to eat 24 ringing, asking, to do 25 waiting, to clear, to set 26 repeat, to make, to do 27 leaving, sending, to tow 28 borrowing, asking, to do 29 to offend, annoying 30 to be able to tell, gazing 31 getting, to walk 32 to ask, to leave 33 setting, having been 34 to go 35 to go, (to) try to save, cutting 36 earn, scrubbing, make, blackmailing

Exercise 56 1 beginning to slip/begin to slip/begin slipping, to save, falling 2 falling, trying to keep 3 to lend, taking 4 to open

have 23 has/has a pentagon got 24 has, does she have 25 have, won't/don't have 26 do you have 27 have you (got), have (got) 28 have you (got), I only have/have only (got), will have 29 have you (got) 30 have you (got), have, haven't (got) 31 hasn't he (got) 32 have, didn't have/hadn't 33 didn't you have 34 do red-haired people always have/have red-haired people always got 35 hasn't (got) 36 have you (got)

Exercise 62 1 are having 2 did you have/had you 3 is having 4 are having 5 does he have, he usually has 6 do you have 7 do you have, have 8 do you have, have 9 don't you have 10 were having 11 did you have/had you 12 are having 13 will you have 14 am having 15 had 16 did you have 17 am having 18 are having 19 was hav — ing 20 do English people always have 21 don't have/haven't 22 are having 23 don't have 24 did you have/had you, had 25 did you have/had you 26 am having 27 does he have 28 did you have/had you 29 had 30 are having 31 didn't have/hadn't 32 are having 33 am having 34 is having 35 does he ever have 36 had, did you have/had you

Exercise 63 1 am having 2 am having 3 had 4 am having 5 had 6 am having 7 are having 8 does he have 9 do you have 10 don't you have 11 do you have 12 am having 13 have the grass cut 14 have it repaired 15 have it shortened 16 am having them typed 17 have it tuned 18 have it cleaned 19 had them dyed 20 have a puncture mended 21 have it set 22 have it (taken) out 23 am having it redecorated 24 had one built/are having one built 25 have my car greased 26 had it seen to 27 had my watch cleaned 28 am having my shoes repaired 29 they had the man arrested 30 he had the car towed 31 they had a new roof put on 32 have my windows

sat 18 Realizing that she couldn't move it alone, she asked 19
 Having fed the dog, he sat 20 Addressing the congregation, he
 said 21 Thinking he had made a mistake somewhere, he went 22
 Looking/having looked through the fashion magazines, I realize
 23 The tree, uprooted by the gale, had fallen 24 People sleeping
 in the next room were 25 Knowing that the murderer was still at
 large, I was 26 Having stolen the silver, he looked 27 Soaked to
 the skin, we reached 28 Sitting/Seated in the front row, and us-
 ing . . . I saw 29 One day, sitting by the fire, you will take 30
 Knowing that the grass was very wet, I didn't like 31 Believing
 that she could trust him, she gave 32 Slates, ripped off by the
 gale, fell 33 The lion, finding his cage door open and seeing no
 sign of his keeper, left 34 The government, trying to tax people
 according to the size of their houses, once put a tax 35 Having
 heard that the caves were dangerous, I didn't like 36 Wearing
 extremely fashionable clothes and surrounded by photographers
 and press men, she swept

4 Auxiliary verbs = \ Exercise 61 (As mentioned in the note, the
 do/did form could be used throughout except in No. 27, and of
 course for the future.) 1 hasn't even (got) 2 has (got) , has/has
 always got 3 don't have, have (got) 4 has (got) 5 haven't you
 (got) 6 did you have/had you 7 has
 the alphabet (got) 8 do the houses have/have the houses
 (got) 9 have you (got), haven't (got) 10 do you ever have 11
 he'll have 12 don't usually have 13 have you (got) 14 don't al-
 ways have 15 hasn't your door (got) 16 have you (got) , have 17
 haven't (got) 18 has (got) 19 have you 20 has this desk (got),
 don't ever have/never have 21 do you ever have 22 do babies

6 may 7 may/might 8 might 9 may 10 may 11 might 12 may
13 may/might 14 may/might , may/might 15 might 16 may
17 may 18 may 19 may/might 20 might 21 might 22 may/might
23 may/might 24 may/might 25 might 26 may/might 27 might/
may 28 may/might 29 may 30 might 31 might 32 may/might
33 might 34 might 35 may/might 36 may/might

Exercise 71 1 — 2 to 3 to 4 to 5 — 6 to 7 to 8 — 9 — 10 to 11 to
12 to 13 (to) 14 — 15 — 16 — , to 17 to 18 to 19 — 20 — 21 to
22 to 23 — 24 to 25 — 26 to 27 — , (to) 28 — 29 — 30 to 31 —
32 to 33 to 34 — 35 to 36 to

Exercise 72 1 has to 2 must 3 has to 4 have to 5 must 6 have to 7
had to 8 has to 9 had to 10 have to 11 must 12 will have to/have
to 13 must 14 has to 15 must/you've got to 16 have to 17 have to
18 must 19 must 20 have to 21 had to 22 must 23 have to 24 must
25 has to 26 must 27 will have to 28 must 29 had to 30 have to 31
will have to 32 had to 33 have to 34 must/will have to 35 must 36
have to

Exercise 73 (Add not to each of the following verbs.) 1 need 2
must 3 must 4 need 5 must 6 must 7 need 8 must 9 need 10 need
11 need 12 must 13 need 14 must 15 must 16 need 17 must 18
must 19 need 20 need 21 must 22 must 23 need 24 must 25 must
26 must 27 need 28 need 29 need 30 need 31 need 32 must 33
need 34 must 35 must 36 need

Exercise 74 (didn't have to is replaceable by didn't need to.) 1
he doesn't have/hasn't (got) to 2 did you have to, 3 I don't have
to 4 they will have to 5 we didn't have to 6 we didn't have to 7
you needn't come 8 I never have to 9 shan't/won't have to 10
you needn't 11 shall we have to 12 you don't have to 13 I didn't

cleaned 33 had my eyes tested 34 have them made 35 had the oysters opened 36 had my ears pierced

Exercise 64 1 is being/will be ruined 2 is to make/is making 3 were 4 being, being 5 were to be/should be extinguished 6 have you been 7 is being pulled down 8 was to put 9 isn't it 10 are to stay 11 should be asked 12 were to 13 I am to go 14 is being carried 15 to be 16 were 17 were to have taken 18 is being taught 19 was, will be, were 20 to be 21 was to have been 22 should be sent 23 will there be 24 had been 25 is to open/is opening 26 were being taken 27 was to have been 28 would you be 29 is to be/is being/will be 30 was to have run 31 was still being painted 32 should be printed 33 are being/have been translated 34 were 35 was to do 36 is to be

Exercise 65 1 can, could, can't/couldn't 2 will be able to 3 won't be able to 4 can't, can't or couldn't, couldn't 5 shall/will be able to 6 will never be able to 7 couldn't, can't 8 will you be able to 9 won't be able to 10 could, couldn't 11 can, can, can't 12 can't, can't/couldn't, can't, couldn't 13 could/was able to 14 was able to 15 could/was able to, couldn't/wasn't able to 16 were able to 17 were you able to/could you 18 couldn't/wasn't able to 19 was able to 20 were able to 21 could/was able to 22 was able to 23 was able to 24 was able to 25 could/can, could 26 could, couldn't 27 could, couldn't, can't 28 could 29 couldn't/wouldn't be able to 30 couldn't/wouldn't be able to 31 could/can, can't 32 could, could 33 could/can, couldn't/can't 34 couldn't/wouldn't be able to 35 couldn't/wasn't able to, couldn't/wasn't able to 36 could

Exercise 66 1 may 2 might 3 may/might 4 may/might 5 might

32 will 33 will, will 34 shall 35 shall, will 36 shall, will

Exercise 77 (should is replaceable by would in Nos. 6, 14, 26, 27, 30.) 1 would 2 would 3 should 4 would 5 would 6 should 7 should 8 would, would 9 should 10 would 11 should 12 would 13 would 14 should 15 should 16 would 17 should 18 would, would 19 should 20 would 21 should 22 should 23 should 24 should 25 should 26 should 27 should 28 would 29 should 30 would, should 31 should. 32 should, should 33 would 34 should 35 should 36 should

Exercise 78 1 should, should 2 would 3 should 4 should 5 would, would, would, would 6 should 7 should 8 would, would 9 should, should/would 10 should 11 would 12 would, should 13 should 14 should 15 should, would 16 should 17 should 18 would, should 19 should 20 would 21 should 22 would 23 should 24 should 25 would, would 26 would 27 should 28 would 29 should 30 should, should, would 31 should 32 should 33 should/would, would 34 would, would 35 should 36 would, would

Exercise 79 (In Nos. 1, 7, 10, 20, 23 should is replaceable by ought to. may is replaceable by might.) 1 should have been 2 may have written, couldn't have written 3 must have fallen 4 may have liked 5 must have been 6 needn't have sent 7 might/should have left 8 may have been 9 can't/couldn't have been, may have been 10 shouldn't have gone 11 may have been 12 were to have been 13 should/would have been 14 needn't have carried 15 may have been 16 can't/couldn't have been, must have been 17 must have been 18 was to have been 19 would have reached 20 should have crossed 21 should have brought 22 may have been 23

have to 14 we donst have to 15 have you got to/must you/need you 16 do people have to 17 shall I have to 18 don't have to 19 we didn't have to 20 women don't have to 21 we didn't have to 22 do we have to/must we 23 did you have to 24 I didn't have to 25 you won't have to 26 they didn't have to 27 do you have to/have you got to 28 did you have to/had you to 29 didnst have to 30 shall I have to 31 do you have to/have you got to 32 I didn't have to 33 do French children have to 34 did you have to 35 I didn't have to 36 did you have to

Exercise 75 1 must have been 2 can't/couldn't have been 3 needn't have helped 4 must have left 5 canst/couldn't have escaped 6 needn't have given 7 can't/couldn't have seen 8 must have started 9 can't have been 10 needn't have bought 11 must have been 12 must have borrowed 13 must have stolen 14 needn't have done 15 needn't have said 16 canst/couldn't have understood 17 canst/ couldn't have done 18 must have been 19 can't/couldn't have walked 20 can't have been 21 must have been 22 canst/couldn't have had 23 needn't have watered 24 must have taken 25 can't/ couldn't have been 26 can't/couldn't have watered 27 must have been 28 neednst have sent 29 needn't have made 30 must have been 31 must have been 32 can't/couldn't have seen 33 can't/ couldn't have come 34 needn't have lent 35 needn't have spoken 36 must have fallen

Exercise 76 (shall is replaceable by will in Nos. 6, 11, 13, 28, 29, 34, 35.) 1 shall 2 will 3 shall 4 will 5 shall 6 shall 7 shall 8 will '9 will 10 shall 11 shall 12 will 13 shall 14 will 15 will 16 shall 17 will 18 shall 19 will 20 will 21 shall 22 shall 23 will 24 will 25 shall 26 will 27 shall 28 shall, will 29 shall 30 will 31 will

got 21 that he was ... and he did all his own 22 told Joan she
 could keep that one if she liked as she had 23 said he was going
 fishing with his mother that afternoon and they were just going
 24 told her she had got my umbrella and that hers was in her
 bedroom 25 explained to his client that he knew what they had
 said because he had put 26 said shed sit up till she came in but
 she hoped she wouldn't 27 told me that if I gave him ... he'd ...
 ... for me 28 said she had ... it didn't seem ... to her weight
Exercise 81 (See note above key to Exercise 80.) 1 he hadn't
 been able to get ... he had lost his key, so he had had to break
 2 the mirror was there ... he could see himself when he was
 dancing 3 she had written to him two days before and wondered
 why he hadn't 4 told the customer that it was quite ... he used
 ... himself 5 told me if he had spoken to his father as I spoke
 to mine/him, his father would have beaten him 6 told him that if
 he wanted ... he'd better apply ... or She advised him to ap-
 ply early if he wanted ... She had once tried ... theatre had
 been booked out 7 they had walked ... the previous night ...
 protest about their rent. The Minister had been ... had
 promised ... what he could for them 8 said/threatened she
 would drop dead one day ... hesd be sorry 9 her new house was
 supposed ... she hadn't seen 10 says that he will wear his heart
 upon his sleeve 11 if it rained that afternoon it would be ... the
 following day 12 told her guest she had meant ... she had
 plugged ... She was always doing 13 he had been intending ...
 ... the next day ... didn't think he'd be 14 told Mrs Smith that
 he was sure her son would do ... he had done very well at the
 school 15 complained to/told her husband that nothing she could

must have been 24 can't/couldn't have been, must have been 25
 may not have heard 26 could have put you up 27 would have fall-
 en 28 should have checked 29 needn't have apologized 30 may not
 have realized 31 might/should have thanked 32 was to have gone
 33 should have warned 34 would have known 35 needn't have
 bought 36 must have been

5 Indirect speech and passive voice

Exercise 80 (In many of these examples other pronouns would be
 equally correct . . .) 1 told her I had . . . to show her 2 said noth-
 ing grew in her garden . . . it never got 3 told his mother he was
 going away the next day 4 said . . . he had been . . . he hadn't had 5 remarked that it wasn't so
 foggy that day as it had been the day before 6 said that the un-
 derpass was being opened two days later 7 said they had moved
 into their fiat but they didn't like it . . . their last one 8 said
 they had . . . it didn't work 9 said that . . . windows of his fiat
 he could see 10 said she'd no idea what the time was but she'd di-
 al 11 his wife had just been made 12 said she'd come with me . . .
 she was 13 said he had . . . that afternoon . . . he hadn't
 done his homework 14 warned her if she let . . . it would scorch
 her clothes 15 pointed out I hadn't given him . . . bill was . . .
 I'd paid him 16 Englishmen made . . . they were 17 she liked
 men . . . she didn't like them . . . She preferred . . . men
 looked silly 18 The report stated that the new Rolls Royce ran . . .
 all you could hear was . . . The Managing Director replied
 that they'd have 19 said she didn't know . . . her plums. She
 supposed (said she supposed) she'd have to . . . trouble was no
 one in her family ate 20 explained they liked working . . . they

where he had been the previous night 12 asked the boy what else he had seen 13 asked whether he had done that sort 14 asked her if she could read 15 inquired whether they had understood what I had said to them 16 asked the customer if he was being attended to 17 asked him if he would go . . . the others did 18 asked Mary if she saw what he saw 19 inquired who had left 20 asked him if he had gone . . . and if he wanted 21 asked why his house was . . . and whether his father had been 22 asked if he was leaving that day or the following morning 23 asked how far it was and how long it would take 24 asked if he could speak to Mrs Pitt. The au pair girl answered that she was afraid she was out and asked if she could take 25 asked the little boy if he was sorry for what he had done 26 asked her if she was going to 27 asked the woman if she would mind if he looked inside her bag 28 asked the student if he would know what to do if someone fell at his feet

Exercise 83 (When it is not clear who is being addressed a first or third person pronoun is used in the answer. Other nouns or pronouns would of course be equally good.) I asked if I was going to let him in or if I wasn't 2 asked her if she had gone to France for her holidays or if she had stayed 3 asked what she was to do/should do with his mail while he was away and whether she was to/should forward it 4 asked (her) what she would wish for . . . appeared and offered her 5 wondered if he would ever understand 6 asked (me) if I would be there . . . and I said that I would 7 asked her doctor if she could lose/would be able to lose . . . He replied that she couldn't 8 wanted to know if she was to ask/should ask her to wait 9 asked viewers if they were not tired

do pleased his father. She (said that she) didn't think he liked her. Her husband answered that she mustn't think that; it was ... he was old and found it 16 told her the steak was ... and said/added that he was not complaining but was just pointing 17 reported that the burglars hadn't been able ... had carried it 18 told me that if I saw her father I'd recognize him ... He was 19 he had found ... the day before ... was going ... that afternoon 20 he had got out ... while he was standing ... the gears (had) engaged ... and the boat had gone/went 21 says he has done 22 said that if we arranged these/those slogans he might win 23 told me I might take his car if I liked and said he wouldn't be needing it the next day or the day after that 24 that the previous day Tom and she had gone/been to look ... he was thinking ... It was rather ... and had a lovely garden but Tom had decided ... was opposite 25 his wife wanted to take ... he'd rather she concentrated on their home 26 she didn't know what my father would say when he saw ... my puppies had made of the f5 note. 27 it was high time I passed my test; she was tired 28 said that if he pressed his ear ... he could hear ... were saying

Exercise 82 (if is interchangeable with whether except in conditional sentences.) 1 asked why he was looking 2 asked who had put 3 asked which of them knew 4 asked why he had travelled 5 inquired how she could possibly run in her high-heeled shoes 6 asked them what their new house was like 7 asked where he was supposed to go 8 asked him whose car he had borrowed the previous night 9 asked me what she was/had been wearing when I saw her last 10 asked who owned the revolver 11 asked Mr M.

asked her to open her 5 told Mrs P. not to worry but (to) leave it all to him 6 advised him not to use 7 told the taxi—driver to follow the 8 recommended me to wash 9 urged me to have confidence in him 10 told the lift—man to take him 11 advised the passengers to read 12 told her always to cook . . . and never to' use 13 told him not to argue with his 14 whispered to me/told me not to make 15 told her to wait for him 16 advised her not to eat . . . and to avoid 17 advised me not to say 18 the notice told/asked people not to ask 19 told her not to forget 20 advised/told me to get my dog 21 asked him to write to her as often as he could 22 told him to put his 23 asked the porter to find him 24 told me not to forget my 25 told the children not to go 26 told his men to search 27 told her not to make 28 told him to put the gun down as it was loaded

Exercise 85 (See note above key to Exercise 83.) 1 advised us to make . . . our time as we wouldn't get 2 Urged the public not to wait till the following day but to post . . . that day 3 warned them to be . . . and to remember that they drove/drive 4 said he couldn't open it and told/asked Peter to have 5 told me to go and get him . . . and to come 6 said someone was coming and told/urged me to get 7 warned us to give way to . . . the/our right 8 begged us to send whatever we could spare and said that . . . would be 9 advised him to wear a wig and said that then no one would know who he was 10 warned/told them not to bathe when the red flag was flying 11 told him not to forget/reminded him to thank . . . when he was saying 12 told me to watch . . . and not to let it 13 told/advised/ warned me not to shelter . . . as the tree might 14 told me to put the message . . . and throw 15

and why they didn't . . . the firm's central heating 10
asked if I hadn't got a television set and I said that I hadn't and
that nobody in our village had one. He asked me how I could
bear 11 asked me if I wouldn't like to look . . . and I said that I
wouldn't 12 asked if she should tell him what happened or if she
should say . . . I asked her why she asked me and why she
didn't ask 13 asked (him) if he had good . . . and if he suffered
14 asked (me) if I knew anyone in that area or if I could get . . .
my previous 15 asked (him) if he had ever been convicted . . .
and he said that he hadn't 16 The students were asked if they
had/there were many . . . in their . . . and if they thought 17
asked (his uncle) if he thought the fog was going . . . and what
they should do if it did. His uncle said that if it got worse they'd
have 18 asked (me) if I'd like to see . . . or if I was 19 asked if
I'd like to wait or if I'd rather come back the next day 20 He
wondered if he would be 21 said he had just received his son's . . .
and asked if I would like . . . I replied that I wouldn't 22
asked if she would be able to guide him or if he should bring 23
wondered if they would ever see 24 asked whether I stayed to the
end or walked out in the middle when I didn't like a film 25 asked
(me) what made me think that Smith was going to resign and if
he had told me so or if I was only guessing and whether I would
like 26 asked (me) if I found it stuffy/found the room stuffy and
if he should open or offered to open 27 asked (me) if I had heard
. . . that morning. I said that I had asked what it was/had been
28 asked her what animal she would choose to be if she had to be
Exercise 84 (See note above key to Exercise 83.) I told me to get
out of his 2 ordered me to climb 3 asked the customer to pay 4

shut the window if I thought the room was cold or said that if I
 thought the room was cold I was to shut/should shut 9 told me
 to ring him up if I felt lonely any time or said that if I felt lonely
 I was to ring 10 said that if she didn't want cabbage I was to ask
 her if she'd like (the tell construction would be very clumsy
 here) 11 told me to get the car off the road if I had a puncture
 and not to leave or said that if I had a puncture I was to get/
 should get . . . and not leave 12 told me to take the letter to the
 police if he wasn't back by that time the next day or said that if
 he wasn't back by . . . I was to take 13 told her husband not to
 forget/reminded him to thank Mrs Pitt when he saw her 14 told
 me to take the meat out of the oven when the bell rang or said
 that when the bell rang I was to take/should take 15 told them to
 give their . . . if they were taken . . . but to refuse to answer or
 said that if they were taken . . . they were to give . . . but
 (to) refuse 16 told them to shut . . . and go . . . when they
 heard or said that when they heard . . . they were to shut . . .
 and go 17 told me to press . . . if the lift should stop/stopped or
 said that if the lift should stop/stopped . . . I was to press/
 should press 18 told me to ask a client if he had a weak heart be-
 fore I allowed him or said that before I allowed anyone . . . I
 was to ask/should ask . . .
 Exercise 87 1 suggested going/that they should go 2 urged his col-
 — leagues to show the nation that they were worthy of their 3
 begged his mother to let him stay . . . that night 4 said he had
 worked for me . . . and suggested that I should give him 5 sug-
 gested leaving/that they should leave the wrecked car there . . .
 and said it might remind 6 told his pupil that he had helped him :

told me to read it for myself if I didn't believe what he said 16
 shouted to me to stop/told me to stop the dog as he had got her
 17 told her husband not to drive . . . or the baby would 18
 begged her to make . . . stronger and said that it had been . . .
 on the previous night 19 told me to do something and not just
 stand 20 told me to smell it and asked it I thought it had gone
 bad 21 told him not to take his coat off as they were going 22
 told her to stand by the window and tell him if anyone went 23
 told his pupil not to move till . . . waved him on 24 told me not
 to touch it as I would only make 25 warned her to be careful as
 the steps were 26 asked the girl to ask him to ring him back. The
 girl asked him to wait . . . and then to repeat the message 27 . . .
 . . . told him to tell them not to work . . . as if they finished . . .
 they wouldn't get 28 The placard warned us to prepare to meet
 our doom as the end of the world was at hand.

Exercise 86 (See note above key to Exercise 83.) 1 told me to re-
 member to get . . . when I was or reminded me to get, etc. or
 said that when I was at . . . I was to get 2 told/advised me to sit
 down and put my head between my knees if I felt or said that if I
 felt faint I was to put/should put 3 asked what he was to do/
 should do with my purse if he found it. I told/asked him to keep
 it till he saw me 4 told me/asked me to give him a drink if he ar-
 rived before she got back or said that if he arrived before she got
 back I was to give 5 told me if anyone rang up to say or said that
 if anyone rang up I was to say 6 told me when I was driving al-
 ways to look in my mirror or said that when I was driving I
 should always look 7 told me to leave the key under the mat if I
 went out or said that if I went out I was to leave 8 told me to

port wine must never be shaken 14 said he hadn't had . . . and
 that he must be 15 said that the passport photo wasn't like her
 and that she must have/would have to have 16 told the children
 that they — must not 17 said that I needn't/wouldn't have to/
 didn't have to get up till nine the next day 18 The railway regula-
 tions said passengers must be 19 asked (Tom) how he had got
 his dog . . . Heqom said that he had carried him. I said that he
 must be 20 said that I mustn't/wasn't to tell anyone what she
 had just told me 21 asked (his mother) if he had to/need eat it
 all and she said that he must/had to 22 said that she had had to
 drive his pigs out of her garden 23 The notice said that sticles . .
 . must be left 24 asked her if she had to do it all that night or if
 she couldn't leave some for the following day 25 told me that
 when I went through Bayeux I must see 26 said that I must walk
 faster, I was far too slow 27 told me that I mustn't forget . . .
 or my friend would have to pay 28 said that he needn't tell me
 how grateful he was

Exercise 89 1 invited me to come/asked me to come/asked (me)
 if I would come . . . I thanked him and said that I'd love to 2 of-
 fered me another cup/asked me if I would like another cup. I
 thanked her and said that I wouldn't/thanked her and refused 3
 The notice said that . . . an alarm bell would be rung and all
 passengers were to assemble 4 suggested ringing her up/that
 they should ring . . . as it was seven and she would be 5 told
 him to take the letters . . . and to shut the door as he went out
 6 asked if I would help him or if he should ask someone 7 asked
 him to help her . . . as she couldn't lift it by herself 8 asked
 what she was to/should say if the client asked her where her em-

. . . up to then and suggested that he should try . . . by himself
 7 said that no one was to speak to the man as he was 8 said that
 Tom had made the mess and that he was to clear 9 suggested
 that she should get herself or advised her to get 10 said he
 couldn't go with them that day but suggested their going/that
 they should go by themselves as it was 11 suggested giving a party
 but her husband was against the idea/opposed the idea 12 ad-
 vised them not to jump . . . and suggested waiting until they
 heard . . . of the rumour or suggested that they shouldn't jump
 . . . but wait. 13 advised her to stop/suggested that she should
 stop working and go . . . adding that she'd be or because she'd
 be 14 urged/exhorted the nations to forget . . . and to work 15
 begged him to let her explain and asked him not to be 16 told the
 gardener to let the children play . . . if they wanted to adding
 that she was sure they wouldn't do 17 suggested staying there/
 that we should stay there till the storm had passed 18 grumbled
 that it was . . . and said that they should do . . .

Exercise 88 1 said that if what she said was true he would have to
 go/must go 2 said that he had to/would have to/must be . . .
 the following day 3 asked if he had to make 4 told us that we
 mustn't come 5 told my nephew that his ticket would cost . . .
 he said . . . he would have to go . . . the next day 6 The park
 notice said that dogs must be kept 7 said that he must/would
 have to work 8 said that I needn't come in the following day and
 told me to take 9 said he had to/must go . . . the following day
 as he had 10 The notice said that passengers must not lean 11
 said that there must be . . . because there was smoke 12 told
 him that when he was . . . he would have to tie his 13 said that

go 15 exclaimed delightedly/with delight that he had passed . . .
 I congratulated him 16 advised the young man always to be polite
 to people he passed . . . in case he met them again on his way 17
 We wished him many happy returns of his birthday and he
 thanked us (for our good wishes) 18 complained to her children
 that they never listened to her and that it was . . . trouble she
 had had bringing them up 19 His wife welcomed him warmly/ af-
 fectionately 20 urged him to eat up his . . . pointing out/assur-
 ing him that he would never grow . . . if he didn't eat 21 offered
 him t500 . . . his mouth 22 suggested waiting/that they should
 wait there till the rain stopped 23 cursed the zip — fastener for
 getting stuck 24 complained that if the boys did . . . he called
 them his sons, but if they did . . . he called them hers 25 asked
 him if he knew that the shoes he was wearing weren't a pair. He
 replied that he did know but that he had been . . . that morning
 and those had been . . . he could/had been able to find 26 sug-
 gested going for a swim as it was quite fine 27 exclaimed with
 disgust that there was a slug . . . and summoned/called the
 waiter 28 called him a naughty boy (and scolded him) for fight-
 ing again. The boy protested that he hadn't started it, for the
 other boy had hit him first

Exercise 91 1 'Would he like to go to the concert?' she asked.
 'I'm sure he would,' I said. 2 'tLook where you are going,' she
 said to me; 'the road is full of holes and very badly lit.' 3 'While
 we were bathing,' they said, 'we saw someone examining our
 clothes.' 4 'Have you looked everywhere?' I asked. 'Yes, 3 she
 said. 5 tLet's give her/what about giving her a bottle of wine?'
 he said. 6 fThe new carpet has arrived. Where am I to put/shall

ployer was. Her employer told her to tell him that he had gone 9
wondered where they would all be 10 said that the milkman was
. . . and asked if she was to/should pay him 11 said that she had
broken the teapot Ann had given her . . . and asked what she
should do. I advised her to try and get it mended 12 asked (me)
if I would mind moving my car 13 asked what he was to/should
do if he refused to let him in. I told him/advised him to write a
note and push it 14 told him to be 15 asked (me) if I would mind
cooking my own supper that night 16 asked me to look at the
dreadful letter she had got and asked how she should answer it. I
advised her not to answer/said that she shouldn't answer 17 The
police asked anyone who had seen the accident to ring 18 The girl
said that if I would sit/if I sat down the fortune-teller would be
with me in a moment

Exercise 90 (The following are possible answers only; in most
cases there are several alternatives.) 1 warned me not to walk on
the ice as it wasn't safe 2 introduced Miss W. to Miss B. 3 gave
him twenty pence and told him to go and get 4 begged him to do
as I said 5 advised him to pretend to be 6 Tom offered to pay.
Ann protested, but he insisted (on paying) 7 invited us to come
in and look round, assuring us that there was 8 offered me a
cigarette, which I refused or I thanked him and refused 9 cursed
the map for leading him wrong 10 invited me to dinner the fol-
lowing night. I accepted with thanks/thanked him and accepted
11 asked him to show her how to work it, explaining that she
wasn't 12 told her that she had pressed . . . and warned her not
to do . . . as/or she might have 13 exclaimed with annoyance/
disgust that he'd have to 14 suggested that the children should

her. 23 'Do you want a single or a return ticket?' asked the clerk in the booking office. 'Is a return any cheaper?' I asked. 'It makes no difference,' he said. 24 'I hope you won't be offended,' my employer said, 'if I tell you that in my opinion you would do better in some other kind of job.' 25 'If your wheels had gone a couple of inches nearer the edge, madam,' said the A. A. man, 'the car would have plunged into the ravine.' 26 'You mustn't mind if the first one isn't any good,' he said to me. 27 'Do you think I am a liar?' he asked the crowd. 'Yes!' they shouted. 28 Stopping a man in the street, I asked, 'Would/could you help me with my car?' 'Would/will it take long?' asked the man. 'I'm on my way to catch a train.'

Exercise 92 1 wine should be opened . . . before it is used 2 steps had been cut and a rope fixed 3 my shoes had been cleaned and my suit brushed 4 room is used 5 nails must not be hammered 6 pigs are used 7 a light was switched on and the door opened 8 picture had been slashed 9 theatre is being pulled down 10 wasn't the roof mended 11 All the shop windows were broken 12 system was being started because books were not being returned 13 each of us was asked 14 refreshments will be served 15 bicycles must not be left 16 books may be kept . . . they must be returned 17 hole had been cut 18 it is being delivered 19 he has already been told 20 bells were rung 21 nothing can be done unless we are given more 22 far more is being spent on food now than was spent 23 paintings will be exhibited 24 nothing more will be said . . . if the . . . gun is re— turned 25 he was told 26 My dog was stolen and brought back only when 26 reward was offered. 27 he was given two weeks 28 flowers are made

I put it? ' he asked. 7 'An enormous load of firewood was dumped at my front gate two days ago. Since then I haven't been able to get my car out,' he said. 8 'Have some more wine?' they said. 'Yes, please ' I replied. 9 'If you find the front door locked, go round to the back,' he said to me. 10 'Who are you?' she asked the burglars, and who let you in?' 'Sit down and keep quiet,' they replied, 'unless you want to get hurt.' 11 'What was the weather like during your holidays?' he asked. 'It was awful,' I answered. 12 'Let's go down to the harbour and see/What about going down . . . and seeing if we can hire a boat?' he suggested. 13 'If you don't like escalators, you can go up the emergency staircase,' he told me. 'Thank you, I'll do that,' I said. 14 'What about Tom and you going ahead and getting the tickets?' or 'Suppose you and Tom go ahead and get the tickets?' he said to me. 15 'I think your electric iron is unsafe. I advise you to have it seen to' or 'I should have it seen to' or 'Why don't you have, etc.?' he said to me. 16 'If war breaks/broke out, I shall/should have to leave the country at once,' he said. 17 'Did you enjoy house hunting?' I asked him. 'No,' he said. 18 'I am surprised to see that the grandfather clock has stopped. Has anyone been fiddling with it?' she asked. 19 'I tried to ring up my mother several times yesterday, but I didn't succeed in getting through,' she said. 20 'Would you like to borrow this book?' I asked her. 'I have read it already, thank you, and didn't like it very much.' 21 'Are you going to the dance? Let's make up a party and go together' or 'What about making up a party and going together?' he said. 22 'Stop making a fuss about nothing, ! You are lucky to have got a seat at all,' I told

by her story 16 house has been broken into 17 small plastic toys are being given away 18 notice was taken down 19 smoking is frowned on 20 after a million pounds had been spent the scheme was given up 21 my car had been towed away. I asked why this had been done and was told that . . . it had been parked 22 weapons must be handed in 23 he was shouted down 24 he is often taken for his brother 25 the cork hasn't been taken out 26 pool was to have been used . . . it is being filled in 27 students are being turned away 28 sky-scraper will have to be pulled down as the town planning regulations have not been complied with

Exercise 95 1 money was added up and found to be correct 2 this engine is claimed to be 3 a terrible mistake seems to have been made 4 you are supposed to make tea 5 he is known to be armed 6 he was seen to pick up 7 you are known to have been 8 he is believed to have 9 this needn't have been done 10 you had better have it taken in 11 he likes to be called 'sir' 12 this switch isn't to be/mustn't be touched 13 you will have to have/get it seen to or it will have to be seen to 14 this can't be done 15 we are being followed 16 boys used to be made to climb 17 it has to be seen to be believed 18 I am tired of being ordered about 19 he doesn't like being laughed at 20 this watch needn't be wound/doesn't need to be wound 21 he shouldn't have been told 22 rocket is said to have travelled . . . and to have landed 23 he is believed to have been killed 24 letters are to be the expedition is considered to have been 26 smoking is not allowed 27 the expedition is known to have reached 28 before printing was invented everything had to be written

Exercise 96 1 why don't you get an oculist to test your eyes? 2

Exercise 93 1 seals are fed 2 who was it written by? 3 compare clothes washed by us with clothes washed by any other 4 he expected to be offered 5 she was shown 6 oak was struck by lightning 7 it couldn't have been painted by T. because that kind of dress wasn't worn 8 she was stung by a jellyfish 9 special edition for . . . has been written 10 herbs used to be carried by judges 11 what was it written with? It was written with 12 shot was succeeded by an uneasy silence 13 were you interested by the idea? 14 he was given de— tails 15 dams are made by beavers 16 engines used to be started by hand, now they are started by electricity 17 this was opposed by most people 18 a lot of the work is being done by students 19 dock was to have been opened by the P. M. 20 he is to be court— martialled 21 a lot of men will be made redundant by the closure 22 instructions could be understood by anyone 23 children . . . will not be admitted 24 ship is to be manned by boys 25 camp was flooded by a rainstorm 26 He was kept awake all night by the howling 27 It is thought that science should be taught by a scientist but that history can be taught by any idiot 28 All this damage couldn't have been done by children

Exercise 94 1 troops have been called out 2 trains were held up by fog 3 this is to be left here. It will be called for 4 police were called in 5 children were not properly looked after 6 reinforcements are being flown in 7 men of 28 were called up 8 he was looked up to by everyone 9 he will be seen off at the airport by all the ministers 10 bed hasn't been slept in 11 more rooms can be built on 12 he was thrown out 13 different attitude will have to be adopted 14 he ought to be locked up 15 they weren't taken in

مەسئۇل مۇھەررىرى: ئېزىز تۇردى
مۇقاۋىسىنى لايىھىلىگۈچى: ئەكبەر سالھ

ئىنگلىز تىلى گرامماتىكىسىدىن ئەمەلىي مىسال ۋە مەشىقلەر

تۈزگۈچى: ھاجى قۇتلۇق قادىرى

*

شىنجاڭ خەلق نەشرىياتى نەشر قىلدى
(ئۈرۈمچى جەنۇبىي ئازادلىق يولى 348 №)
شىنجاڭ شىنخۇا كىتابخانىسىدىن تارقىتىلدى
شىنجاڭ ئىشچىلار ۋاقىت گېزىتى باسما زاۋۇتىدا بېسىلدى
فورماتى: 1168 × 850م، 1/32، باسما تاۋىقى: 11

2000 - يىل 5 - ئاي 1 - نەشرى

2000 - يىل 5 - ئاي 1 - بېسىلىشى

تىراژى: 1-3000

ISBN7-228-05750-3/H. 149

باھاسى: 15.00 يۈەن

the authorities are to introduce this . . . limit 3 they are lengthening the runway; R 4 nurses are wakening patients 5 people say/it said that B . lived 6 British fishermen must offer any sturgeon that they catch to the Queen 7 someone has tempered with this signpost 8 squatters have been using their houseboat 9 they were towing the . . . ship 10 get a builder to put in a lift 11 The firm made a profit . . . but a loss of . . . which they made . . . cancelled this 12 guests will wear evening dress 13 the authorities put the ship . . . and forbade passengers and crew 14 we shall have to find someone 15 the police made him walk along . . . and repeat 16 our opponents must have started 17 the New Arts Gallery is to exhibit my paintings 18 experts have proved that this scientific theory is false 19 they are to salvage the car which the wind blew 20 police are guarding the house where they found the dead man to prevent anyone from entering it and interfering with the evidence 21 why didn't you either lock the car or put it 22 people are saying that the government is spending too little money 23 you could dut your money to good use instead of leaving it idle 24 people belidved that the earth was flat 25 no one has read this copy; no one has cut the pages 26 the police led away the student who threw the stones 27 people say that early E. and G. sailors used carrier pigeons 28 a strong police guard was escorting the referee